

Volume II Specifications
for the
A New Security & Services Training Facility
at
Birmingham IAP (ANG)
Birmingham, Alabama



100% Submittal – Volume III

Date: **March 2022**
Job No: 12072/BRKR 009063
Set No:

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 00 0100 – TABLE OF CONTENTS

VOLUME I

DIVISION 00 – PROJECT INFORMATION

00 0100	TABLE OF CONTENTS	4
00 0102	PROJECT INFORMATION AND SUMMARY	2

DIVISION 01 – GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

01 0450	CUTTING AND PATCHING	2
01 0500	FIELD ENGINEERING	4
01 2000	PRICE AND PAYMENT PROCEDURES	3
01 2300	BID OPTIONS	3
01 3000	ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS	6
01 3001	SUBMITTALS	7
	- SUBMITTAL REGISTER	20
01 3514.01	LEED-NC 2009 CREDIT SUMMARY	6
01 3553	SECURITY PROCEDURES	2
01 4000	QUALITY REQUIREMENTS	6
01 4100	REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS	2
01 4217	DEFINITIONS AND STANDARDS	3
01 5000	TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS	3
01 5100	TEMPORARY UTILITIES	3
01 5213	FIELD OFFICES AND SHEDS	2
01 5500	VEHICULAR ACCESS AND PARKING	3
01 5719	TEMPORARY ENVIRONMENTAL CONTROLS	10
01 6000	PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS	5
01 6116	VOLATILE ORGANIC COMPOUND CONTENT RESTRICTIONS	5
01 7000	EXECUTION AND CLOSEOUT REQUIREMENTS	12
01 7419	CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL	6
01 7800	CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS	8
01 7900	DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING	6
01 9113	GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS	14

DIVISION 02 – EXISTING CONDITIONS

02 7110	FOUNDATION DRAINAGE SYSTEMS	5
---------	-----------------------------	---

DIVISION 03 – CONCRETE

03 3000	CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE	23
---------	------------------------	----

DIVISION 04 – MASONRY

04 2000	UNIT MASONRY	12
04 7200	CAST STONE MASONRY	7

DIVISION 05 – METALS

05 1200	STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING	7
05 2100	STEEL JOIST FRAMING	5
05 3100	STEEL DECKING	7
05 4000	COLD-FORMED METAL FRAMING	7
05 4400	COLD-FORMED METAL TRUSSES	6
05 5000	METAL FABRICATIONS	7
05 5213	PIPE AND TUBE RAILINGS	6

DIVISION 06 – WOODS, PLASTICS, AND COMPOSITES

06 1000	ROUGH CARPENTRY	6
06 1500	WOOD DECKING	3
06 2000	FINISH CARPENTRY	4
06 4100	ARCHITECTURAL WOOD CASEWORK	5
06 8316	FIBERGLASS REINFORCED PANELING	4

DIVISION 07 – THERMAL & MOISTURE PROTECTION

070100	SPECIAL PROJECT ROOFING WARRANTY	
07 2100	THERMAL INSULATION	4
07 2500	WEATHER BARRIERS (BID OPTION)	12
07 2119	SPRAY FOAM INSULATION	6
07 4113	METAL ROOF PANELS	14
07 4293	METAL SOFFIT PANELS	8
07 6130	SELF-ADHERED ROOFING UNDERLAYMENT	3
07 6200	SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM	4
07 6500	WALL FLASHING	6
07 7100	ROOF SPECIALTIES	10
07 8400	FIRESTOPPING	12
07 9005	JOINT SEALERS	8

DIVISION 08 – OPENINGS

08 1113	HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES	5
08 1416	FLUSH WOOD DOORS	5
08 3100	ACCESS DOORS AND PANELS	2
08 3223	SLIDING GLAZED DOOR ASSEMBLY	8
08 3459	WEAPONS VAULT DOOR	6
08 3600	SECTIONAL OVERHEAD DOORS	4
08 4113	ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCES	8
08 4313	ALUMINUM-FRAMED STOREFRONTS	6
08 4413	GLAZED ALUMINUM CURTAIN WALLS	9
08 5200	BLAST RESISTANT ALUMINUM WINDOW SYSTEMS	14
08 7100	DOOR HARDWARE	16
08 8000	GLAZING	7

VOLUME II

DIVISION 00 – PROJECT INFORMATION

00 0100	TABLE OF CONTENTS	4
---------	-------------------	---

DIVISION 09 – FINISHES

09 0561	COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR FLOORING PREPARATION	8
09 2116	GYPSUM BOARD ASSEMBLIES	9
09 3000	TILING	9
09 5100	ACOUSTICAL CEILINGS	6
09 6500	RESILIENT FLOORING & BASE	6
09 6813	TILE CARPETING	5
09 8430	SOUND-ABSORBING WALL UNITS	4
09 9113	EXTERIOR PAINTING	8
09 9123	INTERIOR PAINTING	12

DIVISIONS 10 – SPECIALTIES

10 1400	SIGNAGE	4
10 2113	STAINLESS STEEL TOILET COMPARTMENTS	4
10 2800	TOILET, BATH, AND LAUNDRY ACCESSORIES	5
10 4400	FIRE PROTECTION SPECIALTIES	3
10 5100	LOCKERS	3
10 8500	SPECIALTIES	3

DIVISION 11 – EQUIPMENT

11 3013	RESIDENTIAL APPLIANCES	4
11 5213	MOTORIZED PROJECTION SCREENS	4
11 5223	AUDIO-VISUAL EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS	4

DIVISION 12 – FURNISHINGS

12 2115	OPERABLE MESH SHADES	10
12 3600	COUNTERTOPS AND WINDOW SILLS	5
12 4813	ENTRANCE FLOOR MATS AND FRAMES	2
12 9313	BICYCLE RACKS	3

DIVISION 21 – FIRE SUPPRESSION SYSTEMS

21 0513	COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR FIRE SUPPRESSION EQUIPMENT	3
21 0517	SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING	6
21 0518	ESCUTCHEONS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING	3
21 0523	GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR WATER-BASED FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING	8
21 0529	HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING AND EQUIPMENT	10
21 0553	IDENTIFICATION FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING AND EQUIPMENT	5
21 1119	FIRE DEPARTMENT CONNECTIONS	4
21 1313	WET-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS	22

DIVISION 22 – PLUMBING

22 0510	BASIC MECHANICAL REQUIREMENTS	5
22 0511	BASIC MECHANICAL MATERIALS AND METHODS	9
22 0513	COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR PLUMBING EQUIPMENT	3
22 0517	SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR PLUMBING PIPING	6
22 0518	ESCUTCHEONS FOR PLUMBING PIPING	3
22 0519	METERS AND GAGES FOR PLUMBING PIPING	10
22 0523.12	BALL VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING	13
22 0523.14	CHECK VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING	11
22 0523.15	GATE VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING	7
22 0529	HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT	15
22 0553	IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT	7
22 0719	PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION	24
22 0800	COMMISSIONING OF PLUMBING	6
22 1116	DOMESTIC WATER PIPING	17
22 1119	DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES	15
22 1123.21	INLINE, DOMESTIC-WATER PUMPS	8
22 1123	FACILITY NATURAL-GAS PIPING	24
22 1316	SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING	14
22 1319.13	SANITARY DRAINS	3
22 1319	SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES	7
22 3400	FUEL-FIRED, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS	20
22 4213.13	COMMERCIAL WATER CLOSETS	5
22 4213.16	COMMERCIAL URINALS	6
22 4216.13	COMMERCIAL LAVATORIES	8
22 4216.16	COMMERCIAL SINKS	9
22 4223	COMMERCIAL SHOWERS	4
22 4500	EMERGENCY PLUMBING FIXTURES	5
22 4716	PRESSURE WATER COOLERS	5

VOLUME III

DIVISION 00 – PROJECT INFORMATION

00 0100	TABLE OF CONTENTS	4
---------	-------------------	---

DIVISION 23 – HEATING, VENTILATION, AND AIR CONDITIONING

230510	BASIC MECHANICAL REQUIREMENTS	5
230511	BASIC MECHANICAL MATERIALS AND METHODS	9
230513	COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT	3
230517	SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR HVAC PIPING	7
230518	ESCUTCHEONS FOR HVAC PIPING	3
230519	METERS AND GAGES FOR HVAC PIPING	9
230523.11	GLOBE VALVES FOR HVAC PIPING	5
230523.12	BALL VALVES FOR HVAC PIPING	11
230523.13	BUTTERFLY VALVES FOR HVAC PIPING	5
230523.15	GATE VALVES FOR HVAC PIPING	6
230529	HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT	13
230533	HEAT TRACING FOR HVAC PIPING - NEED FROM MASTERSPEC	5
230553	IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT	8
230593	TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING	8
230713	DUCT INSULATION	25
230719	HVAC PIPING INSULATION	31
230800	COMMISSIONING OF HVAC	3
230923	DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL (DDC) SYSTEM FOR HVAC	57
230993.11	SEQUENCE OF OPERATIONS FOR HVAC DDC	35
232113	HYDRONIC PIPING	15
232116	HYDRONIC PIPING SPECIALTIES	7
232123	HYDRONIC PUMPS	13
232300	REFRIGERANT PIPING	14
232513	WATER TREATMENT FOR CLOSED-LOOP HYDRONIC SYSTEMS	6
233113	METAL DUCTS	25
233300	DUCT ACCESSORIES	6
233600	AIR TERMINAL UNITS	6
233713	AIR OUTLETS AND INLETS	6
235216	CONDENSING BOILERS	9
237313.13	INDOOR, BASIC AIR-HANDLING UNITS	13
238126	SPLIT SYSTEM AIR CONDITIONERS	6
238239.19	WALL AND CEILING UNIT HEATERS	3

DIVISION 26 – ELECTRICAL

26 0513	MEDIUM VOLTAGE CABLES	6
26 0518	BASIC ELECTRICAL MATERIALS AND METHODS	9
26 0519	CONDUCTORS AND CABLES	4
26 0526	GROUNDING AND BONDING	6
26 0533	RACEWAYS AND BOXES	7
26 1219	LIQUID-FILLED, MEDIUM VOLTAGE TRANSFORMERS	6
26 2200	DRY-TYPE TRANSFORMERS (1000 V AND LESS)	122
26 2416	PANELBOARDS	6
26 2726	WIRING DEVICES	5
26 2813	FUSES	2

26 2816	DISCONNECT SWITCHES	3
26 5100	INTERIOR LIGHTING	9
26 5600	EXTERIOR LIGHTING	7
 DIVISION 27 – COMMUNICATIONS		
27 0525	COMMUNICATIONS AND DATA-PROCESSING EQUIPMENT	15
 DIVISION 28 – ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY		
28 3111	FIRE ALARM AND MASS NOTIFICATION	32
 DIVISION 31 – EARTHWORK		
31 0010	SITE PROTECTION	3
31 0020	EROSION CONTROL	3
31 1001	SITE CLEARING	4
31 2210	EARTHWORK	12
	- GEOTECHNICAL REPORT	50
31 3116	TERMITE CONTROL	3
 DIVISION 32 – EXTERIOR IMPROVEMENTS		
32 0116	COLD MILLING (PLANNING) OF EXISTING BITUMINOUS PAVEMENTS	4
32 1217	ASPHALT CONCRETE PAVING	4
32 1314	CEMENT CONCRETE PAVING11	
32 1720	PAVEMENT JOINT SEALANTS	4
32 1900	SIDEWALKS	4
32 3136	SECURITY BOLLARDS	3
32 9219	SEEDING	4
 DIVISION 33 – UTILITIES		
33 1117	OUTSIDE WATER SYSTEM	7
33 3112	SANITARY SEWERAGE	5
33 4112	STORM DRAINAGE	5
33 7350	SITE NATURAL-GAS DISTRIBUTION	3

SECTION 230510 - BASIC MECHANICAL REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this and the other sections of Division 23.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes general administrative and procedural requirements for mechanical installations. The following administrative and procedural requirements are included in this Section to expand the requirements specified in Division 1:
 - 1. Submittals.
 - 2. Coordination drawings.
 - 3. Record documents.
 - 4. Maintenance manuals.
 - 5. Rough-ins.
 - 6. Mechanical installations.
 - 7. Cutting and patching.
- B. Related Sections: The following sections contain requirements that relate to this section:
 - 1. Division 23 Section "BASIC MECHANICAL MATERIALS AND METHODS," for materials and methods common to the remainder of Division 23, plus general related specifications including:
 - a. Access to mechanical installations.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. General: Follow the procedures specified in Division 1 Section "SUBMITTALS."
- B. Increase, by the quantity listed below, the number of mechanical related shop drawings, product data, and samples submitted, to allow for required distribution plus two copies of each submittal required, which will be retained by the Mechanical Consulting Engineer.
 - 1. Shop Drawings - Initial Submittal: 1 additional blue- or black-line prints.
 - 2. Shop Drawings - Final Submittal: 1 additional blue- or black-line prints.

3. Product Data: 1 additional copy of each item.
4. Samples: 1 addition as set.

C. Additional copies may be required by individual sections of these Specifications.

1.4 RECORD DOCUMENTS

- A. Prepare record documents in accordance with the requirements in Division 1 Section "PROJECT CLOSEOUT." In addition to the requirements specified in Division 1, indicate the following installed conditions:
1. Equipment locations (exposed and concealed), dimensioned from prominent building lines.
 2. Approved substitutions, Contract Modifications, and actual equipment and materials installed.
 3. Contract Modifications, actual equipment and materials installed.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Prepare maintenance manuals in accordance with Division 1 Section "PROJECT CLOSEOUT." In addition to the requirements specified in Division 1, include the following information for equipment items:
1. Description of function, normal operating characteristics and limitations, performance curves, engineering data and tests, and complete nomenclature and commercial numbers of replacement parts.
 2. Manufacturer's printed operating procedures to include start-up, break-in, and routine and normal operating instructions; regulation, control, stopping, shutdown, and emergency instructions; and summer and winter operating instructions.
 3. Maintenance procedures for routine preventative maintenance and troubleshooting; disassembly, repair, and reassembly; aligning and adjusting instructions.
 4. Servicing instructions and lubrication charts and schedules.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver products to the project properly identified with names, model numbers, types, grades, compliance labels, and other information needed for identification.

1.7 WARRANTIES

- A. Warranties shall begin at date of final completion. All compressors shall include a minimum of five years warranty. One year warranty for labor, parts, units, etc. is required for all equipment. Additionally, Contractor is responsible for all preventative maintenance and routine service on installed equipment for the one year warranty period in order to maintain all factory/manufacturer warranties.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 ROUGH-IN

- A. Verify final locations for rough-ins with field measurements and with the requirements of the actual equipment to be connected.

3.2 MECHANICAL INSTALLATIONS

- A. General: Sequence, coordinate, and integrate the various elements of mechanical systems, materials, and equipment. Comply with the following requirements:
 - 1. Coordinate mechanical systems, equipment, and materials installation with other building components.
 - 2. Verify all dimensions by field measurements.
 - 3. Coordinate the installation of required supporting devices and sleeves to be set in poured-in-place concrete and other structural components, as they are constructed.
 - 4. Sequence, coordinate, and integrate installations of mechanical materials and equipment for efficient flow of the Work. Give particular attention to large equipment requiring positioning prior to closing in the building.
 - 5. Where mounting heights are not detailed or dimensioned, install systems, materials, and equipment to provide the maximum headroom possible.
 - 6. Coordinate connection of mechanical systems with exterior underground and overhead utilities and services. Comply with requirements of governing regulations, franchised service companies, and controlling agencies. Provide required connection for each service.
 - 7. Install systems, materials, and equipment to conform with approved submittal data,

- including coordination drawings, to greatest extent possible. Conform to arrangements indicated by the Contract Documents, recognizing that portions of the Work are shown only in diagrammatic form. Where coordination requirements conflict with individual system requirements, refer conflict to the Architect.
8. Install systems, materials, and equipment level and plumb, parallel and perpendicular to other building systems and components, where installed exposed in finished spaces.
 9. Install mechanical equipment to facilitate servicing, maintenance, and repair or replacement of equipment components. As much as practical, connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum of interference with other installations. Extend grease fittings to an accessible location.
 10. Install access panel or doors where units are concealed behind finished surfaces. Access panels and doors are specified in Division 8 Section "ACCESS DOORS" and Division 23 Section "BASIC MECHANICAL MATERIALS AND METHODS."
 11. Install systems, materials, and equipment giving right-of-way priority to systems required to be installed at a specified slope.

3.3 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. General: Perform cutting and patching in accordance with Division 1 Section "CUTTING AND PATCHING." In addition to the requirements specified in Division 1, the following requirements apply:
 1. Protection of Installed Work: During cutting and patching operations, protect adjacent installations.
- B. Perform cutting, fitting, and patching of mechanical equipment and materials required to:
 1. Uncover Work to provide for installation of ill-timed Work.
 2. Remove and replace defective Work.
 3. Remove and replace Work not conforming to requirements of the Contract Documents.
 4. Remove samples of installed Work as specified for testing.
 5. Install equipment and materials in existing structures.
 6. Upon written instructions from the Architect, uncover and restore Work to provide for Architect/Engineer observation of concealed Work.
- C. Cut, remove and legally dispose of selected mechanical equipment, components, and materials as indicated, including but not limited to removal of mechanical piping, heating units, plumbing fixtures and trim, and other mechanical items made obsolete by the new Work.

- D. Protect the structure, furnishings, finishes, and adjacent materials not indicated or scheduled to be removed.
- E. Provide and maintain temporary partitions or dust barriers adequate to prevent the spread of dust and dirt to adjacent areas.
 - 1. Patch existing finished surfaces and building components using new materials matching existing materials and experienced Installers. Installers' qualifications refer to the materials and methods required for the surface and building components being patched.
 - 2. Patch finished surfaces and building components using new materials specified for the original installation and experienced Installers. Installers' qualifications refer to the materials and methods required for the surface and building components being patched.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 230511 - BASIC MECHANICAL MATERIALS AND METHODS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and the Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following basic mechanical materials and methods to complement other Division 23 Sections.
 - 1. Piping materials and installation instructions common to most piping systems.
 - 2. Concrete equipment base construction requirements.
 - 3. Equipment nameplate data requirements.
 - 4. Labeling and identifying mechanical systems and equipment is specified in Division 23.
 - 5. Nonshrink grout for equipment installations.
 - 6. Field-fabricated metal and wood equipment supports.
 - 7. Installation requirements common to equipment specification Sections.
 - 8. Mechanical demolition.
 - 9. Cutting and patching.
 - 10. Touchup painting and finishing.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Pipe, pipe fittings, and piping include tube, tube fittings, and tubing.
- B. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe and duct shafts, unheated spaces immediately below the roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawl spaces, and tunnels.

- C. Exposed Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
- D. Exposed Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors, or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.
- E. Concealed Interior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants. Examples include above ceilings and in duct shafts.
- F. Concealed Exterior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from weather conditions and physical contact by building occupants, but subject to outdoor ambient temperatures. Examples include installations within unheated shelters.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end-caps. Maintain end-caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe-end damage and prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
- B. Protect stored pipes and tubes from moisture and dirt. Elevate above grade. When stored inside, do not exceed structural capacity of the floor.
- C. Protect flanges, fittings, and piping specialties from moisture and dirt.

1.5 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

- A. Coordinate mechanical equipment installation with other building components.
- B. Coordinate the installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in poured-in-place concrete and other structural components as they are constructed.
- C. Sequence, coordinate, and integrate installations of mechanical materials and equipment for efficient flow of the Work. Coordinate installation of large equipment requiring positioning prior to closing in the building.
- D. Coordinate connection of electrical services.
- E. Coordinate connection of mechanical systems with exterior underground and overhead utilities and services. Comply with requirements of governing regulations, franchised service companies, and controlling agencies.
- F. Coordinate installation of identifying devices after completing covering and painting where devices are applied to surfaces. Install identifying devices prior to installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

1.6 WARRANTIES

- A. Warranties shall begin at date of substantial completion. All compressors shall include a minimum of five years warranty. One year warranty for labor, parts, units, etc. is required for all equipment. Additionally, Contractor is responsible for all preventative maintenance and routine service on installed equipment for the one year warranty period in order to maintain all factory/manufacturer warranties.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPE AND PIPE FITTINGS

- A. Refer to individual piping system specification Sections for pipe and fitting materials and joining methods.
- B. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1 for factory-threaded pipe and pipe fittings.

2.2 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Refer to individual piping system specification Sections in Division 23 for special joining materials not listed below.
- B. Solder Filler Metal: ASTM B 32.
 - 1. Alloy Sn95 or Alloy Sn94: Tin (approximately 95 percent) and silver (approximately 5 percent), having 0.10 percent lead content.
 - 2. Alloy E: Tin (approximately 95 percent) and copper (approximately 5 percent), having 0.10 percent maximum lead content.
 - 3. Alloy HA: Tin-antimony-silver-copper-zinc, having 0.10 percent maximum lead content.
 - 4. Alloy HB: Tin-antimony-silver-copper-nickel, having 0.10 percent maximum lead content.
- C. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8.
 - 1. BCuP Series: Copper-phosphorus alloys.
 - 2. BAg1: Silver alloy.
- D. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

- E. Solvent Cements: Manufacturer's standard solvents complying with the following:
 - 1. Chlorinated Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC): ASTM F 493.
 - 2. Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC): ASTM D 2564.
- F. Plastic Pipe Seals: ASTM F 477, elastomeric gasket.
- G. Couplings: Iron body sleeve assembly, fabricated to match outside diameters of plain-end pressure pipes.
 - 1. Sleeve: ASTM A 126, Class B, gray iron.
 - 2. Followers: ASTM A 47 (ASTM A 47M), Grade 32510 or ASTM A 536 ductile iron.
 - 3. Gaskets: Rubber.
 - 4. Bolts and Nuts: AWWA C111.
 - 5. Finish: Enamel paint.

2.3 IDENTIFYING DEVICES AND LABELS

- A. General: Manufacturer's standard products of categories and types required for each application as referenced in other Division 23 Sections. Where more than one type is specified for listed application, selection is Installer's option, but provide single selection for each product category.
- B. Equipment Nameplates: Metal nameplate with operational data engraved or stamped, permanently fastened to equipment.
 - 1. Data: Manufacturer, product name, model number, serial number, capacity, operating and power characteristics, labels of tested compliances, and similar essential data.
 - 2. Location: An accessible and visible location.
- C. Stencils: Standard stencils, prepared for required applications with letter sizes conforming to recommendations of ASME A13.1 for piping and similar applications, but not less than 1-1/4-inch (30mm) -high letters for ductwork and not less than 3/4-inch (19mm) -high letters for access door signs and similar operational instructions.
 - 1. Material: Brass.
 - 2. Stencil Paint: Standard exterior type stenciling enamel; black, except as otherwise indicated; either brushing grade or pressurized spray-can form and grade.
 - 3. Identification Paint: Standard identification enamel of colors indicated or, if not otherwise indicated for piping systems, comply with ASME A13.1 for colors.

- D. Lettering and Graphics: Coordinate names, abbreviations, and other designations used in mechanical identification, with corresponding designations indicated. Use numbers, lettering, and wording indicated for proper identification and operation/maintenance of mechanical systems and equipment.

2.4 GROUT

- A. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: ASTM C 1107, Grade B.
 - 1. Characteristics: Post-hardening, volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
 - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.50MPa), 28-day compressive strength.
 - 3. Packaging: Premixed and factory-packaged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING SYSTEMS--COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Install piping as described below, except where system Sections specify otherwise. Individual piping system specification Sections in Division 23 specify piping installation requirements unique to the piping system.
- B. General Locations and Arrangements: Drawings (plans, schematics, and diagrams) indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated, except where deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- C. Install components having pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- D. Install piping in concealed interior and exterior locations, except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- E. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- F. Install exposed interior and exterior piping at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited, except where indicated.
- G. Install piping tight to slabs, beams, joists, columns, walls, and other building elements. Allow sufficient space above removable ceiling panels to allow for ceiling panel removal.
- H. Install piping to allow application of insulation plus 1-inch (25mm) clearance around insulation.

- I. Locate groups of pipes parallel to each other, spaced to permit valve servicing.
- J. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- K. Install couplings according to manufacturer's printed instructions.
- L. Sleeves are not required for core drilled holes.
- M. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes formed by PE plastic (removable) sleeves.
- N. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls, concrete floor and roof slabs, and where indicated.
 - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring where specified.
 - 2. Install large enough sleeves to provide 1/4-inch (6mm) annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation. Use the following sleeve materials:
 - a. Steel Pipe Sleeves: For pipes smaller than 6 inches (150 mm).
 - 3. Except for below-grade wall penetrations, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation, using elastomeric joint sealants specified in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants."
- O. Above Grade, Exterior Wall, Pipe Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Size sleeve for 1-inch (25mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installation of mechanical seals.
 - 1. Install steel pipe for sleeves smaller than 6 inches (150 mm).
 - 2. Install cast-iron wall pipes for sleeves 6 inches (150 mm) and larger.
 - 3. Assemble and install mechanical seals according to manufacturer's printed instructions.
- P. Below Grade, Exterior Wall, Pipe Penetrations: Install ductile-iron wall penetration system sleeves according to manufacturer's printed installation instructions.
- Q. Fire Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestopping sealant material. Firestopping materials are specified in Division 7 Section "Firestopping."
- R. Verify final equipment locations for roughing in.

- S. Piping Joint Construction: Join pipe and fittings as follows and as specifically required in individual piping system Sections.
1. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
 2. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
 3. Soldered Joints: Construct joints according to AWS "Soldering Manual," Chapter 22 "The Soldering of Pipe and Tube."
 4. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS "Brazing Manual" in the "Pipe and Tube" chapter.
 5. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full inside diameter. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - a. Note the internal length of threads in fittings or valve ends, and proximity of internal seat or wall, to determine how far pipe should be threaded into joint.
 - b. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads (except where dry seal threading is specified).
 - c. Align threads at point of assembly.
 - d. Tighten joint with wrench. Apply wrench to valve end into which pipe is being threaded.
 - e. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings having threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- T. Piping Connections: Except as otherwise indicated, make piping connections as specified below.
1. Install unions in piping 2 inches (50 mm) and smaller adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment having a 2-inch (50mm) or smaller threaded pipe connection.
 2. Wet Piping Systems (Water and Steam): Install dielectric coupling and nipple fittings to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.

3.2 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION--COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install equipment to provide the maximum possible headroom where mounting heights are not indicated.

- B. Install equipment according to approved submittal data. Portions of the Work are shown only in diagrammatic form. Refer conflicts to the Architect.
- C. Install equipment level and plumb, parallel and perpendicular to other building systems and components in exposed interior spaces, except where otherwise indicated.
- D. Install mechanical equipment to facilitate servicing, maintenance, and repair or replacement of equipment components. Connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum of interference with other installations. Extend grease fittings to an accessible location.
- E. Install equipment giving right-of-way to piping systems installed at a required slope.

3.3 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Piping Systems: Install pipe markers on each system. Include arrows showing normal direction of flow.
 - 1. Stenciled Markers: Complying with ASME A13.1.
- B. Equipment: Install engraved plastic laminate sign or equipment marker on or near each major item of mechanical equipment.
 - 1. Lettering Size: Minimum 1/4-inch (6mm) -high lettering for name of unit where viewing distance is less than 2 feet (0.6 m), 1/2-inch (13mm) -high for distances up to 6 feet (1.8 m), and proportionately larger lettering for greater distances. Provide secondary lettering 2/3 to 3/4 of size of principal lettering.
 - 2. Text of Signs: Provide text to distinguish between multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations, in addition to name of identified unit.
- C. Adjusting: Relocate identifying devices which become visually blocked by work of this Division or other Divisions.

3.4 PAINTING AND FINISHING

- A. Damage and Touch Up: Repair marred and damaged factory-painted finishes with materials and procedures to match original factory finish.

3.5 DEMOLITION

- A. Disconnect, demolish, and remove work specified under Division 23 and as indicated.

- B. Where pipe, ductwork, insulation, or equipment to remain is damaged or disturbed, remove damaged portions and install new products of equal capacity and quality.
- C. Accessible Work: Remove indicated exposed pipe and ductwork in its entirety.
- D. Abandoned Work: Cut and remove buried pipe abandoned in place, 2 inches (50 mm) beyond the face of adjacent construction. Cap and patch surface to match existing finish.
- E. Removal: Remove indicated equipment from the Project site.
- F. Temporary Disconnection: Remove, store, clean, reinstall, reconnect, and make operational equipment indicated for relocation.

3.6 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. Cut, channel, chase, and drill floors, walls, partitions, ceilings, and other surfaces necessary for mechanical installations. Perform cutting by skilled mechanics of the trades involved.
- B. Repair cut surfaces to match adjacent surfaces.

3.7 GROUTING

- A. Install nonmetallic nonshrink grout for mechanical equipment base bearing surfaces, pump and other equipment base plates, and anchors. Mix grout according to manufacturer's printed instructions.
- B. Clean surfaces that will come into contact with grout.
- C. Provide forms for placement of grout, as required.
- D. Avoid air entrapment when placing grout.
- E. Place grout to completely fill equipment bases.
- F. Place grout on concrete bases to provide a smooth bearing surface for equipment.
- G. Place grout around anchors.
- H. Cure placed grout according to manufacturer's printed instructions.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 230513 - COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on alternating-current power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:
 - 1. Motor controllers.
 - 2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
 - 3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
 - 4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Comply with IEEE 841 for severe-duty motors.

2.2 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS

- A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 feet above sea level.
- B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with

indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

2.3 POLYPHASE MOTORS

- A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.
- B. Efficiency: Premium efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.
- C. Service Factor: 1.15.
- D. Multispeed Motors: Variable torque.
 - 1. For motors with 2:1 speed ratio, consequent pole, single winding.
- E. Multispeed Motors: Separate winding for each speed.
- F. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.
- G. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- H. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.
- I. Insulation: Class F.
- J. Code Letter Designation:
 - 1. Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.
 - 2. Motors Smaller Than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.
- K. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324T and larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than 324T.

2.4 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR POLYPHASE MOTORS

- A. Motors Used with Reduced-Voltage and Multispeed Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.
- B. Motors Used with Variable-Frequency Controllers: Ratings, characteristics, and features coordinated with and approved by controller manufacturer.
 - 1. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by pulse-width-modulated inverters.
 - 2. Premium-Efficient Motors: Class B temperature rise; Class F insulation.

3. Inverter-Duty Motors: Class F temperature rise; Class H insulation.
 4. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.
- C. Severe-Duty Motors: Comply with IEEE 841, with 1.15 minimum service factor.

2.5 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

- A. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:
1. Permanent-split capacitor.
 2. Split phase.
 3. Capacitor start, inductor run.
 4. Capacitor start, capacitor run.
- B. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.
- C. Bearings: Prelubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- D. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.
- E. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 230517 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Sleeves.
2. Stack-sleeve fittings.
3. Sleeve-seal systems.
4. Sleeve-seal fittings.
5. Grout.
6. Silicone sealants.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for penetration firestopping installed in fire-resistance-rated walls, horizontal assemblies, and smoke barriers, with and without penetrating items.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1. Product Data: For sealants, indicating VOC content.
2. Laboratory Test Reports: For sealants, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES

- A. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop collar.
- B. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A53/A53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, anti-corrosion coated or zinc coated, with plain ends and integral welded waterstop collar.
- C. Galvanized-Steel Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- D. PVC Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D1785, Schedule 40.
- E. Molded-PVC Sleeves: With nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- F. Molded-PE or -PP Sleeves: Removable, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

2.2 STACK-SLEEVE FITTINGS

- A. Description: Manufactured, Dura-coated or Duco-coated galvanized cast-iron sleeve with integral cast flashing flange for use in waterproof floors and roofs. Include clamping ring, bolts, and nuts for membrane flashing.

2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Description:
 - 1. Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.
 - 2. Designed to form a hydrostatic seal of 20-psig.
 - 3. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size.
 - 4. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel.
 - 5. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, ASTM B633 of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.4 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

- A. Description:
 - 1. Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly, made for imbedding in concrete slab or wall.

2. Plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.

2.5 GROUT

- A. Description: Nonshrink, recommended for interior and exterior sealing openings in nonfire-rated walls or floors.
- B. Standard: ASTM C1107/C1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

2.6 SILICONE SEALANTS

- A. Silicone, S, NS, 25, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant, ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, use NT.
 1. Verify sealant has a VOC content of 250 g/L or less.
 2. Verify sealant complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- B. Silicone, S, P, 25, T, NT: Single-component, pourable, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C920, Type S, Grade P, Class 25, Uses T and NT. Grade P Pourable (self-leveling) formulation is for opening in floors and other horizontal surfaces that are not fire rated.
 1. Verify sealant has a VOC content of 250 g/L or less.
 2. Verify sealant complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- C. Silicone Foam: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.
 1. Verify sealant has a VOC content of 250 g/L or less.

2. Verify sealant complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.
 1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
 1. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes in slabs formed by molded-PE or -PP sleeves.
 2. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.
 3. Using grout or silicone sealant, seal space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.
- D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
 3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint.
- E. Fire-Resistance-Rated Penetrations, Horizontal Assembly Penetrations, and Smoke-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire or smoke rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with fire- and smoke-stop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping and fill materials specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.2 STACK-SLEEVE-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install stack-sleeve fittings in new slabs as slabs are constructed.
 - 1. Install fittings that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
 - 2. Secure flashing between clamping flanges for pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Comply with requirements for flashing specified in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
 - 3. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 3 inches above finished floor level.
 - 4. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
 - 5. Using waterproof silicone sealant, seal space between top hub of stack-sleeve fitting and pipe.
- B. Fire-Resistance-Rated, Horizontal Assembly, and Smoke Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire or smoke rating of floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with fire- and smoke-stop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.
- B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal-system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

3.4 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal fittings as new walls and slabs are constructed.
- B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.
- C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.
- D. Using grout or silicone sealant, seal space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 1. Leak Test: After allowing for a full cure, test sleeves and sleeve seals for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
- B. Sleeves and sleeve seals will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

3.6 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

- A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:
 - 1. Exterior Concrete Walls Above Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Cast-iron sleeves Sleeve-seal fittings.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Cast-iron pipe sleeves Sleeve-seal fittings.
 - 2. Exterior Concrete Walls Below Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Cast-iron pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system Sleeve-seal fittings.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Cast-iron pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system, Steel pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system, Sleeve-seal fittings.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
 - 3. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Cast-iron pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system, Steel pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system, Sleeve-seal fittings.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Cast-iron pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system, Steel pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system, Sleeve-seal fittings.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
 - 4. Concrete Slabs Above Grade:

- a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Steel pipe sleeves, Molded-PE or -PP sleeves, or Molded-PVC sleeves.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Steel pipe sleeves, PVC-pipe sleeves, Stack-sleeve fittings.
5. Interior Partitions:
- a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Steel pipe sleeves.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel sheet sleeves.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 230518 - ESCUTCHEONS FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Escutcheons.
 - 2. Floor plates.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Existing Piping to Remain: Existing piping that is not to be removed and that is not otherwise indicated to be removed, removed and salvaged, or removed and reinstalled.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. One-Piece, Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and setscrew fastener.
- B. One-Piece, Stainless-Steel Type: With polished stainless-steel finish.
- C. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and setscrew fastener.
- D. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped steel with polished, chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- E. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.

- F. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish; concealed and exposed-rivet hinge; and spring-clip fasteners.

2.2 FLOOR PLATES

- A. Split Floor Plates: Steel with concealed hinge.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.
- B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
 - 1. Escutcheons for New Piping:
 - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep pattern.
 - b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece steel, cast brass or split-plate steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - c. Insulated Piping: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - e. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - f. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - g. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - h. Chrome-Plated Piping: Split-plate, stamped steel with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - i. Insulated Piping: Split-plate, stamped steel with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - j. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped steel with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - k. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped steel with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - l. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split-plate, stamped steel with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - m. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split-plate, stamped steel with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.

- C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.
- D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
 - 1. New Piping: Split floor plate.
 - 2. Existing Piping to Remain: Split floor plate.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Using new materials, replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 230519 - METERS AND GAGES FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Bimetallic-actuated thermometers.
 - 2. Filled-system thermometers.
 - 3. Liquid-in-glass thermometers.
 - 4. Duct-thermometer mounting brackets.
 - 5. Thermowells.
 - 6. Dial-type pressure gages.
 - 7. Gage attachments.
 - 8. Test plugs.
 - 9. Test-plug kits.
 - 10. Sight flow indicators.
 - 11. Flowmeters.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of meter and gage.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For meters and gages to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 BIMETALLIC-ACTUATED THERMOMETERS

- A. Standard: ASME B40.200.
- B. Case: Liquid-filled and sealed type(s); stainless steel with 3-inch nominal diameter.
- C. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings and scales in deg F.
- D. Connector Type(s): Union joint, adjustable angle, with unified-inch screw threads.
- E. Connector Size: 1/2 inch, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
- F. Stem: 0.25 or 0.375 inch in diameter; stainless steel.
- G. Window: Plain glass or plastic.
- H. Ring: Stainless steel.
- I. Element: Bimetal coil.
- J. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
- K. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range.

2.2 FILLED-SYSTEM THERMOMETERS

- A. Direct-Mounted, Metal-Case, Vapor-Actuated Thermometers:
 - 1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
 - 2. Case: Sealed type, cast aluminum or drawn steel; 4-1/2-inch nominal diameter.
 - 3. Element: Bourdon tube or other type of pressure element.
 - 4. Movement: Mechanical, dampening type, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
 - 5. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F.
 - 6. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
 - 7. Window: Glass or plastic.
 - 8. Ring: Stainless steel.
 - 9. Connector Type(s): Union joint, adjustable, 180 degrees in vertical plane, 360 degrees in horizontal plane, with locking device; with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
 - 10. Thermal System: Liquid-filled bulb in copper-plated steel, aluminum, or brass stem and of length to suit installation.

- a. Design for Air-Duct Installation: With ventilated shroud.
 - b. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
11. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range.

2.3 LIQUID-IN-GLASS THERMOMETERS

A. Metal-Case, Compact-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:

- 1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
- 2. Case: Cast aluminum; 6-inch nominal size.
- 3. Case Form: Straight unless otherwise indicated.
- 4. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red organic liquid.
- 5. Tube Background: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F.
- 6. Window: Glass or plastic.
- 7. Stem: Aluminum or brass and of length to suit installation.
 - a. Design for Air-Duct Installation: With ventilated shroud.
 - b. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
- 8. Connector: 3/4 inch, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
- 9. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.

2.4 DUCT-THERMOMETER MOUNTING BRACKETS

- ### **A. Description: Flanged bracket with screw holes, for attachment to air duct and made to hold thermometer stem.**

2.5 THERMOWELLS

A. Thermowells:

- 1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
- 2. Description: Pressure-tight, socket-type fitting made for insertion in piping tee fitting.
- 3. Material for Use with Copper Tubing: CNR or CUNI.
- 4. Material for Use with Steel Piping: CRES.
- 5. Type: Stepped shank unless straight or tapered shank is indicated.
- 6. External Threads: NPS 1/2, NPS 3/4, or NPS 1, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.
- 7. Internal Threads: 1/2, 3/4, and 1 inch, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
- 8. Bore: Diameter required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
- 9. Insertion Length: Length required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
- 10. Lagging Extension: Include on thermowells for insulated piping and tubing.

11. Bushings: For converting size of thermowell's internal screw thread to size of thermometer connection.

- B. Heat-Transfer Medium: Mixture of graphite and glycerin.

2.6 DIAL-TYPE PRESSURE GAGES

- A. Direct-Mounted, Metal-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:

1. Standard: ASME B40.100.
2. Case: Liquid-filled type(s); cast aluminum or drawn steel; 4-1/2-inch nominal diameter.
3. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
4. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
5. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
6. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi.
7. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
8. Window: Glass or plastic.
9. Ring: Metal Stainless steel.
10. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of scale range.

2.7 GAGE ATTACHMENTS

- A. Snubbers: ASME B40.100, brass; with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and piston-type surge-dampening device. Include extension for use on insulated piping.
- B. Siphons: Loop-shaped section of brass pipe with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 pipe threads.
- C. Valves: Brass or stainless-steel needle, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.

2.8 TEST PLUGS

- A. Description: Test-station fitting made for insertion in piping tee fitting.
- B. Body: Brass or stainless steel with core inserts and gasketed and threaded cap. Include extended stem on units to be installed in insulated piping.
- C. Thread Size: NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
- D. Minimum Pressure and Temperature Rating: 500 psig at 200 deg F.

- E. Core Inserts: Chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic and EPDM self-sealing rubber.

2.9 SIGHT FLOW INDICATORS

- A. Description: Piping inline-installation device for visual verification of flow.
- B. Construction: Bronze or stainless-steel body, with sight glass and ball, flapper, or paddle wheel indicator, and threaded or flanged ends.
- C. Minimum Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
- D. Minimum Temperature Rating: 200 deg F.
- E. End Connections for NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded.
- F. End Connections for NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged.

2.10 FLOWMETERS

- A. Orifice Flowmeters:
 - 1. Description: Flowmeter with sensor, hoses or tubing, fittings, valves, indicator, and conversion chart.
 - 2. Flow Range: Sensor and indicator shall cover operating range of equipment or system served.
 - 3. Sensor: Wafer-orifice-type, calibrated, flow-measuring element; for installation between pipe flanges.
 - a. Design: Differential-pressure-type measurement for gas.
 - b. Construction: Cast-iron body, brass valves with integral check valves and caps, and calibrated nameplate.
 - c. Minimum Pressure Rating: 300 psig.
 - d. Minimum Temperature Rating: 250 deg F.
 - 4. Permanent Indicators: Meter suitable for wall or bracket mounting, calibrated for connected sensor and having 6-inch-diameter, or equivalent, dial with fittings and copper tubing for connecting to sensor.
 - a. Scale: Gallons per minute.
 - b. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent between 20 and 80 percent of scale range.
 - 5. Portable Indicators: Hand-held, differential-pressure type, calibrated for connected sensor and having two 12-foot hoses, with carrying case.
 - a. Scale: Gallons per minute.

- b. Accuracy: Plus or minus 2 percent between 20 and 80 percent of scale range.
 - 6. Display: Shows rate of flow, with register to indicate total volume in gallons.
 - 7. Conversion Chart: Flow rate data compatible with sensor and indicator.
 - 8. Operating Instructions: Include complete instructions with each flowmeter.
- B. Turbine Flowmeters:**
- 1. Description: Flowmeter with sensor and indicator.
 - 2. Flow Range: Sensor and indicator shall cover operating range of equipment or system served.
 - 3. Sensor: Impeller turbine; for inserting in pipe fitting or for installing in piping and measuring flow directly in gallons per minute.
 - a. Design: Device or pipe fitting with inline turbine and integral direct-reading scale for gas.
 - b. Construction: Bronze or stainless-steel body, with plastic turbine or impeller.
 - c. Minimum Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
 - d. Minimum Temperature Rating: 180 deg F.
 - 4. Indicator: Hand-held meter; either an integral part of sensor or a separate meter.
 - 5. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1-1/2 percent.
 - 6. Display: Shows rate of flow, with register to indicate total volume in gallons.
 - 7. Operating Instructions: Include complete instructions with each flowmeter.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install thermowells with socket extending one-third of pipe diameter and in vertical position in piping tees.
- B. Install thermowells of sizes required to match thermometer connectors. Include bushings if required to match sizes.
- C. Install thermowells with extension on insulated piping.
- D. Fill thermowells with heat-transfer medium.
- E. Install direct-mounted thermometers in thermowells and adjust vertical and tilted positions.

- F. Install remote-mounted thermometer bulbs in thermowells and install cases on panels; connect cases with tubing and support tubing to prevent kinks. Use minimum tubing length.
- G. Install duct-thermometer mounting brackets in walls of ducts. Attach to duct with screws.
- H. Install direct-mounted pressure gages in piping tees with pressure gage located on pipe at the most readable position.
- I. Install valve and snubber in piping for each pressure gage for fluids (except steam).
- J. Install valve and syphon fitting in piping for each pressure gage for steam.
- K. Install test plugs in piping tees.
- L. Install flow indicators in piping systems in accessible positions for easy viewing.
- M. Assemble and install connections, tubing, and accessories between flow-measuring elements and flowmeters according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- N. Install flowmeter elements in accessible positions in piping systems.
- O. Install wafer-orifice flowmeter elements between pipe flanges.
- P. Install differential-pressure-type flowmeter elements, with at least minimum straight lengths of pipe, upstream and downstream from element according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- Q. Install connection fittings in accessible locations for attachment to portable indicators.
- R. Install thermometers in the following locations:
 - 1. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic zone.
 - 2. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic boiler.
 - 3. Two inlets and two outlets of each chiller.
 - 4. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic coil in air-handling units.
 - 5. Two inlets and two outlets of each hydronic heat exchanger.
 - 6. Inlet and outlet of each thermal-storage tank.
 - 7. Outside-, return-, supply-, and mixed-air ducts.
 - 8. .
- S. Install pressure gages in the following locations:
 - 1. Discharge of each pressure-reducing valve.
 - 2. Inlet and outlet of each chiller chilled-water and condenser-water connection.
 - 3. Suction and discharge of each pump.
 - 4. .

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Install meters and gages adjacent to machines and equipment to allow space for service and maintenance of meters, gages, machines, and equipment.
- B. Connect flowmeter-system elements to meters.
- C. Connect flowmeter transmitters to meters.
- D. Connect thermal-energy meter transmitters to meters.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. After installation, calibrate meters according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Adjust faces of meters and gages to proper angle for best visibility.

3.4 THERMOMETER SCHEDULE

- A. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each hydronic zone shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Liquid-filled Sealed, bimetallic-actuated type.
 - 2. Direct-mounted, metal-case, vapor-actuated type.
 - 3. Compact-style, liquid-in-glass type.
 - 4. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.
- B. Thermometers at inlets and outlets of each hydronic heat exchanger shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Liquid-filled Sealed, bimetallic-actuated type.
 - 2. Direct-mounted, metal-case, vapor-actuated type.
 - 3. Compact-style, liquid-in-glass type.
 - 4. Direct-mounted, light-activated type.
 - 5. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.

3.5 THERMOMETER SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

- A. Scale Range for Condenser-Water Piping: 0 to 150 deg F.
- B. Scale Range for Air Ducts: Minus 40 to plus 160 deg F.

3.6 PRESSURE-GAGE SCHEDULE

- A. Pressure gages at suction and discharge of each pump shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Liquid-filled Sealed, direct-mounted, metal case.
 - 2. Sealed, direct-mounted, plastic case.
 - 3. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.

3.7 PRESSURE-GAGE SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

- A. Scale Range for Condenser-Water Piping: 0 to 30 psi.

3.8 FLOWMETER SCHEDULE

- A. Flowmeters for Condenser-Water Piping: Turbine type.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 230523.11 - GLOBE VALVES FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Bronze angle valves.
 - 2. Bronze globe valves.
 - 3. Iron globe valves.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CWP: Cold working pressure.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
 - 1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
 - 2. Protect threads, flange faces, grooves, and weld ends.
 - 3. Set angle and globe valves closed to prevent rattling.
- B. Use the following precautions during storage:
 - 1. Maintain valve end protection.
 - 2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher-than-ambient dew point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.
- C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

- A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. ASME Compliance:
 - 1. ASME B1.20.1 for threads for threaded-end valves.
 - 2. ASME B16.1 for flanges on iron valves.
 - 3. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
 - 4. ASME B16.18 for solder joint.
 - 5. ASME B31.1 for power piping valves.
 - 6. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.
- C. Refer to HVAC valve schedule articles for applications of valves.
- D. Valve Pressure and Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
- E. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Valves in Insulated Piping: With 2-inch stem extensions.

2.2 BRONZE ANGLE VALVES

- A. Bronze Angle Valves, Class 125:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Material: ASTM B62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
 - d. Ends: Threaded.
 - e. Stem and Disc: Bronze.
 - f. Packing: Asbestos free.
 - g. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.
- B. Bronze Angle Valves, Class 150:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
 - b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.

- c. Body Material: ASTM B62, bronze with integral seat and union-ring bonnet.
- d. Ends: Threaded.
- e. Stem and Disc: Bronze.
- f. Packing: Asbestos free.
- g. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

2.3 BRONZE GLOBE VALVES

A. Bronze Globe Valves, Class 125:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
- c. Body Material: ASTM B62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
- d. Ends: Threaded or solder joint.
- e. Stem and Disc: Bronze.
- f. Packing: Asbestos free.
- g. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

B. Bronze Globe Valves, Class 150:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
- b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
- c. Body Material: ASTM B62, bronze with integral seat and union-ring bonnet.
- d. Ends: Threaded.
- e. Stem: Bronze.
- f. Disc: Bronze.
- g. Packing: Asbestos free.
- h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

2.4 IRON GLOBE VALVES

A. Iron Globe Valves, Class 125:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-85, Type I.
- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
- c. Body Material: ASTM A126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
- d. Ends: Flanged.
- e. Trim: Bronze.

- f. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.
 - g. Operator: Handwheel or chainwheel.
- B. Iron Globe Valves, Class 250:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-85, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: 500 psig.
 - c. Body Material: ASTM A126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
 - d. Ends: Flanged.
 - e. Trim: Bronze.
 - f. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.
 - g. Operator: Handwheel or chainwheel.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.

- E. Install valve tags. Comply with requirements in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

3.4 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:
 - 1. Throttling Service except Steam: Globe or angle valves.
 - 2. Throttling Service, Steam: Globe or angle valves.
- B. If valves with specified CWP ratings are unavailable, the same types of valves with higher CWP ratings may be substituted.
- C. Select valves with the following end connections:
 - 1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules.
 - 2. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules.
 - 3. For Copper Tubing, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged ends.
 - 4. For Steel Piping, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends.
 - 5. For Steel Piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules.
 - 6. For Steel Piping, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged ends.

3.5 CONDENSER-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze angle or globe valves, Class 125, with bronze disc and threaded ends.
- B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Iron globe valves, Class 125, with flanged ends.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 230523.12 - BALL VALVES FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Brass ball valves.
 - 2. Bronze ball valves.
 - 3. Steel ball valves.
 - 4. Iron ball valves.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CWP: Cold working pressure.
- B. SWP: Steam working pressure.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
 - 1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
 - 2. Protect threads, flange faces, and weld ends.
 - 3. Set ball valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.
- B. Use the following precautions during storage:
 - 1. Maintain valve end protection.
 - 2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher-than-ambient-dew-point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.

- C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use operating handles or stems as lifting or rigging points.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

- A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. ASME Compliance:
 - 1. ASME B1.20.1 for threads for threaded-end valves.
 - 2. ASME B16.1 for flanges on iron valves.
 - 3. ASME B16.5 for flanges on steel valves.
 - 4. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
 - 5. ASME B16.18 for solder-joint connections.
 - 6. ASME B31.1 for power piping valves.
 - 7. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.
- C. Bronze valves shall be made with dezincification-resistant materials. Bronze valves made with copper alloy (brass) containing more than 15 percent zinc are not permitted.
- D. Refer to HVAC valve schedule articles for applications of valves.
- E. Valve Pressure-Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
- F. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Valve Actuator Types:
 - 1. Gear Actuator: For quarter-turn valves NPS 4 and larger.
 - 2. Handlever: For quarter-turn valves smaller than NPS 4.
- H. Valves in Insulated Piping:
 - 1. Include 2-inch stem extensions.
 - 2. Extended operating handle of nonthermal-conductive material, and protective sleeves that allow operation of valves without breaking the vapor seals or disturbing insulation.
 - 3. Memory stops that are fully adjustable after insulation is applied.
- I. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

2.2 BRASS BALL VALVES

A. Brass Ball Valves, One-Piece:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
- b. CWP Rating: 400 psig.
- c. Body Design: One piece.
- d. Body Material: Forged brass.
- e. Ends: Threaded.
- f. Seats: PTFE.
- g. Stem: Brass.
- h. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
- i. Port: Reduced.

B. Brass Ball Valves, Two-Piece with Full Port and Brass Trim, Threaded Ends:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
- b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
- c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
- d. Body Design: Two piece.
- e. Body Material: Forged brass.
- f. Ends: Threaded.
- g. Seats: PTFE.
- h. Stem: Brass.
- i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
- j. Port: Full.

C. Brass Ball Valves, Two-Piece with Full Port and Brass Trim, Press Ends:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
- b. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
- c. Body Design: Two piece.
- d. Body Material: Forged brass.
- e. Ends: Press.
- f. Seats: PTFE or RPTFE.
- g. Stem: Brass.
- h. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
- i. Port: Full.
- j. O-Ring Seal: Buna-N or EPDM.

D. Brass Ball Valves, Two-Piece with Full Port and Stainless-Steel Trim, Threaded Ends:

1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
 - b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
 - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
 - d. Body Design: Two piece.
 - e. Body Material: Forged brass.
 - f. Ends: Threaded.
 - g. Seats: PTFE.
 - h. Stem: Stainless steel.
 - i. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
 - j. Port: Full.

E. Brass Ball Valves, Two-Piece with Full Port and Stainless-Steel Trim, Press Ends:

1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
 - b. CWP Rating: Minimum 200 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Two piece.
 - d. Body Material: Forged brass.
 - e. Ends: Press.
 - f. Press Ends Connections Rating: Minimum 200 psig.
 - g. Seats: PTFE or RPTFE.
 - h. Stem: Stainless steel.
 - i. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
 - j. Port: Full.
 - k. O-Ring Seal: Buna-N or EPDM.

F. Brass Ball Valves, Two-Piece with Regular Port and Brass Trim:

1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
 - b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
 - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
 - d. Body Design: Two piece.
 - e. Body Material: Forged brass.
 - f. Ends: Threaded.
 - g. Seats: PTFE.
 - h. Stem: Brass.
 - i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
 - j. Port: Regular.

G. Brass Ball Valves, Two-Piece with Regular Port and Stainless-Steel Trim:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
- b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
- c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
- d. Body Design: Two piece.
- e. Body Material: Brass or bronze.
- f. Ends: Threaded.
- g. Seats: PTFE.
- h. Stem: Stainless steel.
- i. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
- j. Port: Regular.

H. Brass Ball Valves, Three-Piece with Full Port and Brass Trim:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
- b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
- c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
- d. Body Design: Three piece.
- e. Body Material: Forged brass.
- f. Ends: Threaded.
- g. Seats: PTFE.
- h. Stem: Brass.
- i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
- j. Port: Full.

I. Brass Ball Valves, Three-Piece with Full Port and Stainless-Steel Trim:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
- b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
- c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
- d. Body Design: Three piece.
- e. Body Material: Forged brass.
- f. Ends: Threaded.
- g. Seats: PTFE.
- h. Stem: Stainless steel.
- i. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
- j. Port: Full.

2.3 BRONZE BALL VALVES

A. Bronze Ball Valves, One-Piece with Bronze Trim:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
- b. CWP Rating: 400 psig.
- c. Body Design: One piece.
- d. Body Material: Bronze.
- e. Ends: Threaded.
- f. Seats: PTFE.
- g. Stem: Bronze.
- h. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
- i. Port: Reduced.

B. Bronze Ball Valves, One-Piece with Stainless-Steel Trim:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
- b. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
- c. Body Design: One piece.
- d. Body Material: Bronze.
- e. Ends: Threaded.
- f. Seats: PTFE.
- g. Stem: Stainless steel.
- h. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
- i. Port: Reduced.

C. Bronze Ball Valves, Two-Piece with Full Port and Bronze or Brass Trim, Threaded Ends:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
- b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
- c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
- d. Body Design: Two piece.
- e. Body Material: Bronze.
- f. Ends: Threaded.
- g. Seats: PTFE.
- h. Stem: Bronze.
- i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
- j. Port: Full.

D. Bronze Ball Valves, Two-Piece with Full Port and Stainless-Steel Trim:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
- b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
- c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.

- d. Body Design: Two piece.
- e. Body Material: Bronze.
- f. Ends: Threaded.
- g. Seats: PTFE.
- h. Stem: Stainless steel.
- i. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
- j. Port: Full.

E. Bronze Ball Valves, Two-Piece with Regular Port and Bronze or Brass Trim:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
- b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
- c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
- d. Body Design: Two piece.
- e. Body Material: Bronze.
- f. Ends: Threaded.
- g. Seats: PTFE.
- h. Stem: Bronze.
- i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
- j. Port: Regular.

F. Bronze Ball Valves, Two-Piece with Regular Port and Stainless-Steel Trim:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
- b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
- c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
- d. Body Design: Two piece.
- e. Body Material: Bronze.
- f. Ends: Threaded.
- g. Seats: PTFE.
- h. Stem: Stainless steel.
- i. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
- j. Port: Regular.

G. Bronze Ball Valves, Three-Piece with Full Port and Bronze or Brass Trim:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
- b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
- c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
- d. Body Design: Three piece.
- e. Body Material: Bronze.

- f. Ends: Threaded.
- g. Seats: PTFE.
- h. Stem: Bronze.
- i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
- j. Port: Full.

H. Bronze Ball Valves, Three-Piece with Full Port Stainless-Steel Trim:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
- b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
- c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
- d. Body Design: Three piece.
- e. Body Material: Bronze.
- f. Ends: Threaded.
- g. Seats: PTFE.
- h. Stem: Stainless steel.
- i. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
- j. Port: Full.

I. Bronze Ball Valves, Three-Piece with Regular Port, and Stainless-Steel Trim:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
- b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
- c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
- d. Body Design: Three piece.
- e. Body Material: Bronze.
- f. Ends: Threaded and solder.
- g. Seats: PTFE.
- h. Stem: Stainless steel.
- i. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
- j. Port: Regular.

2.4 STEEL BALL VALVES

A. Steel Ball Valves with Full Port and Stainless-Steel Trim, Class 150:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-72.
- b. CWP Rating: 285 psig.
- c. Body Design: Split body.
- d. Body Material: Carbon steel, ASTM A216, Type WCB.
- e. Ends: Flanged.

- f. Seats: PTFE.
- g. Stem: Stainless steel.
- h. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
- i. Port: Full.

B. Steel Ball Valves with Full Port and Stainless-Steel Trim, Class 300:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-72.
- b. CWP Rating: 720 psig.
- c. Body Design: Split body.
- d. Body Material: Carbon steel, ASTM A216, Type WCB.
- e. Ends: Flanged.
- f. Seats: PTFE.
- g. Stem: Stainless steel.
- h. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
- i. Port: Full.

2.5 IRON BALL VALVES

A. Iron Ball Valves, Class 125:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-72.
- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
- c. Body Design: Split body.
- d. Body Material: ASTM A126, gray iron.
- e. Ends: Flanged.
- f. Seats: PTFE.
- g. Stem: Stainless steel.
- h. Ball: Stainless steel.
- i. Port: Full.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.

- C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- E. Install valve tags. Comply with requirements in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.

3.3 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. If valves with specified SWP classes or CWP ratings are unavailable, the same types of valves with higher SWP classes or CWP ratings may be substituted.
- B. Select valves with the following end connections:
 - 1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valve-end option or press-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
 - 2. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
 - 3. For Copper Tubing, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged ends.
 - 4. For Steel Piping, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends.
 - 5. For Steel Piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
 - 6. For Steel Piping, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged ends.

3.4 CHILLED-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller: Brass or bronze ball valves, one piece, with brass bronze trim, full port, threaded or press connection-joint ends.
- B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:

1. Iron ball valves, Class 125.
2. Steel ball valves, Class 150.

3.5 CONDENSER-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller: Brass or bronze ball valves, one piece with stainless-steel trim, full port, threaded or press connection-joint ends.
 1. Valves may be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
- B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:
 1. Iron ball valves, Class 125.
 - a. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
 2. Steel ball valves, Class 150.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 230523.13 - BUTTERFLY VALVES FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Iron, single-flange butterfly valves.
 - 2. Iron, grooved-end butterfly valves.
 - 3. High-performance butterfly valves.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CWP: Cold working pressure.
- B. EPDM: Ethylene propylene copolymer rubber.
- C. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene, Buna-N, or nitrile rubber.
- D. SWP: Steam working pressure.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
 - 1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
 - 2. Protect threads, flange faces, grooves, and weld ends.
 - 3. Set butterfly valves closed or slightly open.
- B. Use the following precautions during storage:
 - 1. Maintain valve end protection.

2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher-than-ambient-dew-point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.
- C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

- A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. ASME Compliance:
 1. ASME B16.1 for flanges on iron valves.
 2. ASME B16.5 for pipe flanges and flanged fittings, NPS 1/2 through NPS 24.
 3. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
 4. ASME B31.1 for power piping valves.
 5. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.
- C. AWWA Compliance: Comply with AWWA C606 for grooved-end connections.
- D. Valve Pressure-Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
- E. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Valve Actuator Types:
 1. Gear Actuator: For valves NPS 8 and larger.
 2. Handlever: For valves NPS 6 and smaller.
- G. Valves in Insulated Piping: With 2-inch stem extensions with extended necks.

2.2 IRON, SINGLE-FLANGE BUTTERFLY VALVES

- A. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with Aluminum-Bronze Disc:
 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.

- d. Body Material: ASTM A126, cast iron or ASTM A536, ductile iron.
- e. Seat: EPDM.
- f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
- g. Disc: Aluminum bronze.

B. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with Ductile-Iron Disc:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
- b. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
- c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
- d. Body Material: ASTM A126, cast iron or ASTM A536, ductile iron.
- e. Seat: EPDM.
- f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
- g. Disc: Nickel-plated or -coated ductile iron.

C. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with Stainless-Steel Disc:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
- b. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
- c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
- d. Body Material: ASTM A126, cast iron or ASTM A536, ductile iron.
- e. Seat: EPDM.
- f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
- g. Disc: Stainless steel.

2.3 DUCTILE-IRON, GROOVED-END BUTTERFLY VALVES

A. Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves, 175 CWP:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
- b. CWP Rating: 175 psig.
- c. Body Material: Coated, ductile iron.
- d. Stem: Two-piece stainless steel.
- e. Disc: Coated, ductile iron.
- f. Seal: EPDM.

B. Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves, 300 CWP:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
- b. NPS 8 and Smaller CWP Rating: 300 psig.
- c. NPS 10 and Larger CWP Rating: 200 psig.
- d. Body Material: Coated, ductile iron.
- e. Stem: Two-piece stainless steel.
- f. Disc: Coated, ductile iron.
- g. Seal: EPDM.

2.4 HIGH-PERFORMANCE BUTTERFLY VALVES

A. Single-Flange, High-Performance Butterfly Valves, Class 150:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-68.
- b. CWP Rating: 285 psig at 100 deg F.
- c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
- d. Body Material: Carbon steel, cast iron, ductile iron, or stainless steel.
- e. Seat: Reinforced PTFE or metal.
- f. Stem: Stainless steel; offset from seat plane.
- g. Disc: Carbon steel.
- h. Service: Bidirectional.

B. Single-Flange, High-Performance Butterfly Valves, Class 300:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-68.
- b. CWP Rating: 720 psig at 100 deg F.
- c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
- d. Body Material: Carbon steel, cast iron, or ductile iron.
- e. Seat: Reinforced PTFE or metal.
- f. Stem: Stainless steel; offset from seat plane.
- g. Disc: Carbon steel.
- h. Service: Bidirectional.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.

- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- C. Examine mating flange faces for damage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- D. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- E. Install valve tags. Comply with requirements in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

3.4 CONDENSER-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:
 - 1. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12: Aluminum-bronze disc, 200 CWP, and EPDM seat.
 - 2. Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12: 175 CWP.
 - 3. High-Performance Butterfly Valves: Single flange, Class 150.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 230523.15 - GATE VALVES FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Bronze gate valves.
 - 2. Iron gate valves.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CWP: Cold working pressure.
- B. NRS: Nonrising stem.
- C. OS&Y: Outside screw and yoke.
- D. RS: Rising stem.
- E. SWP: Steam working pressure.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
 - 1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
 - 2. Protect threads, flange faces, grooves, and weld ends.
 - 3. Set gate valves closed to prevent rattling.
- B. Use the following precautions during storage:

1. Maintain valve end protection.
 2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher-than-ambient-dew-point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.
- C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

- A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. ASME Compliance:
1. ASME B1.20.1 for threads for threaded-end valves.
 2. ASME B16.1 for flanges on iron valves.
 3. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
 4. ASME B16.18 for solder joint.
 5. ASME B31.1 for power piping valves.
 6. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.
- C. AWWA Compliance: Comply with AWWA C606 for grooved-end connections.
- D. Bronze valves shall be made with dezincification-resistant materials. Bronze valves made with copper alloy (brass) containing more than 15 percent zinc are not permitted.
- E. Valve Pressure-Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
- F. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- G. RS Valves in Insulated Piping: With 2-inch stem extensions.
- H. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

2.2 BRONZE GATE VALVES

- A. Bronze Gate Valves, NRS, Class 125:
1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.

- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
- c. Body Material: ASTM B62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
- d. Ends: Threaded.
- e. Stem: Bronze.
- f. Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
- g. Packing: Asbestos free.
- h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

B. Bronze Gate Valves, RS, Class 125:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
- c. Body Material: ASTM B62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
- d. Ends: Threaded.
- e. Stem: Bronze.
- f. Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
- g. Packing: Asbestos free.
- h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

C. Bronze Gate Valves, NRS, Class 150:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
- b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
- c. Body Material: ASTM B62, bronze with integral seat and union-ring bonnet.
- d. Ends: Threaded.
- e. Stem: Bronze.
- f. Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
- g. Packing: Asbestos free.
- h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

D. Bronze Gate Valves, RS, Class 150:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
- b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
- c. Body Material: ASTM B62, bronze with integral seat and union-ring bonnet.
- d. Ends: Threaded.
- e. Stem: Bronze.
- f. Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
- g. Packing: Asbestos free.

- h. Handwheel: Malleable iron.

2.3 IRON GATE VALVES

A. Iron Gate Valves, NRS, Class 125:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
- b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 200 psig.
- c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 150 psig.
- d. Body Material: ASTM A126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
- e. Ends: Flanged.
- f. Trim: Bronze.
- g. Disc: Solid wedge.
- h. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

B. Iron Gate Valves, OS&Y, Class 125:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
- b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 200 psig.
- c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 150 psig.
- d. Body Material: ASTM A126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
- e. Ends: Flanged.
- f. Trim: Bronze.
- g. Disc: Solid wedge.
- h. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

C. Iron Gate Valves, NRS, Class 250:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
- b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 500 psig.
- c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 300 psig.
- d. Body Material: ASTM A126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
- e. Ends: Flanged.
- f. Trim: Bronze.
- g. Disc: Solid wedge.
- h. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

D. Iron Gate Valves, OS&Y, Class 250:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
- b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 500 psig.
- c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 300 psig.
- d. Body Material: ASTM A126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
- e. Ends: Flanged.
- f. Trim: Bronze.
- g. Disc: Solid wedge.
- h. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- E. Install chainwheels on operators for gate valves NPS 4 and larger and more than 96 inches above floor. Extend chains to 60 inches above finished floor.
- F. Install valve tags. Comply with requirements in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

3.4 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:
 - 1. Shutoff Service: Gate valves.
- B. If valves with specified SWP classes or CWP ratings are unavailable, the same types of valves with higher SWP classes or CWP ratings may be substituted.
- C. Select valves, except wafer types, with the following end connections:
 - 1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends, except where solder-joint valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
 - 2. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends, except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
 - 3. For Copper Tubing, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged ends.
 - 4. For Steel Piping, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends.
 - 5. For Steel Piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends, except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
 - 6. For Steel Piping, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged ends.
 - 7. For Grooved-End Copper Tubing and Steel Piping, except for Steam and Steam Condensate Piping: Valve ends may be grooved.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 230529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
 - 2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
 - 3. Fiberglass pipe hangers.
 - 4. Metal framing systems.
 - 5. Fiberglass strut systems.
 - 6. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
 - 7. Fastener systems.
 - 8. Pipe stands.
 - 9. Equipment stands.
 - 10. Equipment supports.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
 - 1. Product Data: For recycled content, indicating postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content and cost.
 - 2. Environmental Product Declaration (EPD): For each product.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Structural-Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section IX.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.

2.2 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
 - 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
 - 2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized, hot-dip galvanized, or electro-galvanized.
 - 3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coated, or epoxy powder-coated.
 - 4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
 - 5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
- B. Stainless Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
 - 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
 - 2. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
 - 3. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of stainless steel.
- C. Copper Pipe and Tube Hangers:
 - 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-plated steel, factory-fabricated components.
 - 2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of copper-plated steel.

2.3 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

- A. Description: MSS SP-58, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural carbon-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

2.4 FIBERGLASS PIPE HANGERS

- A. Clevis-Type, Fiberglass Pipe Hangers:
 - 1. Description: Similar to MSS SP-58, Type 1, factory-fabricated steel pipe hanger except hanger is made of fiberglass or fiberglass-reinforced resin.

2.5 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS

- A. MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:
 - 1. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated, pipe-support assembly made of steel channels, accessories, fittings, and other components for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
 - 2. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
 - 3. Channels: Continuous slotted carbon-steel channel with inturned lips.
 - 4. Channel Width: Selected for applicable load criteria.
 - 5. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
 - 6. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of galvanized steel.
 - 7. Metallic Coating: No coating.
- B. Non-MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:
 - 1. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated, pipe-support assembly made of steel channels, accessories, fittings, and other components for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
 - 2. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
 - 3. Channels: Continuous slotted carbon-steel channel with inturned lips.
 - 4. Channel Width: Select for applicable load criteria.
 - 5. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
 - 6. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of galvanized steel.
 - 7. Metallic Coating: No coating.

2.6 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS

- A. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: ASTM C552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psi or ASTM C591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psi minimum compressive strength and vapor barrier.
- B. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: Water-repellent-treated, ASTM C533, Type I calcium silicate with 100-psi or ASTM C552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psi or ASTM C591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psi minimum compressive strength.
- C. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.
- D. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.
- E. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

2.7 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
- B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type anchors for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
 - 1. Indoor Applications: Zinc-coated or stainless steel.
 - 2. Outdoor Applications: Stainless steel.

2.8 PIPE STANDS

- A. General Requirements for Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated assemblies made of manufactured corrosion-resistant components to support roof-mounted piping.
- B. Compact Pipe Stand:
 - 1. Description: Single base unit with integral-rod roller, pipe clamps, or V-shaped cradle to support pipe, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
 - 2. Base: Single, vulcanized rubber, molded polypropylene, or polycarbonate.
 - a. Recycled Content: Postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content not less than percent.

3. Hardware: Galvanized steel or polycarbonate.
4. Accessories: Protection pads.

C. Low-Profile, Single Base, Single-Pipe Stand:

1. Description: Single base with vertical and horizontal members, and pipe support, for roof installation without membrane protection.
2. Base: Single, vulcanized rubber, molded polypropylene, or polycarbonate.
 - a. Recycled Content: Postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content not less than Insert value percent.
3. Vertical Members: Two, galvanized-steel, continuous-thread 1/2-inch rods.
4. Horizontal Member: Adjustable horizontal, galvanized-steel pipe support channels.
5. Pipe Supports: Roller.
6. Hardware: Galvanized steel.
7. Accessories: Protection pads.
8. Height: 12 inches above roof.

2.9 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural carbon-steel shapes.

2.10 OUTDOOR EQUIPMENT STANDS

- A. Description: Individual foot supports with elevated adjustable channel cross bars and clamps/fasteners/bolts for ground or roof supported outdoor equipment components, without roof membrane penetration, in a pre-fabricated system that can be modularly-assembled on site.
- B. Foot Material: Rubber or polypropylene.
- C. Rails Material: Hot dip galvanized carbon steel.
- D. Wind/Sliding Load Resistance: Up to 150 MPH minimum.

2.11 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum: ASTM B221.
- B. Carbon Steel: ASTM A1011/A1011M.
- C. Structural Steel: ASTM A36/A36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; galvanized.
- D. Stainless Steel: ASTM A240/A240M.

- E. Threaded Rods: Continuously threaded. Zinc-plated or galvanized steel for indoor applications and stainless steel for outdoor applications. Mating nuts and washers of similar materials as rods.
- F. Grout: ASTM C1107/C1107M, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
 - 1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
 - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping materials and installation for penetrations through fire-rated walls, ceilings, and assemblies.
- B. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus 200 lb.

3.2 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-58. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.
- B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-58. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
 - 1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
 - 2. Field fabricate from ASTM A36/A36M, carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled strut systems.
- D. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.
- E. Fastener System Installation:

1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches thick in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
 2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Pipe Stand Installation:
1. Pipe Stand Types except Curb-Mounted Type: Assemble components and mount on smooth roof surface. Do not penetrate roof membrane.
 2. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe Stands: Assemble components or fabricate pipe stand and mount on permanent, stationary roof curb. See Section 077200 "Roof Accessories" for curbs.
- G. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- H. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
- I. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- J. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- K. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- L. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- M. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- N. Insulated Piping:
1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
 - a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
 - b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.

- c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- 2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
- 3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
 - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
- 4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
 - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
 - b. NPS 4: 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
 - c. NPS 5 and NPS 6: 18 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
 - d. NPS 8 to NPS 14: 24 inches long and 0.075 inch thick.
 - e. NPS 16 to NPS 24: 24 inches long and 0.105 inch thick.
- 5. Pipes NPS 8 and Larger: Include wood or reinforced calcium-silicate-insulation inserts of length at least as long as protective shield.
- 6. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

3.3 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

3.4 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.

- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
 - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
 - 4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.

3.6 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
 - 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
- B. Touchup: Comply with requirements in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" Section 099123 "Interior Painting" and Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings" for cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal.
- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A780/A780M.

3.7 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with MSS SP-58 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.

- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports and metal framing systems and attachments for general service applications.
- F. Use stainless steel pipe hangers and fiberglass pipe hangers and fiberglass strut systems and stainless steel or corrosion-resistant attachments for hostile environment applications.
- G. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper or stainless steel attachments for copper piping and tubing.
- H. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
- I. Use thermal-hanger shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.
- J. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 - 1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
 - 2. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of up to 1050 deg F, pipes NPS 4 to NPS 24, requiring up to 4 inches of insulation.
 - 3. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 36, requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches of insulation.
 - 4. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of cold and hot pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 24 if little or no insulation is required.
 - 5. Pipe Hangers (MSS Type 5): For suspension of pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 4, to allow off-center closure for hanger installation before pipe erection.
 - 6. Adjustable, Swivel Split- or Solid-Ring Hangers (MSS Type 6): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 8.
 - 7. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
 - 8. Adjustable Band Hangers (MSS Type 9): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
 - 9. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
 - 10. Split Pipe Ring with or without Turnbuckle Hangers (MSS Type 11): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 8.
 - 11. Extension Hinged or Two-Bolt Split Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 12): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 3.
 - 12. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
 - 13. Clips (MSS Type 26): For support of insulated pipes not subject to expansion or contraction.

14. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.
 15. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate, and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
 16. Adjustable Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36 if vertical adjustment is required, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
 17. Single-Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes NPS 1 to NPS 30, from two rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
 18. Adjustable Roller Hangers (MSS Type 43): For suspension of pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 24, from single rod if horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
 19. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 42 if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is unnecessary.
 20. Pipe Roll and Plate Units (MSS Type 45): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 24 if small horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur and vertical adjustment is unnecessary.
 21. Adjustable Pipe Roll and Base Units (MSS Type 46): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 30 if vertical and lateral adjustment during installation might be required in addition to expansion and contraction.
- K. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24.
 2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- L. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
 2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
 3. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11, split pipe rings.
 4. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
 5. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
- M. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
 2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joint construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
 3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
 4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
 5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
 6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
 7. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
 8. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
 9. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
 10. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
 11. Malleable-Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
 12. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
 - a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
 - b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
 - c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb.
 13. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
 14. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
 15. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.
- N. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
 3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
- O. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Restraint-Control Devices (MSS Type 47): Where indicated to control piping movement.

2. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches.
 3. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41, roll hanger with springs.
 4. Spring Sway Braces (MSS Type 50): To retard sway, shock, vibration, or thermal expansion in piping systems.
 5. Variable-Spring Hangers (MSS Type 51): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from hanger.
 6. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.
 7. Variable-Spring Trapeze Hangers (MSS Type 53): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from trapeze support.
 8. Constant Supports: For critical piping stress and if necessary to avoid transfer of stress from one support to another support, critical terminal, or connected equipment. Include auxiliary stops for erection, hydrostatic test, and load-adjustment capability. These supports include the following types:
 - a. Horizontal (MSS Type 54): Mounted horizontally.
 - b. Vertical (MSS Type 55): Mounted vertically.
 - c. Trapeze (MSS Type 56): Two vertical-type supports and one trapeze member.
- P. Comply with MSS SP-58 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- Q. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- R. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 230533 - HEAT TRACING FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes heat tracing for HVAC piping with the following electric heating cables:
 - 1. Plastic insulated, series resistance.
 - 2. Self-regulating, parallel resistance.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 210533 "Heat Tracing for Fire-Suppression Piping."
 - 2. Section 220533 "Heat Tracing for Plumbing Piping."

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
 - 2. Schedule heating capacity, length of cable, spacing, and electrical power requirement for each electric heating cable required.
- B. Shop Drawings: For electric heating cable.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
 - 2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.
- B. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For electric heating cables to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace electric heating cable that fails in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: Three years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PLASTIC-INSULATED, SERIES-RESISTANCE HEATING CABLES

- A. Comply with IEEE 515.1.
- B. Heating Element: Single- or dual-stranded resistor wire. Terminate with waterproof, factory-assembled, nonheating leads with connectors at both ends.
- C. Electrical Insulating Jacket: Minimum 4.0-mil Kapton with silicone, Tefzel, or polyolefin.
- D. Cable Cover: Aluminum braid and silicone or Hylar outer jacket.
- E. Maximum Operating Temperature (Power On): 150 deg F.
- F. Maximum Exposure Temperature (Power Off): 185 deg F.
- G. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- H. Capacities and Characteristics:
 - 1. Maximum Heat Output: 6 W/ft. maximum.
 - 2. Piping Diameter: Reference Plans.
 - a. Volts: 120.
 - b. Phase: 1.
 - c. Hertz: 60.

2.2 SELF-REGULATING, PARALLEL-RESISTANCE HEATING CABLES

- A. Comply with IEEE 515.1.
- B. Heating Element: Pair of parallel No. 16 or No. 18 AWG, tinned or nickel-coated, stranded copper bus wires embedded in crosslinked conductive polymer core, which varies heat output in response to temperature along its length. Terminate with waterproof, factory-assembled, nonheating leads with connectors at one end, and seal the opposite end watertight. Cable shall be capable of crossing over itself once without overheating.
- C. Electrical Insulating Jacket: Flame-retardant polyolefin.
- D. Cable Cover: Tinned-copper or Stainless-steel braid and polyolefin outer jacket with ultraviolet inhibitor.
- E. Maximum Operating Temperature (Power On): 150 deg F.
- F. Maximum Exposure Temperature (Power Off): 185 deg F.
- G. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- H. Capacities and Characteristics:
 - 1. Maximum Heat Output: 5 W/ft..
 - 2. Piping Diameter: Reference Plans
 - a. Volts: 120.
 - b. Phase: 1.
 - c. Hertz: 60.

2.3 CONTROLS

- A. Remote bulb unit with adjustable temperature range from 30 to 50 deg F.
- B. Snap action; open-on-rise, single-pole switch with minimum current rating adequate for connected cable.
- C. Remote bulb on capillary, resistance temperature device, or thermistor for directly sensing pipe-wall temperature.
- D. Corrosion-resistant, waterproof control enclosure.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Cable Installation Accessories: Fiberglass tape, heat-conductive putty, cable ties, silicone end seals and splice kits, and installation clips all furnished by manufacturer, or as recommended in writing by manufacturer.
- B. Warning Labels: Refer to Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- C. Warning Tape: Continuously printed "Electrical Tracing"; vinyl, at least 3 mils thick, and with pressure-sensitive, permanent, waterproof, self-adhesive back.
 - 1. Width for Markers on Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, Less Than 6 Inches: 3/4 inch minimum.
 - 2. Width for Markers on Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, 6 Inches or Larger: 1-1/2 inches minimum.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine surfaces and substrates to receive electric heating cables for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
 - 1. Ensure surfaces and pipes in contact with electric heating cables are free of burrs and sharp protrusions.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install electric heating cable across expansion joints according to manufacturer's written instructions; use slack cable to allow movement without damage to cable.
- B. Install electric heating cables after piping has been tested and before insulation is installed.
- C. Install electric heating cables according to IEEE 515.1.
- D. Install insulation over piping with electric cables according to Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."
- E. Install warning tape on piping insulation where piping is equipped with electric heating cables.
- F. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- B. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
 - 1. Perform tests after cable installation but before application of coverings such as insulation, wall or ceiling construction, or concrete.
 - 2. Test cables for electrical continuity and insulation integrity before energizing.
 - 3. Test cables to verify rating and power input. Energize and measure voltage and current simultaneously.
- D. Repeat tests for continuity, insulation resistance, and input power after applying thermal insulation on pipe-mounted cables.
- E. Cables will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed heating cables, including nonheating leads, from damage during construction.
- B. Remove and replace damaged heat-tracing cables.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 230553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Equipment labels.
 - 2. Warning signs and labels.
 - 3. Pipe labels.
 - 4. Duct labels.
 - 5. Stencils.
 - 6. Valve tags.
 - 7. Warning tags.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.
- C. Equipment Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled with the proposed content for each label.
- D. Valve numbering scheme.
- E. Valve Schedules: For each piping system to include in maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

- A. Metal Labels for Equipment:

1. Material and Thickness: Brass, 0.032-inch aluminum, 0.032-inch or anodized aluminum, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
 2. Letter Color: Black.
 3. Background Color: White.
 4. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
 5. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
 6. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
 7. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- B. Plastic Labels for Equipment:
1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch Insert dimension thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
 2. Letter Color: Black.
 3. Background Color: Black.
 4. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
 5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
 6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
 7. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
 8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- C. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.
- D. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number, and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules) and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

- A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch Insert dimension thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- B. Letter Color: Red.
- C. Background Color: White.
- D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
- E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
- F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
- G. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
- H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- I. Label Content: Include caution and warning information plus emergency notification instructions.

2.3 PIPE LABELS

- A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction according to ASME A13.1.
- B. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
- C. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
- D. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings; also include pipe size and an arrow indicating flow direction.
 - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
 - 2. Lettering Size: Size letters according to ASME A13.1 for piping At least 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances.

2.4 DUCT LABELS

- A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- B. Letter Color: White.
- C. Background Color: Black.
- D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
- E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
- F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
- G. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
- H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- I. Duct Label Contents: Include identification of duct service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings; also include duct size and an arrow indicating flow direction.
 - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with duct system service lettering to accommodate both directions or as separate unit on each duct label to indicate flow direction.

2.5 STENCILS

- A. Stencils for Piping:
 - 1. Lettering Size: Size letters according to ASME A13.1 for piping At least 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances.
 - 2. Stencil Material: Brass.
 - 3. Stencil Paint: Exterior, gloss, alkyd enamel in colors complying with recommendations in ASME A13.1 unless otherwise indicated. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
 - 4. Identification Paint: Exterior, alkyd enamel in colors according to ASME A13.1 unless otherwise indicated. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
- B. Stencils for Ducts:

1. Lettering Size: Minimum letter height of 1-1/4 inches for viewing distances up to 15 feet and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances.
 2. Stencil Material: Brass.
 3. Stencil Paint: Exterior, gloss, alkyd enamel. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
 4. Identification Paint: Exterior, alkyd enamel. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
- C. Stencils for Access Panels and Door Labels, Equipment Labels, and Similar Operational Instructions:
1. Lettering Size: Minimum letter height of 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances.
 2. Stencil Material: Brass.
 3. Stencil Paint: Exterior, gloss, alkyd enamel. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
 4. Identification Paint: Exterior, alkyd enamel. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.

2.6 VALVE TAGS

- A. Description: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch numbers.
1. Tag Material: Brass, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
 2. Fasteners: Brass wire-link chain or beaded chain or S-hook.
- B. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.
1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.7 WARNING TAGS

- A. Description: Preprinted or partially preprinted accident-prevention tags of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.
1. Size: 3 by 5-1/4 inches minimum.
 2. Fasteners: Brass grommet and wire.
 3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as "DANGER," "CAUTION," or "DO NOT OPERATE."
 4. Color: Safety-yellow background with black lettering.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

3.3 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
- B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

3.4 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Stenciled Pipe Label Option: Stenciled labels may be provided instead of manufactured pipe labels, at Installer's option. Install stenciled pipe labels, complying with ASME A13.1, with painted, color-coded bands or rectangles on each piping system.
 - 1. Identification Paint: Use for contrasting background.
 - 2. Stencil Paint: Use for pipe marking.
- B. Pipe Label Locations: Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
 - 1. Near each valve and control device.
 - 2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
 - 3. Near penetrations and on both sides of through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
 - 4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
 - 5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.

6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
 7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.
- C. Directional Flow Arrows: Arrows shall be used to indicate direction of flow in pipes, including pipes where flow is allowed in both directions.
- D. Pipe Label Color Schedule:
1. Condenser-Water Piping: White letters on a safety-green background.
 2. Refrigerant Piping: Black letters on a safety-orange background.

3.5 DUCT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install plastic-laminated self-adhesive duct labels with permanent adhesive on air ducts in the following color codes:
1. Blue: For cold-air supply ducts.
 2. Yellow: For hot-air supply ducts.
 3. Green: For exhaust-, outside-, relief-, return-, and mixed-air ducts.
- B. Stenciled Duct Label Option: Stenciled labels showing service and flow direction may be provided instead of plastic-laminated duct labels, at Installer's option.
- C. Locate labels near points where ducts enter into and exit from concealed spaces and at maximum intervals of 50 feet in each space where ducts are exposed or concealed by removable ceiling system.

3.6 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves, valves within factory-fabricated equipment units, shutoff valves, faucets, convenience and lawn-watering hose connections, and HVAC terminal devices and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. List tagged valves in a valve schedule.
- B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and color scheme and with captions similar to those indicated in the following subparagraphs:
1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:
 - a. Condenser Water: 1-1/2 inches, round.
 - b. Refrigerant: 1-1/2 inches, round.
 - c. Hot Water: 1-1/2 inches, round.
 - d. Gas: 1-1/2 inches, round.

2. Valve-Tag Colors:

- a. Toxic and Corrosive Fluids: Black letters on a safety-orange background.
- b. Flammable Fluids: Black letters on a safety-yellow background.
- c. Combustible Fluids: White letters on a safety-brown background.
- d. Potable and Other Water: White letters on a safety-green background.
- e. Compressed Air: White letters on a safety-blue background.
- f. Defined by User: White letters on a safety-purple background, black letters on a safety-white background, white letters on a safety-gray background, and white letters on a safety-black background

3.7 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where required.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 230593 - TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification sections, apply to work of this section.
- B. Related Sections
 - 1. General requirements for testing agencies are specified in the Division-1 Section Quality Control Services.
 - 2. Other Division-23 Sections specify balancing devices and their installation, and materials and installations of mechanical systems.
 - 3. Individual Division-23 system sections specify leak testing requirements and procedures.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. **Test and Balance Agent is to be selected by the Owner. Test and Balance will be a separate contract. HVAC contractor shall fully coordinate and assist the Owner's test and balance agency.**
- B. This Section specifies the requirements and procedures total mechanical systems testing, adjusting, and balancing. Requirements include measurement and establishment of the fluid quantities of the mechanical systems as required to meet design specifications, and recording and reporting the results.
- C. Test, adjust, and balance the following mechanical systems
 - 1. Supply air systems, all pressure ranges; including variable volume and double duct systems.
 - 2. Return air systems.
 - 3. Exhaust air systems.
 - 4. Verify temperature control system operation.
- D. Test systems for proper sound and vibration levels.

E. This Section does not include:

1. Testing boilers and pressure vessels for compliance with safety codes;
2. Specifications for materials for patching mechanical systems;
3. Specifications for materials and installation of adjusting and balancing devices. If devices must be added to achieve proper adjusting and balancing, refer to the respective system sections for materials and installation requirements.
4. Requirements and procedures for piping and ductwork systems leakage tests.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Systems testing, adjusting, and balancing is the process of checking and adjusting all the building environmental systems to produce the design objectives. It includes:
1. The balance of air and water distribution;
 2. Adjustment of total system to provide design quantities;
 3. Electrical measurement;
 4. Verification of performance of all equipment and automatic controls;
 5. Sound and vibration measurement.
- B. Test: To determine quantitative performance of equipment.
- C. Adjust: To regulate the specified fluid flow rate and air patterns at the terminal equipment (e.g., reduce fan speed, throttling).
- D. Balance: To proportion flows within the distribution system (submains, branches, and terminals) according to specified design quantities.
- E. Procedure: Standardized approach and execution of sequence of work operations to yield reproducible results.
- F. Report forms: Test data sheets arranged for collecting test data in logical order for submission and review. These data should also form the permanent record to be used as the basis for required future testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- G. Terminal: The point where the controlled fluid enters or leaves the distribution system. These are supply inlets on water terminals, supply outlets on air terminals, return outlets on water terminals, and exhaust or return inlets on air terminals such as registers, grilles, diffusers, louvers, and hoods.
- H. Main: Duct or pipe containing the system's major or entire fluid flow.

- I. Submain: Duct or pipe containing part of the systems' capacity and serving two or more branch mains.
- J. Branch main: Duct or pipe serving two or more terminals.
- K. Branch: Duct or pipe serving a single terminal.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Agency Data

- 1. Submit proof that the proposed testing, adjusting, and balancing agency meets the qualifications specified below.

B. Engineer and Technicians Data:

- 1. Submit proof that the Test and Balance Engineer assigned to supervise the procedures, and the technicians proposed to perform the procedures meet the qualifications specified below.

C. Procedures and Agenda: Submit a synopsis of the testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures and agenda proposed to be used for this project.

D. Maintenance Data: Submit maintenance and operating data that include how to test, adjust, and balance the building systems. Include this information in maintenance data specified in Division 1 and mechanical specifications.

E. Sample Forms: Submit sample forms, if other than those standard forms prepared by the AABC are proposed.

F. Certified Reports: Submit testing, adjusting, and balancing reports bearing the seal and signature of the Test and Balance Engineer. The reports shall be certified proof that the systems have been tested, adjusted, and balanced in accordance with the referenced standards; are an accurate representation of how the systems have been installed; are a true representation of how the systems are operating at the completion of the testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures; and are an accurate record of all final quantities measured, to establish normal operating values of the systems. Follow the procedures and format specified below:

- 1. Draft reports: Upon completion of testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures, prepare draft reports on the approved forms. Draft reports may be hand written, but must be complete, factual, accurate, and legible. Organize and format draft reports in the same manner specified for the final reports. Submit 2 complete sets of draft reports. Only 1 complete set of draft reports will be returned.

2. Final Report: Upon verification and approval of draft reports, prepare final reports, type written, and organized and formatted as specified below. Submit 2 complete sets of final reports.
 3. Report Format: Report forms shall be those standard forms prepared by the referenced standard for each respective item and system to be tested, adjusted, and balanced. Bind report forms complete with schematic systems diagrams and other data in reinforced, vinyl, three-ring binders. Provide binding edge labels with the project identification and a title descriptive of the contents. Divide the contents of the binder into the below listed divisions, separated by divider tabs:
 - a. General Information and Summary
 - b. Air Systems
 - c. Hydronic Systems
 - d. Temperature Control Systems
 - e. Special Systems
 - f. Sound and Vibration Systems
 4. Report Contents: Provide the following minimum information, forms and data:
 - a. General Information and Summary: Inside cover sheet to identify testing, adjusting, and balancing agency, Contractor, Owner, Architect, Engineer, and Project. Include addresses, and contact names and telephone numbers. Also include a certification sheet containing the seal and name address, telephone number, and signature of the Certified Test and Balance Engineer. Include in this division a listing of the instrumentations used for the procedures along with the proof of calibration.
 - b. The remainder of the report shall contain the appropriate forms containing as a minimum, the information indicated on the standard report forms prepared by the AABC and NEBB, for each respective item and system. Prepare a schematic diagram for each item of equipment and system to accompany each respective report form.
- G. Calibration Reports: Submit proof that all required instrumentation has been calibrated to tolerances specified in the referenced standards, within a period of six months prior to starting the project.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. PRE-QUALIFIED CONTRACTORS FOR THIS ROLE.

1. Superior Test & Balance, Inc. (AABC)
1545 Gulf Shores Parkway, PMB #294
Gulf Shores, AL 36542
Tel: 251.317.3088
2. Systems Analysis, Inc. (AABC & NEBB)

217 Oxmoor Circle
Birmingham, AL 35209
Tel: 205.802.7850

3. National True-Test, Inc. (NEBB)
5757 Carrington Lake Parkway
Trussville, AL 35173
Tel: 205.681.9050
4. Environmental Testing Service, Inc. (NEBB)
150 Highway 216
Montevallo, AL 35115
Tel: (205) 476-8640

B. Any Test & Balance Contractors not listed above must be requested and approved in writing ten (10) days prior to the bid.

C. Agency Qualifications

1. Employ the services of an independent testing, adjusting, and balancing agency meeting the qualifications specified below, to be the single source of responsibility to test, adjust, and balance the building mechanical systems identified above, to produce the design objectives. Services shall include checking installations for conformity to design, measurement and establishment of the fluid quantities of the mechanical systems as required to meet design specifications, and recording and reporting the results.
2. An independent testing, adjusting, and balancing agency certified by Associated Air Balance Council (AABC) in those testing and balancing disciplines required for this project, and having at least one Professional Engineer registered in the State in which the services are to be performed, certified by AABC as a Test and Balance Engineer.

D. Codes and Standards:

1. NEBB: "Procedural Standards for Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Environmental Systems."
2. AABC: "National Standards For Total System Balance".
3. ASHRAE: ASHRAE Handbook, 1984 Systems Volume, Chapter 37, Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing.

E. Pre-Balancing Conference: Prior to beginning of the testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures, schedule and conduct a conference with the Architect/Engineer and representatives of installers of the mechanical systems. The objective of the conference is final coordination and verification of system operation and readiness for testing, adjusting, and balancing.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Systems Operation: Systems shall be fully operational prior to beginning procedures.

1.7 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

- A. Test, adjust and balance air conditioning systems during summer season and heating systems during winter season, including at least a period of operation at outside conditions within 5 deg. F wet bulb temperature of maximum summer design condition, and within 10 deg. F dry bulb temperature of minimum winter design condition. Take final temperature readings during seasonal operation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PRELIMINARY PROCEDURES FOR AIR SYSTEM BALANCING

- A. Before operating the system, perform these steps:
 - 1. Obtain design drawings and specifications and become thoroughly acquainted with the design intent.
 - 2. Obtain copies of approved shop drawings of all air handling equipment, outlets (supply, return, and exhaust) and temperature control diagrams.
 - 3. Compare design to installed equipment and field installations.
 - 4. Walk the system from the system air handling equipment to terminal units to determine variations of installation from design.
 - 5. Check filters for cleanliness.
 - 6. Check dampers (both volume and fire) for correct and locked position, and temperature control for completeness of installation before starting fans.
 - 7. Prepare report test sheets for both fans and outlets. Obtain manufacturer's outlet factors and recommended procedures for testing. Prepare a summation of required outlet volumes to permit a crosscheck with required fan volumes.
 - 8. Determine best locations in main and branch ductwork for most accurate duct traverses.
 - 9. Place outlet dampers in the full open position.

10. Prepare schematic diagrams of system "as-built" ductwork and piping layouts to facilitate reporting.
11. Lubricate all motors and bearings.
12. Check fan belt tension.
13. Check fan rotation.

3.2 MEASUREMENTS

- A. Provide all required instrumentation to obtain proper measurements, calibrated to the tolerances specified in the referenced standards. Instruments shall be properly maintained and protected against damage.
- B. Provide instruments meeting the specifications of the referenced standards.
- C. Use only those instruments which have the maximum field measuring accuracy and are best suited to the function being measured.
- D. Apply instrument as recommended by the manufacturer.
- E. Use instruments with minimum scale and maximum subdivisions and with scale ranges proper for the value being measured.
- F. When averaging values, take a sufficient quantity of readings which will result in a repeatability error of less than 5 percent. When measuring a single point, repeat readings until 2 consecutive identical values are obtained.
- G. Take all reading with the eye at the level of the indicated value to prevent parallax.
- H. Use pulsation dampeners where necessary to eliminate error involved in estimating average of rapidly fluctuation readings.
- I. Take measurements in the system where best suited to the task.

3.3 PERFORMING TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING

- A. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system identified, in accordance with the detailed procedures outlined in the referenced standards.
- B. Cut insulation, ductwork, and piping for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary to allow adequate performance of procedures.

- C. Patch insulation, ductwork, and housings, using materials identical to those removed.
- D. Seal ducts and piping, and test for and repair leaks.
- E. Seal insulation to re-establish integrity of the vapor barrier.
- F. Mark equipment settings, including damper control positions, valve indicators, fan speed control levers, and similar controls and devices, to show final settings. Mark with paint or other suitable, permanent identification materials.
- G. Retest, adjust, and balance systems subsequent to significant system modifications, and resubmit test results.

3.4 TESTING FOR SOUND AND VIBRATION

- A. Test and adjust mechanical systems for sound and vibration in accordance with the detailed instructions of the referenced standards.

3.5 RECORD AND REPORT DATA

- A. Record all data obtained during testing, adjusting, and balancing in accordance with, and on the forms recommended by the referenced standards, and as approved on the sample report forms.
- B. Prepare report of recommendations for correcting unsatisfactory mechanical performances when system cannot be successfully balanced.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Training
 - 1. Train the Owner's maintenance personnel on troubleshooting procedures and testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures. Review with the Owner's personnel, the information contained in the Operating and Maintenance Data specified in Division 1 and mechanical specifications.
 - 2. Schedule training with Owner through the Architect/Engineer with at least 7 days prior notice.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 230713 - DUCT INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following duct services:
 - 1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
 - 2. Indoor, exposed supply and outdoor air.
 - 3. Indoor, concealed return located in unconditioned space.
 - 4. Indoor, exposed return located in unconditioned space.
 - 5. Indoor, concealed, Type I, commercial, kitchen hood exhaust.
 - 6. Indoor, exposed, Type I, commercial, kitchen hood exhaust.
 - 7. Indoor, concealed oven and warewash exhaust.
 - 8. Indoor, exposed oven and warewash exhaust.
 - 9. Indoor, concealed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
 - 10. Indoor, exposed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
 - 11. Outdoor, concealed supply and return.
 - 12. Outdoor, exposed supply and return.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied if any).
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
 - 1. Product Data: For adhesives, indicating VOC content.
 - 2. Laboratory Test Reports: For adhesives, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.
 - 3. Product Data: For coatings, indicating VOC content.
 - 4. Laboratory Test Reports: For coatings, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.

5. Product Data: For sealants, indicating VOC content.
6. Laboratory Test Reports: For sealants, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.
- C. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
 2. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, dampers, specialties and flanges for each type of insulation.
 3. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
 4. Detail application at linkages of control devices.
- D. Samples: For each type of insulation and jacket indicated. Identify each Sample, describing product and intended use. Sample sizes are as follows:
 1. Sheet Form Insulation Materials: 12 inches square.
 2. Sheet Jacket Materials: 12 inches square.
 3. Manufacturer's Color Charts: For products where color is specified, show the full range of colors available for each type of finish material.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with duct Installer for duct insulation application. Before preparing ductwork Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.
- C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

1.8 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Duct Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule," and "Aboveground, Outdoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C871.

- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C795.
- E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- F. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C534, Type II for sheet materials.
- G. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C553, Type II and ASTM C1290, Type II with factory-applied vinyl jacket, Type III with factory-applied FSK jacket, Type III with factory-applied FSP jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- H. Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C612, Type IA or Type IB. For duct and plenum applications, provide insulation with factory-applied ASJ or with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- I. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe and Tank Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Semirigid board material with factory-applied ASJ complying with ASTM C1393, Type II or Type IIIA Category 2, or with properties similar to ASTM C612, Type IB. Nominal density is 2.5 lb/cu. ft. or more. Thermal conductivity (k-value) at 100 deg F is 0.29 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F or less. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- J. Polyolefin: Unicellular, polyethylene thermal plastic insulation. Comply with ASTM C534 or ASTM C1427, Type I, Grade 1 for tubular materials and Type II, Grade 1 for sheet materials.

2.2 FIRE-RATED INSULATION SYSTEMS

- A. Fire-Rated Board: Structural-grade, press-molded, xonolite calcium silicate, fireproofing board suitable for operating temperatures up to 1700 deg F. Comply with ASTM C656, Type II, Grade 6. Tested and certified to provide a 2-hour fire rating by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Fire-Rated Blanket: High-temperature, flexible, blanket insulation with FSK jacket that is tested and certified to provide a 2-hour fire rating by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

2.3 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
 - 1. Verify adhesives have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less.
 - 2. Verify adhesive complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- C. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
 - 1. Verify fiberglass adhesive has a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated in accordance with 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - 2. Verify adhesive complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- D. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
 - 1. Verify adhesive has a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated in accordance with 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - 2. Verify adhesive complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- E. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.
 - 1. Verify adhesive has a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated in accordance with 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - 2. Verify adhesive complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

2.4 MASTICS AND COATINGS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 - 1. VOC Content: 300 g/L or less.
 - 2. Low-Emitting Materials: Verify mastic coatings comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- B. Vapor-Retarder Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.
 - 1. Water-Vapor Permeance: Comply with ASTM C755, Section 7.2.2, Table 2, for insulation type and service conditions.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
 - 3. Comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II, for permeance requirements.
 - 4. Color: White.
- C. Vapor-Retarder Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.
 - 1. Water-Vapor Permeance: Comply with ASTM C755, Section 7.2.2, Table 2, for insulation type and service conditions.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: 0 to 180 deg F.
 - 3. Color: White.
- D. Vapor-Retarder Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for outdoor use on below ambient services.
 - 1. Water-Vapor Permeance: Comply with ASTM C755, Section 7.2.2, Table 2, for insulation type and service conditions.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 220 deg F.
 - 3. Color: White.
- E. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above ambient services.
 - 1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E96, greater than 1.0 perm at manufacturer's recommended dry film thickness.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
 - 3. Color: White.

2.5 LAGGING ADHESIVES

- A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.

1. Verify adhesives have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less.
2. Verify adhesive complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
3. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over duct insulation.
4. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F.
5. Color: White.

2.6 SEALANTS

A. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
4. Color: Aluminum.
5. Verify sealant has a VOC content of 420 g/L or less.
6. Verify sealant complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

B. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
4. Color: White.
5. Verify sealant has a VOC content of 420 g/L or less.
6. Verify sealant complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

2.7 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- ### **A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:**
1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C1136, Type I.

2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C1136, Type I.
3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C1136, Type II.
4. FSP Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with polyethylene backing; complying with ASTM C1136, Type II.
5. Vinyl Jacket: White vinyl with a permeance of 1.3 perms when tested according to ASTM E96/E96M, Procedure A, and complying with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.

2.8 FIELD-APPLIED FABRIC-REINFORCING MESH

- A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Approximately 6 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 5 strands by 5 strands/sq. in. for covering ducts.
- B. Woven Polyester Fabric: Approximately 1 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in., in a Leno weave, for ducts.

2.9 FIELD-APPLIED CLOTHS

- A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Comply with MIL-C-20079H, Type I, plain weave, and presized a minimum of 8 oz./sq. yd..

2.10 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil-face, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing.
- C. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 1. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
 2. Color: White.
- D. Metal Jacket:
 1. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.
 - a. Factory cut and rolled to size.
 - b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.

- c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 3-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
 - d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
- 2. Stainless-Steel Jacket: ASTM A167 or ASTM A240/A240M.
 - a. Factory cut and rolled to size.
 - b. Material, finish, and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 - c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 3-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
 - d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
- E. Self-Adhesive Outdoor Jacket: 60-mil-thick, laminated vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane for installation over insulation located aboveground outdoors; consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin on a crosslaminated polyethylene film covered with white aluminum-foil facing.

2.11 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C1136.
 - 1. Width: 3 inches.
 - 2. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
 - 3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
 - 4. Elongation: 2 percent.
 - 5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
 - 6. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
- B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C1136.
 - 1. Width: 3 inches.
 - 2. Thickness: 6.5 mils.
 - 3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
 - 4. Elongation: 2 percent.
 - 5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
 - 6. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.
- C. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.
 - 1. Width: 2 inches.
 - 2. Thickness: 6 mils.

3. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch in width.
4. Elongation: 500 percent.
5. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch in width.

D. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.

1. Width: 2 inches.
2. Thickness: 3.7 mils.
3. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch in width.
4. Elongation: 5 percent.
5. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch in width.

2.12 SECUREMENTS

A. Bands:

1. Stainless Steel: ASTM A167 or ASTM A240/A240M, Type 304 or Type 316; 0.015 inch thick, 3/4 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.
2. Aluminum: ASTM B209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, 3/4 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.
3. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel with ends flat and slotted to accept metal bands. Spring size determined by manufacturer for application.

B. Insulation Pins and Hangers:

1. Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
2. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.
3. Metal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
 - a. Baseplate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
 - b. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low-carbon steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
 - c. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.

4. Nonmetal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate fastened to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
 - a. Baseplate: Perforated, nylon sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
 - b. Spindle: Nylon, 0.106-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated, up to 2-1/2 inches.
 - c. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.
 5. Self-Sticking-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
 - a. Baseplate: Galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
 - b. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low-carbon steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
 - c. Adhesive-backed base with a peel-off protective cover.
 6. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick, galvanized-steel sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
 - a. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.
 7. Nonmetal Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick nylon sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
- C. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch-wide, stainless steel or Monel.
- D. Wire: 0.062-inch soft-annealed, stainless steel.

2.13 CORNER ANGLES

- A. PVC Corner Angles: 30 mils thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, PVC according to ASTM D1784, Class 16354-C. White or color-coded to match adjacent surface.
- B. Aluminum Corner Angles: 0.040 inch thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, aluminum according to ASTM B209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14.

- C. Stainless-Steel Corner Angles: 0.024 inch thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, stainless steel according to ASTM A167 or ASTM A240/A240M, Type 304 or Type 316.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
 - 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
 - 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of ducts and fittings.
- B. Install insulation materials, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of duct system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- G. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- H. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- I. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.

1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- J. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- K. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch-wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches o.c.
 - a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to duct flanges and fittings.
- L. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- M. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- N. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor

- insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
- 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
- 4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
 - 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 - 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 - 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
 - 4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- D. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves for fire-rated wall and partition penetrations. Externally insulate damper sleeves to match adjacent insulation and overlap duct insulation at least 2 inches.
 - 1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."
- E. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
 - 1. Duct: For penetrations through fire-rated assemblies, terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves and externally insulate damper sleeve beyond floor to match adjacent duct insulation. Overlap damper sleeve and duct insulation at least 2 inches.
 - 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.5 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

- A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

- A. Blanket Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.

1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
 - a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
 - b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, place pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
 - c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
 - d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
 - e. Impale insulation over pins and attach speed washers.
 - f. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
 - a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
 - b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches.
5. Overlap unfaced blankets a minimum of 2 inches on longitudinal seams and end joints. At end joints, secure with steel bands spaced a maximum of 18 inches o.c.
6. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
7. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch-wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.

- B. Board Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.
1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
 2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
 3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
 - a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
 - b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, space pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
 - c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
 - d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
 - e. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
 4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
 - a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
 - b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches.
 5. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Groove and score insulation to fit as closely as possible to outside and inside radius of elbows. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
 6. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch-wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.

3.7 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

- A. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.
 - 1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch overlap at seams and joints.
 - 2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch-thick coats of lagging adhesive.
 - 3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.
- B. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:
 - 1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
 - 2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
 - 3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
 - 4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch-wide joint strips at end joints.
 - 5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.
- C. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints; for horizontal applications, install with longitudinal seams along top and bottom of tanks and vessels. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
 - 1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.
- D. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

3.8 FIRE-RATED INSULATION SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Where fire-rated insulation system is indicated, secure system to ducts and duct hangers and supports to maintain a continuous fire rating.
- B. Insulate duct access panels and doors to achieve same fire rating as duct.
- C. Install firestopping at penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Fire-stop systems are specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.9 FINISHES

- A. Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."

1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
 - a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.
- C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
- D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
 1. Inspect ductwork, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to one location(s) for each duct system defined in the "Duct Insulation Schedule, General" Article.
- D. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

3.11 DUCT INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Plenums and Ducts Requiring Insulation:
 1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
 2. Indoor, exposed supply and outdoor air.
 3. Indoor, concealed return located in unconditioned space.
 4. Indoor, exposed return located in unconditioned space.
 5. Indoor, concealed, Type I, commercial, kitchen hood exhaust.
 6. Indoor, exposed, Type I, commercial, kitchen hood exhaust.
 7. Indoor, concealed oven and warewash exhaust.
 8. Indoor, exposed oven and warewash exhaust.
 9. Indoor, concealed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
 10. Indoor, exposed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
 11. Outdoor, concealed supply and return.

12. Outdoor, exposed supply and return.

B. Items Not Insulated:

1. Fibrous-glass ducts.
2. Metal ducts with duct liner of sufficient thickness to comply with energy code and ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
3. Factory-insulated flexible ducts.
4. Factory-insulated plenums and casings.
5. Flexible connectors.
6. Vibration-control devices.
7. Factory-insulated access panels and doors.

3.12 INDOOR DUCT AND PLENUM INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Concealed, round and flat-oval, supply-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
4. Polyolefin: 1 inch thick.

B. Concealed, round and flat-oval, return-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
4. Polyolefin: 1 inch thick.

C. Concealed, round and flat-oval, outdoor-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
4. Polyolefin: 1 inch thick.

D. Concealed, round and flat-oval, exhaust-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
4. Polyolefin: 1 inch thick.

E. Concealed, rectangular, supply-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
 2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 4. Polyolefin: 1 inch thick.
- F. Concealed, rectangular, return-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
 2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 4. Polyolefin: 1 inch thick.
- G. Concealed, rectangular, outdoor-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
 2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 4. Polyolefin: 1 inch thick.
- H. Concealed, rectangular, exhaust-air duct insulation between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior shall be one of the following:
1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
 2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 4. Polyolefin: 1 inch thick.
- I. Concealed, Type I, Commercial, Kitchen Hood Exhaust Duct and Plenum Insulation: Fire-rated blanket or board; thickness as required to achieve 2-hour fire rating.
- J. Concealed, supply-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:
1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
 2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 4. Polyolefin: 1 inch thick.
- K. Concealed, return-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:
1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
 2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 4. Polyolefin: 1 inch thick.
- L. Concealed, outdoor-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

- M. Concealed, exhaust-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- N. Exposed, round and flat-oval, supply-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
 2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 4. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 1-1/2 inches thick.
 5. Polyolefin: 1 inch thick.
- O. Exposed, round and flat-oval, return-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
 2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 4. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 1-1/2 inches thick.
 5. Polyolefin: 1 inch thick.
- P. Exposed, round and flat-oval, outdoor-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
 2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 4. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 1-1/2 inches thick.
 5. Polyolefin: 1 inch thick.
- Q. Exposed, round and flat-oval, exhaust-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
 2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 4. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 1-1/2 inches thick.
 5. Polyolefin: 1 inch thick.
- R. Exposed, rectangular, supply-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
 2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 4. Polyolefin: 1 inch thick.
- S. Exposed, rectangular, return-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
 2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 4. Polyolefin: 1 inch thick.
- T. Exposed, rectangular, outdoor-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
 2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 4. Polyolefin: 1 inch thick.
- U. Exposed, rectangular, exhaust-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
 2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 4. Polyolefin: 1 inch thick.
- V. Exposed, Type I, Commercial, Kitchen Hood Exhaust Duct and Plenum Insulation: Fire-rated blanket or board; thickness as required to achieve 2-hour fire rating.
- W. Exposed, supply-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:
1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
 2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 4. Polyolefin: 1 inch thick.
- X. Exposed, return-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:
1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
 2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 4. Polyolefin: 1 inch thick.
- Y. Exposed, outdoor-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- Z. Exposed, exhaust-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

3.13 ABOVEGROUND, OUTDOOR DUCT AND PLENUM INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Insulation materials and thicknesses are identified below. If more than one material is listed for a duct system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- B. Concealed, round and flat-oval, supply-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- C. Concealed, round and flat-oval, return-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- D. Concealed, round and flat-oval, outdoor-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- E. Concealed, rectangular, supply-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- F. Concealed, rectangular, return-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- G. Concealed, supply-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- H. Concealed, return-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- I. Exposed, round and flat-oval, supply-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 3. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 1-1/2 inches thick.

- J. Exposed, round and flat-oval, return-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- K. Exposed, rectangular, supply-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- L. Exposed, rectangular, return-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- M. Exposed, supply-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- N. Exposed, return-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

3.14 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Ducts and Plenums, Concealed:
 - 1. Aluminum, Smooth: 0.020 inch thick.
- D. Ducts and Plenums, Exposed:
 - 1. Aluminum, Smooth: 0.020 inch thick.

3.15 OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

C. Ducts and Plenums, Concealed:

1. Aluminum, Smooth: 0.020 inch thick.

D. Ducts and Plenums, Exposed, up to 48 Inches in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces up to 72 Inches:

1. Aluminum, Smooth: 0.024 inch thick.

E. Ducts and Plenums, Exposed, Larger Than 48 Inches in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces Larger Than 72 Inches:

1. Stainless Steel, Type 304 or Type 316, Smooth, with: 0.020 inch thick.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 230719 - HVAC PIPING INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulation for HVAC piping systems.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 230713 "Duct Insulation" for duct insulation.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied if any).
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
 - 1. Product Data: For adhesives, mastics, and sealants, indicating VOC content.
 - 2. Laboratory Test Reports: For adhesives, mastics, and sealants, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.
- C. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
 - 2. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation.
 - 3. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
 - 4. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
 - 5. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties.
 - 6. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
 - 7. Detail application at linkages of control devices.
- D. Samples: For each type of insulation and jacket indicated. Identify each Sample, describing product and intended use.

1. Preformed Pipe Insulation Materials: 12 inches long by NPS 2.
2. Sheet Form Insulation Materials: 12 inches square.
3. Jacket Materials for Pipe: 12 inches long by NPS 2.
4. Sheet Jacket Materials: 12 inches square.
5. Manufacturer's Color Charts: For products where color is specified, show the full range of colors available for each type of finish material.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products in accordance with ASTM E84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.
- C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

1.8 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule," "Outdoor, Aboveground Piping Insulation Schedule," and "Outdoor, Underground Piping Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come into contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested in accordance with ASTM C871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable in accordance with ASTM C795.
- E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- F. Calcium Silicate: Preformed Pipe Sections: Flat-, curved-, and grooved-block sections of noncombustible, inorganic, hydrous calcium silicate with a non-asbestos fibrous reinforcement. Comply with ASTM C533, Type I.

1. Prefabricated Fitting Covers: Comply with ASTM C450 and ASTM C585 for dimensions used in preforming insulation to cover valves, elbows, tees, and flanges.
- G. Cellular Glass: Inorganic, incombustible, foamed or cellulated glass with annealed, rigid, hermetically sealed cells. Comply with ASTM C552.
1. Preformed Pipe Insulation without Jacket: Type II, Class 1, without jacket.
 2. Preformed Pipe Insulation with Jacket: Type II, Class 2, with factory-applied ASJ jacket.
 3. Factory fabricate shapes in accordance with ASTM C450 and ASTM C585.
 4. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- H. Flexible Elastomeric: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C534/C534M, Type I for tubular materials, Type II for sheet materials.
- I. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C547.
1. Preformed Pipe Insulation: Type I, Grade A, without factory-applied jacket.
 2. 850 deg F.
 3. Factory fabricate shapes in accordance with ASTM C450 and ASTM C585.
 4. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- J. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe and Tank: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C1393.
1. Semirigid board material with factory-applied ASJ jacket.
 2. Nominal density is 2.5 lb/cu. ft. or more.
 3. Thermal conductivity (k-value) at 100 deg F is 0.29 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F or less.
 4. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- K. Phenolic: Preformed pipe insulation of rigid, expanded, closed-cell structure. Comply with ASTM C1126.
1. Preformed Pipe Insulation: Type III, without factory-applied jacket.
 2. Factory fabricate shapes in accordance with ASTM C450 and ASTM C585.
 3. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- L. Polyisocyanurate: Preformed, rigid cellular polyisocyanurate material intended for use as thermal insulation. Comply with ASTM C591.
1. Preformed insulation, without factory-applied jacket.

2. Type IV, except thermal conductivity (k-value) shall not exceed 0.19 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F after 180 days of aging.
 3. Flame-spread index shall be 25 or less, and smoke-developed index shall be 50 or less for thicknesses of up to 1 inch as tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
 4. Fabricate shapes in accordance with ASTM C450 and ASTM C585.
 5. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- M. Polyolefin: Unicellular, polyethylene thermal plastic insulation. Comply with ASTM C534/C534M or ASTM C1427, Type I, Grade 1, for tubular materials and with Type II, Grade 1, for sheet materials.
- N. Polystyrene: Rigid, extruded cellular polystyrene intended for use as thermal insulation. Comply with ASTM C578, Type IV or Type XIII, except thermal conductivity (k-value) shall not exceed 0.26 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F after 180 days of aging. Fabricate shapes in accordance with ASTM C450 and ASTM C585.

2.2 INSULATING CEMENTS

- A. Mineral-Fiber Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C195.
- B. Expanded or Exfoliated Vermiculite Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C196.
- C. Mineral-Fiber, Hydraulic-Setting Insulating and Finishing Cement: Comply with ASTM C449.

2.3 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Calcium Silicate Adhesive: Fibrous, sodium-silicate-based adhesive with a service temperature range of 50 to 800 deg F.
1. Adhesive: As recommended by calcium silicate manufacturer and with a VOC content of 50 g/L or less.
 2. Verify adhesive complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- C. Cellular-Glass Adhesive: Two-component, thermosetting urethane adhesive containing no flammable solvents, with a service temperature range of minus 100 to plus 200 deg F.

1. Adhesive: As recommended by cellular glass manufacturer and with a VOC content of 80 g/L or less.
 2. Verify adhesive complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- D. Phenolic and Polyisocyanurate Adhesive: Solvent-based resin adhesive, with a service temperature range of minus 75 to plus 300 deg F.
1. Adhesive: As recommended by phenolic and polyisocyanate manufacturer and with a VOC content of 50 g/L or less.
 2. Verify adhesive complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- E. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Solvent-based adhesive.
1. Adhesive: As recommended by flexible elastomeric and polyolefin manufacturer and with a VOC content of 80 g/L or less.
 2. Verify adhesive complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
 3. Flame-spread index shall be 25 or less and smoke-developed index shall be 50 or less as tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
 4. Wet Flash Point: Below 0 deg F.
 5. Service Temperature Range: 40 to 200 deg F.
 6. Color: Black.
- F. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
1. Adhesive: As recommended by mineral fiber manufacturer and with a VOC content of 80 g/L or less.
 2. Verify adhesive complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- G. Polystyrene Adhesive: Solvent- or water-based, synthetic resin adhesive with a service temperature range of minus 20 to plus 140 deg F.

1. Adhesive: As recommended by polystyrene manufacturer and with a VOC content of 50 g/L or less.
 2. Verify adhesive complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- H. ASJ Adhesive and FSK and PVDC Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A, for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
1. Verify adhesives have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less.
 2. Verify adhesive complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- I. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.
1. Adhesive: As recommended by Adhesive - PVC Jacket manufacturer and with a VOC content of 50 g/L or less.
 2. Verify adhesive complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

2.4 MASTICS AND COATINGS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
1. Mastics: As recommended by insulation manufacturer and with a VOC content of 50 g/L or less.
 2. Verify mastics comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- B. Vapor-Retarder Mastic, Water Based: Suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
1. Water-Vapor Permeance: Comply with ASTM E96/E96M or ASTM F1249.
 2. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F.
 3. Comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II, for permeance requirements.
 4. Color: White.

- C. Vapor-Retarder Mastic, Solvent Based, Indoor Use: Suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
 - 1. Water-Vapor Permeance: Comply with ASTM E96/E96M or ASTM F1249.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: 0 to 180 deg F.
 - 3. Color: White.
- D. Vapor-Retarder Mastic, Solvent Based, Outdoor Use: Suitable for outdoor use on below-ambient services.
 - 1. Water-Vapor Permeance: Comply with ASTM E96/E96M or ASTM F1249.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 220 deg F.
 - 3. Color: White.
- E. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above-ambient services.
 - 1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E96/E96M, greater than 1.0 perm at manufacturer's recommended dry film thickness.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F.
 - 3. Color: White.

2.5 LAGGING ADHESIVES

- A. Adhesives shall comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A, and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 - 1. Verify adhesive is as recommended by insulation manufacturer and has a VOC content of 50 g/L or less.
 - 2. Verify adhesive complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
 - 3. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over pipe insulation.
 - 4. Service Temperature Range: 20 to plus 180 deg F.
 - 5. Color: White.

2.6 SEALANTS

- A. Materials shall be as recommended by the insulation manufacturer and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
- B. Joint Sealants:

1. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 - a. Service Temperature Range: Minus 150 to plus 250 deg F.
 - b. Color: White or gray.
 2. Verify sealant has a VOC content of 420 g/L or less.
 3. Verify sealant complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- C. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:
1. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
 3. Color: Aluminum.
 4. Verify sealant has a VOC content of 420 g/L or less.
 5. Verify sealant complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- D. ASJ Flashing Sealants and PVDC and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:
1. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
 3. Color: White.
 4. Verify sealant has a VOC content of 420 g/L or less.
 5. Verify sealant complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

2.7 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C1136, Type I.
 2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C1136, Type I.
 3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C1136, Type II.

2.8 FIELD-APPLIED REINFORCING MESH

- A. Woven Glass-Fiber Mesh: Approximately 2 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in. for covering pipe and pipe fittings.
- B. Woven Polyester Mesh: Approximately 1 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in., in a Leno weave, for pipe.

2.9 FIELD-APPLIED CLOTHS

- A. Woven Glass-Fiber Cloth: Comply with MIL-C-20079H, Type I, plain weave, and presized a minimum of 8 oz./sq. yd..

2.10 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C1136, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil-face, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing.
- C. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 - 1. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
 - 2. Color: White.
 - 3. Factory-fabricated fitting covers to match jacket if available; otherwise, field fabricate.
 - a. Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and P-trap and supply covers for lavatories.
- D. Metal Jacket:
 - 1. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.
 - a. Factory cut and rolled to size.
 - b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 - c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 3-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
 - d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
 - e. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:

- 1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
 - 2) Preformed two-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
 - 3) Tee covers.
 - 4) Flange and union covers.
 - 5) End caps.
 - 6) Beveled collars.
 - 7) Valve covers.
 - 8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.
2. Stainless Steel Jacket: ASTM A240/A240M.
 - a. Factory cut and rolled to size.
 - b. Material, finish, and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 - c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 3-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
 - d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
 - e. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
 - 1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
 - 2) Preformed two-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
 - 3) Tee covers.
 - 4) Flange and union covers.
 - 5) End caps.
 - 6) Beveled collars.
 - 7) Valve covers.
 - 8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.
- E. Underground Direct-Buried Jacket: 125-mil-thick vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane, consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin reinforced with a woven-glass fiber or polyester scrim and laminated aluminum foil.
- F. Self-Adhesive Outdoor Jacket: 60-mil-thick, laminated vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane for installation over insulation located aboveground outdoors; consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin on a cross-laminated polyethylene film covered with white aluminum-foil facing.
- G. PVDC Jacket for Indoor Applications: 4-mil-thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.02 perm when tested in accordance with ASTM E96/E96M and with a flame-spread index of 10 and a smoke-developed index of 20 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.

- H. PVDC Jacket for Outdoor Applications: 6-mil-thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.01 perm when tested in accordance with ASTM E96/E96M and with a flame-spread index of 25 and a smoke-developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
- I. PVDC-SSL Jacket: PVDC jacket with a self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip.

2.11 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C1136.
 - 1. Width: 3 inches.
 - 2. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
 - 3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
 - 4. Elongation: 2 percent.
 - 5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
 - 6. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
- B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C1136.
 - 1. Width: 3 inches.
 - 2. Thickness: 6.5 mils.
 - 3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
 - 4. Elongation: 2 percent.
 - 5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
 - 6. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.
- C. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.
 - 1. Width: 2 inches.
 - 2. Thickness: 6 mils.
 - 3. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch in width.
 - 4. Elongation: 500 percent.
 - 5. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch in width.
- D. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.
 - 1. Width: 2 inches.
 - 2. Thickness: 3.7 mils.
 - 3. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch in width.
 - 4. Elongation: 5 percent.
 - 5. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch in width.

- E. PVDC Tape for Indoor Applications: White vapor-retarder PVDC tape with acrylic adhesive.
 - 1. Width: 3 inches.
 - 2. Film Thickness: 2 mils.
 - 3. Adhesive Thickness: 1.5 mils.
 - 4. Elongation at Break: 120 percent.
 - 5. Tensile Strength: 20 psi in width.
- F. PVDC Tape for Outdoor Applications: White vapor-retarder PVDC tape with acrylic adhesive.
 - 1. Width: 3 inches.
 - 2. Film Thickness: 6 mils.
 - 3. Adhesive Thickness: 1.5 mils.
 - 4. Elongation at Break: 145 percent.
 - 5. Tensile Strength: 55 psi in width.

2.12 SECUREMENTS

- A. Bands:
 - 1. Stainless Steel: ASTM A240/A240M, Type 304 or Type 316; 0.015 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.
 - 2. Aluminum: ASTM B209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.
- B. Wire: 0.080-inch nickel-copper alloy.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
 - 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
 - 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
- B. Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated. Before insulating, apply a corrosion coating to insulated surfaces as follows:
 - 1. Stainless Steel: Coat 300 series stainless steel with an epoxy primer 5 mils thick and an epoxy finish 5 mils thick if operating in a temperature range between 140 and 300 deg F. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
 - 2. Carbon Steel: Coat carbon steel operating at a service temperature of between 32 and 300 deg F with an epoxy coating. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
- C. Coordinate insulation installation with the tradesman installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.
- D. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping, including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and of thicknesses required for each item of pipe system, as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- G. Keep insulation materials dry during storage, application, and finishing. Replace insulation materials that get wet.

- H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
 - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends attached to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 3. Install insert materials and insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
 - 4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
 - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
 - 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch-wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward-clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
 - 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward-clinching staples along edge at 2 inches o.c.
 - a. For below-ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
 - 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, in accordance with insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
 - 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.
- M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 25 percent of its nominal thickness.
- N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches in similar fashion to butt joints.

P. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:

1. Vibration-control devices.
2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
3. Nameplates and data plates.

3.4 PENETRATIONS

A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.

1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.

1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.

D. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.

E. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.

1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.

F. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:

1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.

2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.5 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials, except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.
- B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, Mechanical Couplings, and Unions:
 1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, mechanical couplings, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as that of adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
 3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as that used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
 4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as that used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than 2 times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
 5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as that used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than 2 times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers, so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below-ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
 6. Insulate flanges, mechanical couplings, and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation to fit. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than 2 times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union" matching size and color of pipe labels.
 7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather

- mastic for above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket, except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing, using PVC tape.
- C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.
- D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:
1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as that of adjoining pipe insulation.
 2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union at least 2 times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
 3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges, except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
 4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
 5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF CALCIUM SILICATE INSULATION

- A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
1. Secure single-layer insulation with stainless steel bands at 12-inch intervals, and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
 2. Install two-layer insulation with joints tightly butted and staggered at least 3 inches. Secure inner layer with wire spaced at 12-inch intervals. Secure outer layer with stainless steel bands at 12-inch intervals.
 3. Apply a skim coat of mineral-fiber, hydraulic-setting cement to insulation surface. When cement is dry, apply flood coat of lagging adhesive and press on one layer

of glass cloth or tape. Overlap edges at least 1 inch. Apply finish coat of lagging adhesive over glass cloth or tape. Thin finish coat to achieve smooth, uniform finish.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of block insulation of same material and thickness as that of pipe insulation.
4. Finish flange insulation same as pipe insulation.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as that of straight segments of pipe insulation when available. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. When preformed insulation sections of insulation are not available, install mitered sections of calcium silicate insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.
3. Finish fittings insulation same as pipe insulation.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install mitered segments of calcium silicate insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
2. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
3. Finish valve and specialty insulation same as pipe insulation.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF CELLULAR-GLASS INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with wire or bands, and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient services, secure laps with outward-clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient services, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive, as recommended by insulation material manufacturer, and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of cellular-glass block insulation of same thickness as that of pipe insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as that of straight segments of pipe insulation when available. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. When preformed sections of insulation are not available, install mitered sections of cellular-glass insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of cellular-glass insulation to valve body.
2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.8 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as that of pipe insulation.
4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.

2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as that of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties, and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.9 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands, and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward-clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive, as recommended by insulation material manufacturer, and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as that of straight segments of pipe insulation when available.

2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as that of straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.10 INSTALLATION OF PHENOLIC INSULATION

A. General Installation Requirements:

1. Secure single-layer insulation with stainless steel bands at 12-inch intervals, and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Install two-layer insulation with joints tightly butted and staggered at least 3 inches. Secure inner layer with 0.062-inch wire spaced at 12-inch intervals. Secure outer layer with stainless steel bands at 12-inch intervals.

B. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with wire or bands, and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient services, secure laps with outward-clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets with vapor retarders on below-ambient services, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive, as recommended by insulation material manufacturer, and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of block insulation of same material and thickness as that of pipe insulation.

D. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed insulation sections of same material as that of straight segments of pipe insulation. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.

E. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed insulation sections of same material as that of straight segments of pipe insulation. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.11 INSTALLATION OF POLYISOCYANURATE INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with tape or bands and tighten without deforming insulation materials. Orient longitudinal joints between half sections in 3- and 9-o'clock positions on the pipe.
2. For insulation with factory-applied jackets with vapor barriers, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive or tape, as recommended by insulation material manufacturer, and seal with vapor-barrier mastic.
3. All insulation shall be tightly butted and free of voids and gaps at all joints. Vapor barrier must be continuous. Before installing jacket material, install vapor-barrier system.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, and same thickness as that of adjacent pipe insulation, not to exceed 1-1/2-inch thickness.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of polyisocyanurate block insulation of same thickness as that of pipe insulation.

C. Insulation Installation on Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as that of straight segments of pipe insulation. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of polyisocyanurate insulation to valve body.
2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.12 INSTALLATION OF POLYOLEFIN INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Seal split-tube longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of polyolefin sheet insulation of same thickness as that of pipe insulation.
4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install mitered sections of polyolefin pipe insulation.
2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install cut sections of polyolefin pipe and sheet insulation to valve body.
2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties, and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.13 INSTALLATION OF POLYSTYRENE INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of insulation with tape or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials. Orient longitudinal joints between half sections in 3- and 9-o'clock positions on the pipe.
2. For insulation with factory-applied jackets with vapor barriers, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive or tape, as

recommended by insulation material manufacturer, and seal with vapor-barrier mastic.

3. All insulation shall be tightly butted and free of voids and gaps at all joints. Vapor barrier must be continuous. Before installing jacket material, install vapor-barrier system.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, and make thickness same as that of adjacent pipe insulation, not to exceed 1-1/2 inches.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of polystyrene block insulation of same thickness that of as pipe insulation.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed insulation sections of same material as that of straight segments of pipe insulation. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed section of polystyrene insulation to valve body.
2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.14 INSTALLATION OF FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.

1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch overlap at seams and joints.
2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch-thick coats of lagging adhesive.
3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.

B. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:

1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch-wide joint strips at end joints.
5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.

- C. Where PVC jackets are indicated and for horizontal applications, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
 - 1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.
- D. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.
- E. Where PVDC jackets are indicated, install as follows:
 - 1. Apply three separate wraps of filament tape per insulation section to secure pipe insulation to pipe prior to installation of PVDC jacket.
 - 2. Wrap factory-presizes jackets around individual pipe insulation sections, with one end overlapping the previously installed sheet. Install presized jacket with an approximate overlap at butt joint of 2 inches over the previous section. Adhere lap seal using adhesive or SSL, and then apply 1-1/4 circumferences of appropriate PVDC tape around overlapped butt joint.
 - 3. Continuous jacket can be spiral-wrapped around a length of pipe insulation. Apply adhesive or PVDC tape at overlapped spiral edge. When electing to use adhesives, refer to manufacturer's written instructions for application of adhesives along this spiral edge to maintain a permanent bond.
 - 4. Jacket can be wrapped in cigarette fashion along length of roll for insulation systems with an outer circumference of 33-1/2 inches or less. The 33-1/2-inch-circumference limit allows for 2-inch-overlap seal. Using the length of roll allows for longer sections of jacket to be installed at one time. Use adhesive on the lap seal. Visually inspect lap seal for "fishmouthing," and use PVDC tape along lap seal to secure joint.
 - 5. Repair holes or tears in PVDC jacket by placing PVDC tape over the hole or tear and wrapping a minimum of 1-1/4 circumferences to avoid damage to tape edges.

3.15 FINISHES

- A. Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
 - 1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
 - a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.

- B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.
- C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
- D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless steel jackets.

3.16 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- D. Perform tests and inspections.
- E. Tests and Inspections: Inspect pipe, fittings, strainers, and valves, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to three locations of straight pipe, three locations of threaded fittings, three locations of welded fittings, two locations of threaded strainers, two locations of welded strainers, three locations of threaded valves, and three locations of flanged valves for each pipe service defined in the "Piping Insulation Schedule, General" Article.
- F. All insulation applications will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- G. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.17 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Insulation conductivity and thickness per pipe size shall comply with schedules in this Section or with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, whichever is more stringent.
- B. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:

1. Underground piping.
2. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.

3.18 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Condensate and Equipment Drain Water below 60 Deg F:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches thick.
 - b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
 - c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.
 - d. Phenolic: 1 inch thick.
 - e. Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch thick.
 - f. Polyolefin: 1 inch thick.

B. Chilled Water and Brine, 40 Deg F and below:

1. NPS 3 Insert pipe size and Smaller: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches thick.
 - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.
 - c. Phenolic: 1 inch thick.
 - d. Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch thick.
2. NPS 4 to NPS 12: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Cellular Glass: 2 inches thick.
 - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 2 inches thick.
 - c. Phenolic: 2 inches thick.
 - d. Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch thick.

C. Condenser-Water Supply and Return:

1. NPS 12 and Smaller: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Cellular Glass: 2 inches thick.
 - b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
 - c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.
 - d. Phenolic: 1 inch thick.
 - e. Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch thick.
 - f. Polyolefin: 1 inch thick.

D. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Piping:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:

- a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches thick.
 - b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
 - c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.
 - d. Phenolic: 1 inch thick.
 - e. Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch thick.
 - f. Polyolefin: 1 inch thick.
- E. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Flexible Tubing:
 - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 2 inches thick.
 - b. Polyolefin: 2 inches thick.
- F. Refrigerant Liquid Piping:
 - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches thick.
 - b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
 - c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.
 - d. Phenolic: 1 inch thick.
 - e. Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch thick.
 - f. Polyolefin: 1 inch thick.

3.19 OUTDOOR, ABOVEGROUND PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Condenser-Water Supply and Return:
 - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Cellular Glass: 2 inches thick.
 - b. Flexible Elastomeric: 2 inches thick.
 - c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 2 inches thick.
 - d. Phenolic: 2 inches thick.
 - e. Polyisocyanurate: 2 inches thick.
 - f. Polyolefin: 2 inches thick.
 - g. Polystyrene: 2 inches thick.
- B. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Flexible Tubing:
 - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 2 inches thick.
 - b. Polyolefin: 2 inches thick.
- C. Refrigerant Liquid Piping:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:

- a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
- b. Polyolefin: 1 inch thick.

D. Heat-Recovery Piping:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:

- a. Cellular Glass: 2 inches thick.
- b. Flexible Elastomeric: 2 inches thick.
- c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 2 inches thick.
- d. Phenolic: 2 inches thick.
- e. Polyisocyanurate: 2 inches thick.
- f. Polyolefin: 2 inches thick.
- g. Polystyrene: 2 inches thick.

3.20 OUTDOOR, UNDERGROUND, PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Condenser-Water Supply and Return, All Sizes: Cellular glass, 2 inches thick.**

1. Calcium Silicate: 3 inches thick.
2. Cellular Glass: 3 inches thick.

3.21 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.**

- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.**

- C. Piping, Concealed:**

1. Aluminum, Smooth: 0.020 inch thick.

- D. Piping, Exposed:**

1. Aluminum, Smooth: 0.020 inch thick.

3.22 OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.**

- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.**

C. Piping, Concealed:

1. Aluminum, Smooth: 0.020 inch thick.

D. Piping, Exposed:

1. Stainless Steel, Type 304 or Type 316, Smooth No. 2B Finish with Z-Shaped Locking Seam: 0.020 inch thick.

3.23 UNDERGROUND, FIELD-APPLIED INSULATION JACKET

- A.** For underground direct-buried piping applications, install underground direct-buried jacket over insulation material.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 230800 - COMMISSIONING OF HVAC SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. **Reference Division 1 commissioning specifications for additional information and requirements.**
- B. **Commissioning agent is to be selected by the Owner. All HVAC equipment and controls shall be commissioned.** Section includes commissioning process requirements for HVAC&R systems, assemblies, and equipment as applicable to General Contractor, HVAC Contractor, Controls Contractor, Etc.

1.2 CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITIES

- A. Assist in commissioning tests at the direction of the CxA.
- B. Attend construction phase controls coordination meeting.
- C. Participate in HVAC&R systems, assemblies, equipment, and component maintenance orientation and inspection as directed by the CxA.
- D. Provide information requested by the CxA for final commissioning documentation.

1.3 CxA'S RESPONSIBILITIES

- A. Provide and complete project-specific construction checklists and commissioning process test procedures for actual HVAC&R systems, assemblies, equipment, and components to be furnished and installed as part of the construction contract.
- B. Perform commissioning testing.
- C. Verify testing, adjusting, and balancing of Work are complete.
- D. Provide test data, inspection reports, and certificates in Systems Manual.

1.4 COMMISSIONING DOCUMENTATION

- A. Provide the following information to the CxA for inclusion in the commissioning plan:

1. Submittals, systems manuals, and other documents and reports.
2. Identification of installed systems, assemblies, equipment, and components including design changes that occurred during the construction phase.
3. Process and schedule for completing construction checklists and manufacturer's prestart and startup checklists for HVAC&R systems, assemblies, equipment, and components to be verified and tested.
4. Certificate of readiness, signed by the Contractor, certifying that HVAC&R systems, assemblies, equipment, components, and associated controls are ready for testing.
5. Certificate of completion certifying that installation, prestart checks, and startup procedures have been completed.
6. Certificate of readiness certifying that HVAC&R systems, subsystems, equipment, and associated controls are ready for testing.
7. Test and inspection reports and certificates.
8. Corrective action documents.
9. Verification of testing, adjusting, and balancing reports.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Certificates of readiness.
- B. Certificates of completion of installation, prestart, and startup activities.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 TESTING PREPARATION

- A. Certify that HVAC&R systems, subsystems, and equipment have been installed, calibrated, and started and are operating according to the Contract Documents.
- B. Certify that HVAC&R instrumentation and control systems have been completed and calibrated, that they are operating according to the Contract Documents, and that pretest set points have been recorded.
- C. Certify that testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures have been completed and that testing, adjusting, and balancing reports have been submitted, discrepancies corrected, and corrective work approved.

- D. Set systems, subsystems, and equipment into operating mode to be tested (e.g., normal shutdown, normal auto position, normal manual position, unoccupied cycle, emergency power, and alarm conditions).
- E. Inspect and verify the position of each device and interlock identified on checklists.

3.2 GENERAL TESTING REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide technicians, instrumentation, and tools to assist commissioning test at the direction of the CxA.
- B. Scope of HVAC&R testing shall include entire HVAC&R installation, from central equipment for heat generation and refrigeration through distribution systems to each conditioned space. Testing shall include measuring capacities and effectiveness of operational and control functions.
- C. Test all operating modes, interlocks, control responses, and responses to abnormal or emergency conditions, and verify proper response of building automation system controllers and sensors.
- D. The CxA shall prepare and complete detailed testing plans, procedures, and checklists for HVAC&R systems, subsystems, and equipment.
- E. If tests cannot be completed because of a deficiency outside the scope of the HVAC&R system, document the deficiency and report it to the Owner. After deficiencies are resolved, reschedule tests.

3.3 HVAC&R SYSTEMS, SUBSYSTEMS, AND EQUIPMENT TESTING PROCEDURES

- A. HVAC&R Instrumentation and Control System Testing: Field testing plans and testing requirements are specified in Temperature Control System (TCS) and Facility Management Control System (FMCS). Assist the CxA with preparation of testing plans.
- B. HVAC&R Distribution System Testing: Provide technicians, instrumentation, tools, and equipment to test performance of air distribution systems; special exhaust; and other distribution systems, including HVAC&R terminal equipment and unitary equipment.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 230923 - DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL (DDC) SYSTEM FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. DDC system for monitoring and controlling of HVAC systems.
 - 2. Delivery of selected control devices to equipment and systems manufacturers for factory installation and to HVAC systems installers for field installation.
 - 3. **DDC system (KMC) is existing. All new equipment including smart meters, chillers, boilers, pumps, air handlers, etc. shall be interfaced to the existing campus building automation system. Front end, graphics, software, etc. shall be upgraded for new systems. Upgrade shall include monitoring of all new sub-meters.**
 - 4. **Existing system front ends shall be upgraded to add all new sub-meters for monitoring and reporting use. Data shall be collected from new sub-meters. Building automation system shall read, graph, and trend usage.**

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Algorithm: A logical procedure for solving a recurrent mathematical problem. A prescribed set of well-defined rules or processes for solving a problem in a finite number of steps.
- B. Analog: A continuously varying signal value, such as current, flow, pressure, or temperature.
- C. BACnet Specific Definitions:
 - 1. BACnet: Building Automation Control Network Protocol, ASHRAE 135. A communications protocol allowing devices to communicate data over and services over a network.
 - 2. BACnet Interoperability Building Blocks (BIBBs): BIBB defines a small portion of BACnet functionality that is needed to perform a particular task. BIBBs are combined to build the BACnet functional requirements for a device.

3. BACnet/IP: Defines and allows using a reserved UDP socket to transmit BACnet messages over IP networks. A BACnet/IP network is a collection of one or more IP subnetworks that share the same BACnet network number.
 4. BACnet Testing Laboratories (BTL): Organization responsible for testing products for compliance with ASHRAE 135, operated under direction of BACnet International.
 5. PICS (Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement): Written document that identifies the particular options specified by BACnet that are implemented in a device.
- D. Binary: Two-state signal where a high signal level represents ON" or "OPEN" condition and a low signal level represents "OFF" or "CLOSED" condition. "Digital" is sometimes used interchangeably with "Binary" to indicate a two-state signal.
- E. Controller: Generic term for any standalone, microprocessor-based, digital controller residing on a network, used for local or global control. Three types of controllers are indicated: Network Controller, Programmable Application Controller, and Application-Specific Controller.
- F. Control System Integrator: An entity that assists in expansion of existing enterprise system and support of additional operator interfaces to I/O being added to existing enterprise system.
- G. COV: Changes of value.
- H. DDC System Provider: Authorized representative of, and trained by, DDC system manufacturer and responsible for execution of DDC system Work indicated.
- I. Distributed Control: Processing of system data is decentralized and control decisions are made at subsystem level. System operational programs and information are provided to remote subsystems and status is reported back. On loss of communication, subsystems shall be capable of operating in a standalone mode using the last best available data.
- J. DOCSIS: Data-OverCable Service Interface Specifications.
- K. E/P: Voltage to pneumatic.
- L. Gateway: Bidirectional protocol translator that connects control systems that use different communication protocols.
- M. HLC: Heavy load conditions.
- N. I/O: System through which information is received and transmitted. I/O refers to analog input (AI), binary input (BI), analog output (AO) and binary output (BO). Analog signals are continuous and represent control influences such as flow, level, moisture, pressure, and temperature. Binary signals convert electronic signals to digital pulses (values) and generally represent two-position operating and alarm status. "Digital," (DI

and (DO), is sometimes used interchangeably with "Binary," (BI) and (BO), respectively.

- O. I/P: Current to pneumatic.
- P. LAN: Local area network.
- Q. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control, signaling power-limited circuits.
- R. Modbus TCP/IP: An open protocol for exchange of process data.
- S. MS/TP: Master-slave/token-passing, IEEE 8802-3. Datalink protocol LAN option that uses twisted-pair wire for low-speed communication.
- T. MTBF: Mean time between failures.
- U. Network Controller: Digital controller, which supports a family of programmable application controllers and application-specific controllers, that communicates on peer-to-peer network for transmission of global data.
- V. Network Repeater: Device that receives data packet from one network and rebroadcasts it to another network. No routing information is added to protocol.
- W. Peer to Peer: Networking architecture that treats all network stations as equal partners.
- X. POT: Portable operator's terminal.
- Y. PUE: Performance usage effectiveness.
- Z. RAM: Random access memory.
- AA. RF: Radio frequency.
- BB. Router: Device connecting two or more networks at network layer.
- CC. Server: Computer used to maintain system configuration, historical and programming database.
- DD. TCP/IP: Transport control protocol/Internet protocol incorporated into Microsoft Windows.
- EE. UPS: Uninterruptible power supply.
- FF. USB: Universal Serial Bus.
- GG. User Datagram Protocol (UDP): This protocol assumes that the IP is used as the underlying protocol.

HH. WLED: White light emitting diode.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Multiple Submissions:

1. If multiple submissions are required to execute work within schedule, first submit a coordinated schedule clearly defining intent of multiple submissions. Include a proposed date of each submission with a detailed description of submittal content to be included in each submission.
2. Clearly identify each submittal requirement indicated and in which submission the information will be provided.
3. Include an updated schedule in each subsequent submission with changes highlighted to easily track the changes made to previous submitted schedule.

B. Product Data: For each type of product include the following:

1. Construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
2. Operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished accessories indicating process operating range, accuracy over range, control signal over range, default control signal with loss of power, calibration data specific to each unique application, electrical power requirements, and limitations of ambient operating environment, including temperature and humidity.
3. Product description with complete technical data, performance curves, and product specification sheets.
4. Installation, operation and maintenance instructions including factors effecting performance.
5. Bill of materials of indicating quantity, manufacturer, and extended model number for each unique product.
 - a. Gateways.
 - b. Routers.
 - c. Protocol analyzers.
 - d. DDC controllers.
 - e. Enclosures.
 - f. Electrical power devices.
 - g. UPS units.
 - h. Accessories.
 - i. Instruments.
 - j. Control dampers and actuators.
 - k. Control valves and actuators.
6. When manufacturer's product datasheets apply to a product series rather than a specific product model, clearly indicate and highlight only applicable information.
7. Each submitted piece of product literature shall clearly cross reference specification and drawings that submittal is to cover.

C. Shop Drawings:

1. General Requirements:
 - a. Include cover drawing with Project name, location, Owner, Architect, Contractor and issue date with each Shop Drawings submission.
 - b. Include a drawing index sheet listing each drawing number and title that matches information in each title block.
 - c. Prepare Drawings using CAD.
2. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details where applicable.
3. Include details of product assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
4. Detail means of vibration isolation and show attachments to rotating equipment.
5. Plan Drawings indicating the following:
 - a. Screened backgrounds of walls, structural grid lines, HVAC equipment, ductwork and piping.
 - b. Room names and numbers with coordinated placement to avoid interference with control products indicated.
 - c. Each server, gateway, router, DDC controller, control panel instrument connecting to DDC controller, and damper and valve connecting to DDC controller, if included in Project.
 - d. Exact placement of products in rooms, ducts, and piping to reflect proposed installed condition.
 - e. Network communication cable and raceway routing.
 - f. Information, drawn to scale
 - g. Proposed routing of wiring, cabling, conduit, and tubing, coordinated with building services for review before installation.
6. Schematic drawings for each controlled HVAC system indicating the following:
 - a. I/O points labeled with point names shown. Indicate instrument range, normal operating set points, and alarm set points. Indicate fail position of each damper and valve, if included in Project.
 - b. I/O listed in table format showing point name, type of device, manufacturer, model number, and cross-reference to product data sheet number.
 - c. A graphic showing location of control I/O in proper relationship to HVAC system.
 - d. Wiring diagram with each I/O point having a unique identification and indicating labels for all wiring terminals.
 - e. Unique identification of each I/O that shall be consistently used between different drawings showing same point.
 - f. Elementary wiring diagrams of controls for HVAC equipment motor circuits including interlocks, switches, relays and interface to DDC controllers.

- g. Narrative sequence of operation.
 - h. Graphic sequence of operation, showing all inputs and output logical blocks.
7. DDC system network riser diagram indicating the following:
- a. Each device connected to network with unique identification for each.
 - b. Interconnection of each different network in DDC system.
 - c. For each network, indicate communication protocol, speed and physical means of interconnecting network devices, such as copper cable type, or fiber-optic cable type. Indicate raceway type and size for each.
 - d. Each network port for connection of an operator workstation or other type of operator interface with unique identification for each.
8. DDC system electrical power riser diagram indicating the following:
- a. Each point of connection to field power with requirements (volts/phase/hertz/amperes/connection type) listed for each.
 - b. Each control power supply including, as applicable, transformers, power-line conditioners, transient voltage suppression and high filter noise units, DC power supplies, and UPS units with unique identification for each.
 - c. Each product requiring power with requirements (volts/phase/hertz/amperes/connection type) listed for each.
 - d. Power wiring type and size, race type, and size for each.
9. Monitoring and control signal diagrams indicating the following:
- a. Control signal cable and wiring between controllers and I/O.
 - b. Point-to-point schematic wiring diagrams for each product.
 - c. Control signal tubing to sensors, switches and transmitters.
 - d. Process signal tubing to sensors, switches and transmitters.
10. Color graphics indicating the following:
- a. Itemized list of color graphic displays to be provided.
 - b. For each display screen to be provided, a true color copy showing layout of pictures, graphics and data displayed.
 - c. Intended operator access between related hierarchical display screens.
- D. System Description:
- 1. Full description of DDC system architecture, network configuration, operator interfaces and peripherals, servers, controller types and applications, gateways, routers and other network devices, and power supplies.
 - 2. Complete listing and description of each report, log and trend for format and timing and events which initiate generation.

3. System and product operation under each potential failure condition including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Loss of power.
 - b. Loss of network communication signal.
 - c. Loss of controller signals to inputs and outpoints.
 - d. Operator workstation failure.
 - e. Server failure.
 - f. Gateway failure.
 - g. Network failure
 - h. Controller failure.
 - i. Instrument failure.
 - j. Control damper and valve actuator failure.
4. Complete bibliography of documentation and media to be delivered to Owner.
5. Description of testing plans and procedures.
6. Description of Owner training.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings:

1. Plan drawings and corresponding product installation details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
 - a. Product installation location shown in relationship to room, duct, pipe and equipment.
 - b. Structural members to which products will be attached.
 - c. Wall-mounted instruments located in finished space showing relationship to light switches, fire-alarm devices and other installed devices.
 - d. Size and location of wall access panels for products installed behind walls and requiring access.
2. Reflected ceiling plans and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
 - a. Ceiling components.
 - b. Size and location of access panels for products installed above inaccessible ceiling assemblies and requiring access.
 - c. Items penetrating finished ceiling including the following:
 - 1) Lighting fixtures.
 - 2) Air outlets and inlets.
 - 3) Speakers.

- 4) Sprinklers.
- 5) Access panels.
- 6) Motion sensors.
- 7) Pressure sensors.
- 8) Temperature sensors and other DDC control system instruments.

B. Qualification Data:

1. Systems Provider Qualification Data:

- a. Resume of project manager assigned to Project.
- b. Resumes of application engineering staff assigned to Project.
- c. Resumes of installation and programming technicians assigned to Project.
- d. Resumes of service technicians assigned to Project.
- e. Brief description of past project including physical address, floor area, number of floors, building system cooling and heating capacity and building's primary function.
- f. Description of past project DDC system, noting similarities to Project scope and complexity indicated.
- g. Names of staff assigned to past project that will also be assigned to execute work of this Project.
- h. Owner contact information for past project including name, phone number, and e-mail address.
- i. Contractor contact information for past project including name, phone number, and e-mail address.
- j. Architect and Engineer contact information for past project including name, phone number, and e-mail address.

2. Manufacturer's qualification data.
3. Testing agency's qualifications data.

C. Product Certificates:

1. Data Communications Protocol Certificates: Certifying that each proposed DDC system component complies with ASHRAE 135.

D. Field quality-control reports.

E. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For DDC system to include in emergency, operation and maintenance manuals.

1. Include the following:

- a. Project Record Drawings of as-built versions of submittal Shop Drawings provided in electronic PDF format.
- b. Testing and commissioning reports and checklists of completed final versions of reports, checklists, and trend logs.
- c. As-built versions of submittal Product Data.
- d. Names, addresses, e-mail addresses and 24-hour telephone numbers of Installer and service representatives for DDC system and products.
- e. Operator's manual with procedures for operating control systems including logging on and off, handling alarms, producing point reports, trending data, overriding computer control and changing set points and variables.
- f. Programming manuals with description of programming language and syntax, of statements for algorithms and calculations used, of point database creation and modification, of program creation and modification, and of editor use.
- g. Engineering, installation, and maintenance manuals that explain how to:
 - 1) Perform preventive maintenance and calibration.
 - 2) Debug hardware problems.
 - 3) Repair or replace hardware.
- h. Documentation of all programs created using custom programming language including set points, tuning parameters, and object database.
- i. Backup copy of graphic files, programs, and database on electronic media such as DVDs.
- j. List of recommended spare parts with part numbers and suppliers.
- k. Complete original-issue documentation, installation, and maintenance information for furnished third-party hardware including computer equipment and sensors.
- l. Complete original-issue copies of furnished software, including operating systems, custom programming language, operator workstation software, and graphics software.
- m. Licenses, guarantees, and warranty documents.
- n. Recommended preventive maintenance procedures for system components, including schedule of tasks such as inspection, cleaning, and calibration; time between tasks; and task descriptions.
- o. Owner training materials.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. DDC System Manufacturer Qualifications:

- 1. System shall be KMC Controls to match existing base control systems.

B. DDC System Provider Qualifications:

- 1. Authorized representative of, and trained by, DDC system manufacturer.
- 2. In-place facility located within 30 miles of Project.

3. Demonstrated past experience with installation of DDC system products being installed for period within three consecutive years before time of bid.
4. Demonstrated past experience on five projects of similar complexity, scope and value at the current base location.
5. Each person assigned to Project shall have demonstrated past experience.
6. Staffing resources of competent and experienced full-time employees that are assigned to execute work according to schedule.
7. Service and maintenance staff assigned to support Project during warranty period.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace products that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 1. Failures shall be adjusted, repaired, or replaced at no additional cost or reduction in service to Owner.
 2. Include updates or upgrades to software and firmware if necessary to resolve deficiencies.
 - a. Install updates only after receiving Owner's written authorization.
 3. Warranty service shall occur during normal business hours and commence within 24 hours of Owner's warranty service request.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 DDC SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Microprocessor-based monitoring and control including analog/digital conversion and program logic. A control loop or subsystem in which digital and analog information is received and processed by a microprocessor, and digital control signals are generated based on control algorithms and transmitted to field devices to achieve a set of predefined conditions.
 1. DDC system shall consist of a high-speed, peer-to-peer network of distributed DDC controllers, other network devices, operator interfaces, and software.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Gas Sub-Meter: The gas sub-meter shall be sized appropriately for the gas supply line size, gas pressure, and capacity. The gas sub-meter selection shall be made in coordination with the gas utility company. The sub-meter shall include physical mechanical totalizer index to display gas consumption. The sub-meter shall include a

pulse output transmitter for connection to the facility EMCS system. The gas sub-meter pulse output shall be connected to a totalizer input on the facility electrical meter or to an EMCS totalizer input expressly designed to accept pulse inputs for counting and recording consumption data. The gas meter pulser cable shall be installed in seal-tight flex conduit to the fullest extent possible to protect the cable from damage. Approved gas sub-meters and pulsers are: Elster-American Meter, Diaphragm Style Meter AC Series and AL Series; Elster-American Meter, Rotary Style Meter RPM Series and RABO Series; Elster-American Meter, Pulser Model, RVP (Remote Volume Pulser) IMAC Pulsimatic Transmitter

- D. Electric Sub-Meter: The power sub-meter shall provide an enhanced full data set including data points for water and gas meter totalizers; the power sub-meter shall provide a peak demand kW reading using a fixed or rolling window, programmable; the power sub-meter shall provide a minimum of two pulse accumulator input ports for connection of water and gas meters; the power meter shall provide a BACnet communications bus for integration into the facility EMCS; the selection of the current transformers (CT) shall be appropriate to match the electrical service being monitored; the sub-meter shall include a manufacturer provided NEMA 4 enclosure with transparent locking cover; the voltage monitoring pickup shall be fault protected by either inline fuses or a dedicated circuit breaker appropriately sized for the wire size used for this function; the voltage monitoring pickup shall include a three phase and neutral connection. Approved enhanced power and energy sub-meters are: Veris Industries Model E50H5A (BACnet MS/TP Serial, Rope CT's); Square D/Schneider Electric Model EM3561 (BACnet MS/TP Serial, Standard CT's) or EM3561A (BACnet MS/TP Serial, Rope CT's)
- E. Water Sub-Meter: The water sub-meter shall be sized appropriately for the water supply line size, water pressure, and capacity. The water sub-meter selection shall be made in coordination with the utility company. The sub-meter shall include physical mechanical totalizer index to display water consumption. The sub-meter shall include a pulse output transmitter for connection to the facility EMCS system. The water sub-meter pulse output shall be connected to a totalizer input on the facility electrical meter or to an EMCS totalizer input expressly designed to accept pulse inputs for counting and recording consumption data. The water meter pulser cable shall be installed in seal-tight flex conduit to the fullest extent possible to protect the cable from damage. When installed in ground an approved vault shall be used to house the meter. The in-ground vault shall include an appropriate physical security cover. Approved water sub-meters and pulsers are: Zenner Performance Meter model PPD Series Positive Displacement Magnetic Drive Meters, PMN Series Multi-Jet Magnetic Drive Meters; Zenner Performance Pulser: ETR Digital Switch Output Encoder.

2.2 WEB ACCESS

- A. DDC system shall be Web based.
1. Web-Based Access to DDC System:

- a. DDC system software shall be based on server thin-client architecture, designed around open standards of Web technology. DDC system server shall be accessed using a Web browser over DDC system network, using Owner's LAN, and remotely over Internet through Owner's LAN.
- b. Intent of thin-client architecture is to provide operators complete access to DDC system via a Web browser. No special software other than a Web browser shall be required to access graphics, point displays, and trends; to configure trends, points, and controllers; and to edit programming.
- c. Web access shall be password protected.

2.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Input Point Displayed Accuracy: Input point displayed values shall meet following end-to-end overall system accuracy, including errors associated with meter, sensor, transmitter, lead wire or cable, and analog to digital conversion.
 - 1. Energy:
 - a. Thermal: Within 5 percent of reading.
 - b. Electric Power: Within 1 percent of reading.
 - c. Requirements indicated on Drawings for meters not supplied by utility.
 - 2. Flow:
 - a. Air: Within 5 percent of design flow rate.
 - 3. Gas:
 - a. Carbon Dioxide: Within 50 ppm.
 - 4. Moisture (Relative Humidity):
 - a. Air: Within 2 percent RH.
 - b. Space: Within 2 percent RH.
 - c. Outdoor: Within 2 percent RH.
 - 5. Speed: Within 10 percent of reading.
 - 6. Temperature, Dry Bulb and Wet Bulb:
 - a. Air: Within 1 deg F.
 - b. Space: Within 1 deg F.
 - c. Outdoor: Within 2 deg F.
- B. Precision of I/O Reported Values: Values reported in database and displayed shall have following precision:

1. Current:
 - a. Milliamperes: Nearest 1/100th of a milliampere.
 - b. Amperes: Nearest 1/10th of an ampere up to 100 A; nearest ampere for 100 A and more.
2. Energy:
 - a. Electric Power:
 - 1) Rate (Watts): Nearest 1/10th of a watt through 1000 W.
 - 2) Rate (Kilowatts): Nearest 1/10th of a kilowatt through 1000 kW; nearest kilowatt above 1000 kW.
 - 3) Usage (Kilowatt-Hours): Nearest kilowatt through 10,000 kW; nearest 10 kW between 10,000 and 100,000 kW; nearest 100 kW for above 100,000 kW.
 - b. Thermal, Usage:
 - 1) Heating: For Btu, nearest Btu up to 1000 Btu; nearest 10 Btu between 1000 and 10,000 Btu; nearest 100 Btu for above 10,000 Btu. For Mbtu, round to nearest Mbtu up to 1000 Mbtu; nearest 10 Mbtu between 1000 and 10,000 Mbtu; nearest 100 Mbtu above 10,000 Mbtu.
 - 2) Cooling: For ton-hours, nearest ton-hours up to 1000 ton-hours; nearest 10 ton-hours between 1000 and 10,000 ton-hours; nearest 100 tons above 10,000 tons.
3. Flow:
 - a. Air: Nearest 1/10th of a cfm through 100 cfm; nearest cfm between 100 and 1000 cfm; nearest 10 cfm between 1000 and 10,000 cfm; nearest 100 cfm above 10,000 cfm.
 - b. Water: Nearest 1/10th gpm through 100 gpm; nearest gpm between 100 and 1000 gpm; nearest 10 gpm between 1000 and 10,000 gpm; nearest 100 gpm above 10,000 gpm.
4. Moisture (Relative Humidity):
 - a. Relative Humidity (Percentage): Nearest 1 percent.
5. Level: Nearest 1/100th of an inch through 10 inches; nearest 1/10 of an inch between 10 and 100 inches; nearest inch above 100 inches.
6. Speed:
 - a. Rotation (rpm): Nearest 1 rpm.
 - b. Velocity: Nearest 1/10th fpm through 100 fpm; nearest fpm between 100 and 1000 fpm; nearest 10 fpm above 1000 fpm.

7. Position, Dampers and Valves (Percentage Open): Nearest 1 percent.
 8. Temperature:
 - a. Air, Ducts and Equipment: Nearest 1/10th of a degree.
 - b. Outdoor: Nearest degree.
 - c. Space: Nearest 1/10th of a degree.
 9. Voltage: Nearest 1/10 volt up to 100 V; nearest volt above 100 V.
- C. Control Stability: Control variables indicated within the following limits:
1. Flow:
 - a. Air, Ducts and Equipment, except Terminal Units: Within 5 percent of design flow rate.
 - b. Water: Within 2 percent of design flow rate.
 2. Moisture (Relative Humidity):
 - a. Air: Within 2 percent RH.
 - b. Space: Within 2 percent RH.
 - c. Outdoor: Within 2 percent RH.
 3. Temperature, Dry Bulb and Wet Bulb:
 - a. Air: Within 1 deg F.
 - b. Space: Within 1 deg F.
- D. Environmental Conditions for Instruments and Actuators:
1. Instruments and actuators shall operate without performance degradation under the ambient environmental temperature, pressure, humidity, and vibration conditions specified and encountered for installed location.
- E. UPS:
1. DDC system products powered by UPS units shall include the following:
 - a. Gateways.
 - b. DDC controllers.
- F. Continuity of Operation after Electric Power Interruption:
1. Equipment and associated factory-installed controls, field-installed controls, electrical equipment, and power supply connected to building normal and backup power systems shall automatically return equipment and associated controls to operating state occurring immediately before loss of normal power, without need for manual intervention by operator when power is restored either through backup

power source or through normal power if restored before backup power is brought online.

2.4 SYSTEM ARCHITECTURE

- A. System architecture shall consist of no more than three levels of LANs.
 - 1. Level one LAN shall connect network controllers and operator workstations.
 - 2. LAN shall connect programmable application controllers to other programmable application controllers, and to network controllers.
 - 3. LAN shall connect application-specific controllers to programmable application controllers and network controllers.
 - 4. LAN shall connect application-specific controllers to application-specific controllers.
- B. DDC system shall consist of dedicated and separated LANs that are not shared with other building systems and tenant data and communication networks.
- C. System architecture shall be modular and have inherent ability to expand to not less than two times system size indicated with no impact to performance indicated.
- D. System architecture shall perform modifications without having to remove and replace existing network equipment.
- E. Number of LANs and associated communication shall be transparent to operator. All I/O points residing on any LAN shall be capable of global sharing between all system LANs.
- F. System design shall eliminate dependence on any single device for system alarm reporting and control execution. Each controller shall operate independently by performing its' own control, alarm management and historical data collection.

2.5 DDC SYSTEM OPERATOR INTERFACES

- A. Operator Means of System Access: Operator shall be able to access entire DDC system through any of multiple means, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Desktop and portable operator workstation with hardwired connection through LAN port.
 - 2. Portable operator terminal with hardwired connection through LAN port.
 - 3. Portable operator workstation with wireless connection through LAN router.
 - 4. PDA with wireless connection through LAN router.
 - 5. Remote connection using outside of system personal computer or PDA through Web access.
 - 6. Remote connection using portable operator workstation and telephone dial-up modem.

- B. Access to system, regardless of operator means used, shall be transparent to operator.
- C. Network Ports: For hardwired connection of desktop or portable operator workstation. Network port shall be easily accessible, properly protected, clearly labeled, and installed at the following locations:
 - 1. Each mechanical equipment room.
- D. POT:
 - 1. Connect DDC controller through a communications port local to controller.
 - 2. Able to communicate with any DDC system controller that is directly connected or connected to DDC system.
- E. Critical Alarm Reporting:
 - 1. Operator-selected critical alarms shall be sent by DDC system to notify operator of critical alarms that require immediate attention.
 - 2. DDC system shall send alarm notification to multiple recipients that are assigned for each alarm.
 - 3. DDC system shall notify recipients by any or all means, including e-mail, text message and prerecorded phone message to mobile and landline phone numbers.
- F. Simultaneous Operator Use: Capable of accommodating up to 10 simultaneous operators that are accessing DDC system through any one of operator interfaces indicated.

2.6 POT

- A. Description: Handheld device with integral keypad or touch screen operator interface.
- B. Display: Multiple lines of text display for use in operator interaction with DDC system.
- C. Cable: Flexible coiling cable, at least 36 inches long, with a plug-in jack for connection to DDC controllers, network ports or instruments with an integral LAN port. As an alternative to hardwired connection, POT shall be accessible to DDC controllers through a wireless network connection.
- D. POT shall be powered through network connection.
- E. Connection of POT to DDC system shall not interrupt or interfere with normal network operation in any way, prevent alarms from being transmitted, or preclude central initiated commands and system modification.
- F. POT shall give operator the ability to do the following:
 - 1. Display and monitor BI point status.

2. Change BO point set point (on or off, open or closed).
3. Display and monitor analog point values.
4. Change analog control set points.
5. Command a setting of AO point.
6. Display and monitor I/O point in alarm.
7. Add a new or delete an existing I/O point.
8. Enable and disable I/O points, initiators, and programs.
9. Display and change time and date.
10. Display and change time schedules.
11. Display and change run-time counters and run-time limits.
12. Display and change time and event initiation.
13. Display and change control application and DDC parameters.
14. Display and change programmable offset values.
15. Access DDC controller initialization routines and diagnostics.

2.7 SERVERS

- A. Server is existing and is a centrally located server on the base.

2.8 SYSTEM SOFTWARE

- A. System Software Minimum Requirements:
 1. Real-time multitasking and multiuser 32 or 64 bit operating system that allows concurrent multiple operator workstations operating and concurrent execution of multiple real-time programs and custom program development.
 2. Operating system shall be capable of operating Microsoft Windows applications.
 3. Database management software shall manage all data on an integrated and non-redundant basis. Additions and deletions to database shall be without detriment to existing data. Include cross linkages so no data required by a program can be deleted by an operator until that data have been deleted from respective programs.
 4. Network communications software shall manage and control multiple network communications to provide exchange of global information and execution of global programs.
 5. Operator interface software shall include day-to-day operator transaction processing, alarm and report handling, operator privilege level and data segregation control, custom programming, and online data modification capability.
 6. Scheduling software shall schedule centrally based time and event, temporary, and exception day programs.
- B. Operator Interface Software:
 1. Security Access:
 - a. Operator access to DDC system shall be under password control.

2. Operators shall be able to perform commands including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Start or stop selected equipment.
 - b. Adjust set points.
 - c. Add, modify, and delete time programming.
 - d. Enable and disable process execution.
 - e. Lock and unlock alarm reporting for each point.
 - f. Enable and disable totalization for each point.
 - g. Enable and disable trending for each point.
 - h. Override control loop set points.
 - i. Enter temporary override schedules.
 - j. Define holiday schedules.
 - k. Change time and date.
 - l. Enter and modify analog alarm limits.
 - m. Enter and modify analog warning limits.
 - n. View limits.
 - o. Enable and disable demand limiting.
 - p. Enable and disable duty cycle.
 - q. Display logic programming for each control sequence.
3. Reporting:
 - a. Generated automatically and manually.
 - b. Sent to displays, printers and disk files.
 - c. Types of Reporting:
 - 1) General listing of points.
 - 2) List points currently in alarm.
 - 3) List of off-line points.
 - 4) List points currently in override status.
 - 5) List of disabled points.
 - 6) List points currently locked out.
 - 7) List of items defined in a "Follow-Up" file.
 - 8) List weekly schedules.
 - 9) List holiday programming.
 - 10) List of limits and deadbands.
4. Summaries: For specific points, for a logical point group, for an operator selected group(s), or for entire system without restriction due to hardware configuration.

C. Graphic Interface Software:

1. Include a full interactive graphical selection means of accessing and displaying system data to operator. Include at least five levels with the penetration path operator assignable (for example, site, building, floor, air-handling unit, and

- supply temperature loop). Native language descriptors assigned to menu items are to be operator defined and modifiable under password control.
2. Include a hierarchical-linked dynamic graphic operator interface for accessing and displaying system data and commanding and modifying equipment operation. Interface shall use a pointing device with pull-down or penetrating menus, color and animation to facilitate operator understanding of system.
 3. Include at least 10 levels of graphic penetration with the hierarchy operator assignable.
 4. Descriptors for graphics, points, alarms and such shall be modified through operator's workstation under password control.
 5. Graphic displays shall be online user definable and modifiable using the hardware and software provided.
 6. Data to be displayed within a graphic shall be assignable regardless of physical hardware address, communication or point type.
 7. Graphics are to be online programmable and under password control.
 8. Points may be assignable to multiple graphics where necessary to facilitate operator understanding of system operation.
 9. Graphics shall also contain software points.
 10. Penetration within a graphic hierarchy shall display each graphic name as graphics are selected to facilitate operator understanding.
 11. Back-trace feature shall permit operator to move upward in the hierarchy using a pointing device. Back trace shall show all previous penetration levels. Include operator with option of showing each graphic full screen size with back trace as horizontal header or by showing a "stack" of graphics, each with a back trace.
 12. Display operator accessed data on the monitor.
 13. Operator shall select further penetration using pointing device to click on a site, building, floor, area, equipment, and so on. Defined and linked graphic below that selection shall then be displayed.
 14. Include operator with means to directly access graphics without going through penetration path.
 15. Dynamic data shall be assignable to graphics.
 16. Display points (physical and software) with dynamic data provided by DDC system with appropriate text descriptors, status or value, and engineering unit.
 17. Use color, rotation, or other highly visible means, to denote status and alarm states. Color shall be variable for each class of points, as chosen by operator.
 18. Points shall be dynamic with operator adjustable update rates on a per point basis from one second to over a minute.
 19. For operators with appropriate privilege, points shall be commanded directly from display using pointing device.
 - a. For an analog command point such as set point, current conditions and limits shall be displayed and operator can position new set point using pointing device.
 - b. For a digital command point such as valve position, valve shall show its current state such as open or closed and operator could select alternative position using pointing device.

- c. Keyboard equivalent shall be available for those operators with that preference.
- 20. Operator shall be able to split or resize viewing screen into quadrants to show one graphic on one quadrant of screen and other graphics or spreadsheet, bar chart, word processing, curve plot and other information on other quadrants on screen. This feature shall allow real-time monitoring of one part of system while displaying other parts of system or data to better facilitate overall system operation.
- 21. Help Features:
 - a. On-line context-sensitive help utility to facilitate operator training and understanding.
 - b. Bridge to further explanation of selected keywords. Document shall contain text and graphics to clarify system operation.
 - 1) If help feature does not have ability to bridge on keywords for more information, a complete set of user manuals shall be provided in an indexed word-processing program, which shall run concurrently with operating system software.
 - c. Available for Every Menu Item:
 - 1) Index items for each system menu item.
- D. Project-Specific Graphics: Graphics documentation including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Site plan showing each building, and additional site elements, which are being controlled or monitored by DDC system.
 - 2. Plan for each building floor, including interstitial floors, and each roof level of each building, showing the following:
 - a. Room layouts with room identification and name.
 - b. Locations and identification of all monitored and controlled HVAC equipment and other equipment being monitored and controlled by DDC system.
 - c. Location and identification of each hardware point being controlled or monitored by DDC system.
 - 3. Control schematic for each of following, including a graphic system schematic representation similar to that indicated on Drawings, with point identification, set point and dynamic value indication, sequence of operation and control logic diagram.
 - 4. Graphic display for each piece of equipment connected to DDC system through a data communications link. Include dynamic indication of all points associated with equipment.

5. DDC system network riser diagram that shows schematic layout for entire system including all networks and all controllers, gateways operator workstations and other network device.

E. Alarm Handling Software:

1. Include alarm handling software to report all alarm conditions monitored and transmitted through DDC controllers, gateways and other network devices.
2. Include first in, first out handling of alarms according to alarm priority ranking, with most critical alarms first, and with buffer storage in case of simultaneous and multiple alarms.
3. Alarm handling shall be active at all times to ensure that alarms are processed even if an operator is not currently signed on to DDC system.
4. Alarms display shall include the following:
 - a. Indication of alarm condition such as "Abnormal Off," "Hi Alarm," and "Low Alarm."
 - b. "Analog Value" or "Status" group and point identification with native language point descriptor such as "Space Temperature, Building 110, 2nd Floor, Room 212."
 - c. Discrete per point alarm action message, such as "Call Maintenance Dept. Ext-5561."
 - d. Include extended message capability to allow assignment and printing of extended action messages. Capability shall be operator programmable and assignable on a per point basis.
5. Alarms shall be directed to appropriate operator workstations, printers, and individual operators by privilege level and segregation assignments.
6. Send e-mail alarm messages to designated operators.
7. Send e-mail, page, text and voice messages to designated operators for critical alarms.
8. Alarms shall be categorized and processed by class.
 - a. Class 1:
 - 1) Associated with fire, security and other extremely critical equipment monitoring functions; have alarm, trouble, return to normal, and acknowledge conditions printed and displayed.
 - 2) Unacknowledged alarms to be placed in unacknowledged alarm buffer.
 - 3) All conditions shall cause an audible sound and shall require individual acknowledgment to silence audible sound.
 - b. Class 2:
 - 1) Critical, but not life-safety related, and processed same as Class 1 alarms, except do not require individual acknowledgment.

- 2) Acknowledgement may be through a multiple alarm acknowledgment.
- c. Class 3:
 - 1) General alarms; printed, displayed and placed in unacknowledged alarm buffer queues.
 - 2) Each new alarm received shall cause an audible sound. Audible sound shall be silenced by "acknowledging" alarm or by pressing a "silence" key.
 - 3) Acknowledgement of queued alarms shall be either on an individual basis or through a multiple alarm acknowledgement.
 - 4) Alarms returning to normal condition shall be printed and not cause an audible sound or require acknowledgment.
- d. Class 4:
 - 1) Routine maintenance or other types of warning alarms.
 - 2) Alarms to be printed only, with no display, no audible sound and no acknowledgment required.
9. Include an unacknowledged alarm indicator on display to alert operator that there are unacknowledged alarms in system. Operator shall be able to acknowledge alarms on an individual basis or through a multiple alarm acknowledge key, depending on alarm class.
10. To ensure that no alarm records are lost, it shall be possible to assign a backup printer to accept alarms in case of failure of primary printer.
- F. Reports and Logs:
 1. Include reporting software package that allows operator to select, modify, or create reports using DDC system I/O point data available.
 2. Each report shall be definable as to data content, format, interval and date.
 3. Operator shall be able to obtain real-time logs of all I/O points by type or status, such as alarm, point lockout, or normal.
 4. Reports and logs shall be readily printed and set to be printed either on operator command or at a specific time each day.
- G. Standard Reports: Standard DDC system reports shall be provided and operator shall be able to customize reports later.
 1. All I/O: With current status and values.
 2. Alarm: All current alarms, except those in alarm lockout.
 3. Disabled I/O: All I/O points that are disabled.
 4. Alarm Lockout I/O: All I/O points in alarm lockout, whether manual or automatic.
 5. Alarm Lockout I/O in Alarm: All I/O in alarm lockout that are currently in alarm.

6. Logs:
 - a. Alarm history.
 - b. System messages.
 - c. System events.
 - d. Trends.
- H. Custom Reports: Operator shall be able to easily define any system data into a daily, weekly, monthly, or annual report. Reports shall be time and date stamped and shall contain a report title.
- I. Utility Reports: Prepare Project-specific reports.
 1. Electric Report:
 - a. Include monthly report showing the daily electrical consumption and peak electrical demand with time and date stamp for each meter.
 - b. Include annual report showing the monthly electrical consumption and peak electrical demand with time and date stamp for each meter.
 - c. For each monthly and annual report, include sum total of all submeters in building showing electrical consumption and peak electrical demand.
 2. Natural Gas Report:
 - a. Include monthly report showing the daily natural gas consumption and peak natural gas demand with time and date stamp for each meter.
 - b. Include annual report showing the monthly natural gas consumption and peak natural gas demand with time and date stamp for each meter.
 - c. For each monthly and annual report, include sum total of all submeters in building showing natural gas consumption and peak natural gas demand.
 3. Service Water Report:
 - a. Include monthly report showing the daily service water consumption and peak service water demand with time and date stamp for each meter.
 - b. Include annual report showing the monthly service water consumption and peak service water demand with time and date stamp for each meter.
 - c. For each monthly and annual report, include sum total of all submeters in building showing service water consumption and peak service water demand.
- J. Weather Reports:
 1. Include annual (12-month) report showing the following:
 - a. Monthly minimum, maximum, and average outdoor dry-bulb temperature.
 - b. Monthly minimum, maximum, and average outdoor wet-bulb temperature.
 - c. Monthly minimum, maximum, and average outdoor dew point temperature.
 - d. Number of heating degree-days for each month calculated from a base temperature of 55 deg F.

- e. Number of cooling degree-days for each month calculated from a base temperature of 65 deg F.
- f. Annual minimum, maximum, and average outdoor carbon dioxide level.
- g. Monthly minimum, maximum, and average relative humidity.
- h. Daily minimum, maximum, and average barometric pressure.
- i. Daily minimum, maximum, and average wind speed and direction.

K. Standard Trends:

- 1. Trend all I/O point present values, set points, and other parameters indicated for trending.
- 2. Trends shall be associated into groups, and a trend report shall be set up for each group.
- 3. Trends shall be stored within DDC controller and uploaded to hard drives automatically on reaching [75] of DDC controller buffer limit, or by operator request, or by archiving time schedule.
- 4. Preset trend intervals for each I/O point after review with Owner.
- 5. Trend intervals shall be operator selectable from 10 seconds up to 60 minutes. Minimum number of consecutive trend values stored at one time shall be 100 per variable.
- 6. When drive storage memory is full, most recent data shall overwrite oldest data.
- 7. Archived and real-time trend data shall be available for viewing numerically and graphically by operators.

L. Custom Trends: Operator shall be able to define a custom trend log for any I/O point in DDC system.

- 1. Each trend shall include interval, start time, and stop time.
- 2. Data shall be sampled and stored on DDC controller, within storage limits of DDC controller, and then uploaded to archive on server hard drives.
- 3. Data shall be retrievable for use in spreadsheets and standard database programs.

2.9 ASHRAE 135 GATEWAYS

A. Include BACnet communication ports, whenever available as an equipment OEM standard option, for integration via a single communication cable.

B. Gateway Minimum Requirements:

- 1. Read and view all readable object properties on non-BACnet network to BACnet network and vice versa where applicable.
- 2. Write to all writeable object properties on non-BACnet network from BACnet network and vice versa where applicable.
- 3. Include single-pass (only one protocol to BACnet without intermediary protocols) translation from non-BACnet protocol to BACnet and vice versa.

4. Comply with requirements of Data Sharing Read Property, Data Sharing Write Property, Device Management Dynamic Device Binding-B, and Device Management Communication Control BIBBs according to ASHRAE 135.
5. Hardware, software, software licenses, and configuration tools for operator-to-gateway communications.
6. Backup programming and parameters on CD media and the ability to modify, download, backup, and restore gateway configuration.

2.10 ASHRAE 135 PROTOCOL ANALYZER

- A. Analyzer and required cables and fittings for connection to ASHRAE 135 network.
- B. Analyzer shall include the following minimum capabilities:
 1. Capture and store to a file data traffic on all network levels.
 2. Measure bandwidth usage.
 3. Filtering options with ability to ignore select traffic.

2.11 DDC CONTROLLERS

- A. DDC system shall consist of a combination of network controllers, programmable application controllers and application-specific controllers to satisfy performance requirements indicated.
- B. DDC controllers shall perform monitoring, control, energy optimization and other requirements indicated.
- C. DDC controllers shall use a multitasking, multiuser, real-time digital control microprocessor with a distributed network database and intelligence.
- D. Each DDC controller shall be capable of full and complete operation as a completely independent unit and as a part of a DDC system wide distributed network.
- E. Environment Requirements:
 1. Controller hardware shall be suitable for the anticipated ambient conditions.
 2. Controllers located in conditioned space shall be rated for operation at 32 to 120 deg F
 3. Controllers located outdoors shall be rated for operation at 40 to 150 deg F.
- F. Power and Noise Immunity:
 1. Controller shall operate at 90 to 110 percent of nominal voltage rating and shall perform an orderly shutdown below 80 percent of nominal voltage.
 2. Operation shall be protected against electrical noise of 5 to 120 Hz and from keyed radios with up to 5 W of power located within 36 inches of enclosure.

G. DDC Controller Spare Processing Capacity:

1. Include spare processing memory for each controller. RAM, PROM, or EEPROM will implement requirements indicated with the following spare memory:
 - a. Network Controllers: 60 percent.
 - b. Programmable Application Controllers: Not less than 70 percent.
 - c. Application-Specific Controllers: Not less than 80 percent.
2. Memory shall support DDC controller's operating system and database and shall include the following:
 - a. Monitoring and control.
 - b. Energy management, operation and optimization applications.
 - c. Alarm management.
 - d. Historical trend data of all connected I/O points.
 - e. Maintenance applications.
 - f. Operator interfaces.
 - g. Monitoring of manual overrides.

H. DDC Controller Spare I/O Point Capacity: Include spare I/O point capacity for each controller as follows:

1. Network Controllers:
 - a. 10 percent of each AI, AO, BI, and BO point connected to controller.
 - b. Minimum Spare I/O Points per Controller:
 - 1) AIs: Three
 - 2) AOs: Three
 - 3) BIs: Five
 - 4) BOs: Five
2. Programmable Application Controllers:
 - a. 10 percent of each AI, AO, BI, and BO point connected to controller.
 - b. Minimum Spare I/O Points per Controller:
 - 1) AIs: Three
 - 2) AOs: Three
 - 3) BIs: Five
 - 4) BOs: Five
3. Application-Specific Controllers:
 - a. 10 percent of each AI, AO, BI, and BO point connected to controller.
 - b. Minimum Spare I/O Points per Controller:

- 1) AIs: Two
- 2) AOs: Two
- 3) BIs: Two
- 4) BOs: Two

- I. Maintenance and Support: Include the following features to facilitate maintenance and support:
 1. Mount microprocessor components on circuit cards for ease of removal and replacement.
 2. Means to quickly and easily disconnect controller from network.
 3. Means to quickly and easily access connect to field test equipment.
 4. Visual indication that controller electric power is on, of communication fault or trouble, and that controller is receiving and sending signals to network.
- J. Input and Output Point Interface:
 1. Hardwired input and output points shall connect to network, programmable application and application-specific controllers.
 2. Input and output points shall be protected so shorting of point to itself, to another point, or to ground will not damage controller.
 3. Input and output points shall be protected from voltage up to 24 V of any duration so that contact will not damage controller.

2.12 NETWORK CONTROLLERS

- A. General Network Controller Requirements:
 1. Include adequate number of controllers to achieve performance indicated.
 2. System shall consist of one or more independent, standalone, microprocessor-based network controllers to manage global strategies indicated.
 3. Controller shall have enough memory to support its operating system, database, and programming requirements.
 4. Data shall be shared between networked controllers and other network devices.
 5. Operating system of controller shall manage input and output communication signals to allow distributed controllers to share real and virtual object information and allow for central monitoring and alarms.
 6. Controllers that perform scheduling shall have a real-time clock.
 7. Controller shall continually check status of its processor and memory circuits. If an abnormal operation is detected, controller shall assume a predetermined failure mode and generate an alarm notification.
 8. Controllers shall be fully programmable.
- B. Operator Interface:

1. Controller shall be equipped with a service communications port for connection to a portable operator's workstation.

C. Serviceability:

1. Controller shall be equipped with diagnostic LEDs or other form of local visual indication of power, communication, and processor.
2. Wiring and cable connections shall be made to field-removable, modular terminal strips or to a termination card connected by a ribbon cable.
3. Controller shall maintain BIOS and programming information in event of a power loss for at least 72 hours.

2.13 PROGRAMMABLE APPLICATION CONTROLLERS

A. General Programmable Application Controller Requirements:

1. Include adequate number of controllers to achieve performance indicated.
2. Controller shall have enough memory to support its operating system, database, and programming requirements.
3. Data shall be shared between networked controllers and other network devices.
4. Operating system of controller shall manage input and output communication signals to allow distributed controllers to share real and virtual object information and allow for central monitoring and alarms.
5. Controllers that perform scheduling shall have a real-time clock.
6. Controller shall continually check status of its processor and memory circuits. If an abnormal operation is detected, controller shall assume a predetermined failure mode and generate an alarm notification.
7. Controllers shall be fully programmable.

B. Communication:

1. Programmable application controllers shall communicate with other devices on network.

C. Operator Interface:

1. Controller shall be equipped with a service communications port for connection to a portable operator's workstation.

D. Serviceability:

1. Controller shall be equipped with diagnostic LEDs or other form of local visual indication of power, communication, and processor.
2. Wiring and cable connections shall be made to field-removable, modular terminal strips or to a termination card connected by a ribbon cable.
3. Controller shall maintain BIOS and programming information in event of a power loss for at least 72 hours.

2.14 APPLICATION-SPECIFIC CONTROLLERS

- A. Description: Microprocessor-based controllers, which through hardware or firmware design are dedicated to control a specific piece of equipment. Controllers are not fully user-programmable but are configurable and customizable for operation of equipment they are designed to control.
 - 1. Capable of standalone operation and shall continue to include control functions without being connected to network.
 - 2. Data shall be shared between networked controllers and other network devices.
- B. Communication: Application-specific controllers shall communicate with other application-specific controller and devices on network, and to programmable application and network controllers.
- C. Operator Interface: Controller shall be equipped with a service communications port for connection to a portable operator's workstation.
- D. Serviceability:
 - 1. Controller shall be equipped with diagnostic LEDs or other form of local visual indication of power, communication, and processor.
 - 2. Wiring and cable connections shall be made to field-removable, modular terminal strips or to a termination card connected by a ribbon cable.
 - 3. Controller shall use nonvolatile memory and maintain all BIOS and programming information in event of power loss.

2.15 CONTROLLER SOFTWARE

- A. General Controller Software Requirements:
 - 1. Software applications shall reside and operate in controllers. Editing of applications shall occur at operator workstations.
 - 2. I/O points shall be identified by up to 30-character point name and up to 16>-character point descriptor. Same names shall be used at operator workstations.
 - 3. Control functions shall be executed within controllers using DDC algorithms.
 - 4. Controllers shall be configured to use stored default values to ensure fail-safe operation. Default values shall be used when there is a failure of a connected input instrument or loss of communication of a global point value.
- B. Security:
 - 1. Operator access shall be secured using individual security passwords and user names.
 - 2. Passwords shall restrict operator to points, applications, and system functions as assigned by system manager.
 - 3. Operator log-on and log-off attempts shall be recorded.

4. System shall protect itself from unauthorized use by automatically logging off after last keystroke. The delay time shall be operator-definable.
- C. Scheduling: Include capability to schedule each point or group of points in system. Each schedule shall consist of the following:
 1. Weekly Schedule:
 - a. Include separate schedules for each day of week.
 - b. Each schedule should include the capability for start, stop, optimal start, optimal stop, and night economizer.
 - c. Each schedule may consist of up to 10 events.
 - d. When a group of objects are scheduled together, include capability to adjust start and stop times for each member.
 2. Exception Schedules:
 - a. Include ability for operator to designate any day of the year as an exception schedule.
 - b. Exception schedules may be defined up to a year in advance. Once an exception schedule is executed, it will be discarded and replaced by regular schedule for that day of week.
 3. Holiday Schedules:
 - a. Include capability for operator to define up to 99 special or holiday schedules.
 - b. Schedules may be placed on scheduling calendar and will be repeated each year.
 - c. Operator shall be able to define length of each holiday period.
- D. System Coordination:
 1. Include standard application for proper coordination of equipment.
 2. Application shall include operator with a method of grouping together equipment based on function and location.
 3. Group may then be used for scheduling and other applications.
- E. Binary Alarms:
 1. Each binary point shall be set to alarm based on operator-specified state.
 2. Include capability to automatically and manually disable alarming.
- F. Analog Alarms:
 1. Each analog object shall have both high and low alarm limits.
 2. Alarming shall be able to be automatically and manually disabled.

G. Alarm Reporting:

1. Operator shall be able to determine action to be taken in event of an alarm.
2. Alarms shall be routed to appropriate operator workstations based on time and other conditions.
3. Alarm shall be able to start programs, print, be logged in event log, generate custom messages, and display graphics.

H. Remote Communication:

1. System shall have ability to dial out in the event of an alarm.

I. Electric Power Demand Limiting:

1. Demand-limiting program shall monitor building or other operator-defined electric power consumption from signals connected to electric power meter or from a watt transducer or current transformer.
2. Demand-limiting program shall predict probable power demand such that action can be taken to prevent exceeding demand limit. When demand prediction exceeds demand limit, action will be taken to reduce loads in a predetermined manner. When demand prediction indicates demand limit will not be exceeded, action will be taken to restore loads in a predetermined manner.
3. Demand reduction shall be accomplished by the following means:
 - a. Reset air-handling unit supply temperature set points.
 - b. Reset space temperature set points.
 - c. De-energize equipment based on priority.
4. Demand-limiting parameters, frequency of calculations, time intervals, and other relevant variables shall be based on the means by which electric power service provider computes demand charges.
5. Include demand-limiting prediction and control for any individual meter monitored by system or for total of any combination of meters.
6. Include means operator to make the following changes online:
 - a. Addition and deletion of loads controlled.
 - b. Changes in demand intervals.
 - c. Changes in demand limit for meter(s).
 - d. Maximum shutoff time for equipment.
 - e. Minimum shutoff time for equipment.
 - f. Select rotational or sequential shedding and restoring.
 - g. Shed and restore priority.
7. Include the following information and reports, to be available on an hourly, daily, weekly, monthly and annual basis:
 - a. Total electric consumption.

- b. Peak demand.
 - c. Date and time of peak demand.
 - d. Daily peak demand.
- J. Maintenance Management: System shall monitor equipment status and generate maintenance messages based on operator-designated run-time, starts, and calendar date limits.
- K. Sequencing: Include application software based on sequences of operation indicated to properly sequence chillers, boilers, and other applicable HVAC equipment.
- L. Control Loops:
 - 1. Support any of the following control loops, as applicable to control required:
 - a. Two-position (on/off, open/close, slow/fast) control.
 - b. Proportional control.
 - c. Proportional plus integral (PI) control.
 - d. Proportional plus integral plus derivative (PID) control.
 - 1) Include PID algorithms with direct or reverse action and anti-windup.
 - 2) Algorithm shall calculate a time-varying analog value used to position an output or stage a series of outputs.
 - 3) Controlled variable, set point, and PID gains shall be operator-selectable.
 - e. Adaptive (automatic tuning).
- M. Staggered Start: Application shall prevent all controlled equipment from simultaneously restarting after a power outage. Order which equipment (or groups of equipment) is started, along with the time delay between starts, shall be operator-selectable.
- N. Energy Calculations:
 - 1. Include software to allow instantaneous power or flow rates to be accumulated and converted to energy usage data.
 - 2. Include an algorithm that calculates a sliding-window average (rolling average). Algorithm shall be flexible to allow window intervals to be operator specified (such as 15, 30, or 60 minutes).
 - 3. Include an algorithm that calculates a fixed-window average. A digital input signal shall define start of window period (such as signal from utility meter) to synchronize fixed-window average with that used by utility.
- O. Anti-Short Cycling:
 - 1. BO points shall be protected from short cycling.
 - 2. Feature shall allow minimum on-time and off-time to be selected.

P. On and Off Control with Differential:

1. Include an algorithm that allows a BO to be cycled based on a controlled variable and set point.
2. Algorithm shall be direct- or reverse-acting and incorporate an adjustable differential.

Q. Run-Time Totalization:

1. Include software to totalize run-times for all BI and BO points.
2. A high run-time alarm shall be assigned, if required, by operator.

2.16 ENCLOSURES

A. General Enclosure Requirements:

1. House each controller and associated control accessories in a single enclosure. Enclosure shall serve as central tie-in point for control devices such as switches, transmitters, transducers, power supplies and transformers.
2. Do not house more than one controller in a single enclosure.
3. Include enclosure door with key locking mechanism. Key locks alike for all enclosures and include one pair of keys per enclosure.
4. Supply each enclosure with a complete set of as-built schematics, tubing, and wiring diagrams and product literature located in a pocket on inside of door.

B. Internal Arrangement:

1. Internal layout of enclosure shall group and protect electric, and electronic components associated with a controller, but not an integral part of controller.
2. Arrange layout to group similar products together.
3. Include a barrier between line-voltage and low-voltage electrical and electronic products.
4. Factory or shop install products, tubing, cabling and wiring complying with requirements and standards indicated.
5. Terminate field cable and wire using heavy-duty terminal blocks.
6. Include spare terminals, equal to not less than 10 percent of used terminals.
7. Include spade lugs for stranded cable and wire.
8. Install a maximum of two wires on each side of a terminal.
9. Include enclosure field power supply with a toggle-type switch located at entrance inside enclosure to disconnect power.
10. Include enclosure with a line-voltage nominal 20-A GFCI duplex receptacle for service and testing tools. Wire receptacle on hot side of enclosure disconnect switch and include with a 5-A circuit breaker.
11. Mount products within enclosure on removable internal panel(s).

12. Include products mounted in enclosures with engraved, laminated phenolic nameplates (black letters on a white background). The nameplates shall have at least 1/4-inch- high lettering.
13. Route tubing cable and wire located inside enclosure within a raceway with a continuous removable cover.
14. Label each end of cable, wire and tubing in enclosure following an approved identification system that extends from field I/O connection and all intermediate connections throughout length to controller connection.
15. Size enclosure internal panel to include at least 25 percent spare area on face of panel.

C. Environmental Requirements:

1. Evaluate temperature and humidity requirements of each product to be installed within each enclosure.
2. Calculate enclosure internal operating temperature considering heat dissipation of all products installed within enclosure and ambient effects (solar, conduction and wind) on enclosure.
3. Where required by application, include temperature-controlled electrical heat to maintain inside of enclosure above minimum operating temperature of product with most stringent requirement.
4. Where required by application, include temperature-controlled ventilation fans with filtered louver(s) to maintain inside of enclosure below maximum operating temperature of product with most stringent requirement.
5. Include temperature-controlled cooling within the enclosure for applications where ventilation fans cannot maintain inside temperature of enclosure below maximum operating temperature of product with most stringent requirement.
6. Where required by application, include humidity-controlled electric dehumidifier or cooling to maintain inside of enclosure below maximum relative humidity of product with most stringent requirement and to prevent surface condensation within enclosure.

2.17 UNINTERRUPTABLE POWER SUPPLY (UPS) UNITS

A. 250 through 1000 VA:

1. UPS units shall provide continuous, regulated output power without using their batteries during brown-out, surge, and spike conditions.
2. Load served shall not exceed 75 percent of UPS rated capacity, including power factor of connected loads.
 - a. UPS shall provide five minutes of battery power.
3. UPS shall be automatic during fault or overload conditions.
4. Unit shall include an audible alarm of faults and front panel silence feature.

B. 1000 through 3000 VA:

1. UPS units shall provide continuous, regulated output power without using their batteries during brown-out, surge, and spike conditions.
2. Load served shall not exceed 75 percent of UPS rated capacity, including power factor of connected loads.
 - a. Larger-capacity units, or multiple units, shall be provided for systems with larger connected loads.
 - b. UPS shall provide Five minutes of battery power.
3. UPS bypass shall be automatic during fault or overload conditions.

2.18 RACEWAYS FOR CONTROL WIRING, CABLING, AND TUBING

A. Metal Conduits, Tubing, and Fittings:

1. Listing and Labeling: Metal conduits, tubing, and fittings shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Fittings for Metal Conduit: Comply with NEMA ANSI FB 1 and UL 514B.

2.19 CONTROL POWER WIRING AND RACEWAYS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" electrical power conductors and cables.
- B. Comply with requirements in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for electrical power raceways and boxes.

2.20 ACCESSORIES

A. Damper Blade Limit Switches:

1. Sense positive open and/or closed position of the damper blades.
2. NEMA 250, Type 13, oil-tight construction.
3. Arrange for the mounting application.
4. Additional waterproof enclosure when required by its environment.
5. Arrange to prevent "over-center" operation.

B. Instrument Enclosures:

1. Include instrument enclosure for secondary protection to comply with requirements indicated in "Performance Requirements" Article.
2. NRTL listed and labeled to UL 50.
3. Sized to include at least 25 percent spare area on subpanel.
4. Instrument(s) mounted within enclosure on internal subpanel(s).

5. Enclosure face with engraved, laminated phenolic nameplate for each instrument within enclosure.
6. Enclosures housing pneumatic instruments shall include main pressure gage and a branch pressure gage for each pneumatic device, installed inside.
7. Enclosures housing multiple instruments shall route tubing and wiring within enclosure in a raceway having a continuous removable cover.
8. Enclosures larger than 12 inches shall have a hinged full-size face cover.

2.21 IDENTIFICATION

A. Control Equipment, Instruments, and Control Devices:

1. Engraved tag bearing unique identification.
 - a. Include instruments with unique identification identified by equipment being controlled or monitored, followed by point identification.
2. Letter size shall be as follows:
 - a. DDC Controllers: Minimum of 0.5 inch high.
 - b. Gateways: Minimum of 0.5 inch high.
 - c. Repeaters: Minimum of 0.5 inch high.
 - d. Enclosures: Minimum of 0.5 inch high.
 - e. Electrical Power Devices: Minimum of 0.25 inch high.
 - f. UPS units: Minimum of 0.5 inch high.
 - g. Accessories: Minimum of 0.25 inch high.
 - h. Instruments: Minimum of 0.25 inch high.
 - i. Control Damper and Valve Actuators: Minimum of 0.25 inch high.
3. Tag shall consist of white lettering on black background.
4. Tag shall be engraved phenolic consisting of three layers of rigid laminate. Top and bottom layers are color-coded black with contrasting white center exposed by engraving through outer layer.
5. Tag shall be fastened with drive pins.
6. Instruments, control devices and actuators with Project-specific identification tags having unique identification numbers following requirements indicated and provided by original manufacturer do not require an additional tag.

B. Raceway and Boxes:

1. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
2. Paint cover plates on junction boxes and conduit same color as the tape banding for conduits. After painting, label cover plate "HVAC Controls," using an engraved phenolic tag.

C. Equipment Warning Labels:

1. Acrylic label with pressure-sensitive adhesive back and peel-off protective jacket.
2. Lettering size shall be at least 14-point type with white lettering on red background.
3. Warning label shall read "CAUTION-Equipment operated under remote automatic control and may start or stop at any time without warning. Switch electric power disconnecting means to OFF position before servicing."
4. Lettering shall be enclosed in a white line border. Edge of label shall extend at least 0.25 inch

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 1. Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates.
- B. Examine roughing-in for products to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
 1. Examine roughing-in for instruments installed in piping to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
 2. Examine roughing-in for instruments installed in duct systems to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
- C. Examine walls, floors, roofs, and ceilings for suitable conditions where product will be installed.
- D. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 DDC SYSTEM INTERFACE WITH OTHER SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT

- A. Communication Interface to Equipment with Integral Controls:
 1. DDC system shall have communication interface with equipment having integral controls and having a communication interface for remote monitoring or control.
 2. Equipment to Be Connected:
 - a. Reference Building Automation System Details and Matrix on Plans.
 3. Systems to Be Connected:
 - a. Reference Building Automation System Details and Matrix on Plans.

3.3 DDC SYSTEM INTERFACE WITH EXISTING SYSTEMS

A. Integration with Existing Enterprise System:

1. DDC system shall interface with an existing enterprise system to adhere to Owner standards already in-place and to achieve integration.
2. Owner's control system integrator will provide the following services:
 - a. Enterprise system expansion and development of graphics, logs, reports, trends and other operational capabilities of enterprise system for I/O being added to DDC control system for use by enterprise system operators.
 - b. Limited assistance during commissioning to extent of DDC system integration with existing enterprise system.
 - c. Prepare on-site demonstration mockup of integration of DDC system to be installed with existing system before installing DDC system.
3. Engage Owner's control system integrator to provide the following services:
 - a. Enterprise system expansion and development of graphics, logs, reports, trends and other operational capabilities of enterprise system for I/O being added to DDC control system for use by enterprise system operators.
 - b. Limited assistance during commissioning to extent of DDC system integration with existing enterprise system.
 - c. Prepare on-site demonstration mockup of integration of DDC system to be installed with existing system before installing DDC system.
4. Attend meetings with control system integrator to integrate DDC system.

3.4 CONTROL DEVICES FOR INSTALLATION BY INSTALLERS

- #### **A. Reference Building Automation System Matrix on Plans.**

3.5 CONTROL DEVICES FOR EQUIPMENT MANUFACTURER FACTORY INSTALLATION

- #### **A. Reference Building Automation System Matrix on Plans.**

3.6 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install products to satisfy more stringent of all requirements indicated.
- B. Install products level, plumb, parallel, and perpendicular with building construction.
- C. Support products, tubing, piping wiring and raceways. Brace products to prevent lateral movement and sway or a break in attachment.

- D. If codes and referenced standards are more stringent than requirements indicated, comply with requirements in codes and referenced standards.
- E. Fabricate openings and install sleeves in ceilings, floors, roof, and walls required by installation of products. Before proceeding with drilling, punching, and cutting, check for concealed work to avoid damage. Patch, flash, grout, seal, and refinish openings to match adjacent condition.
- F. Firestop penetrations made in fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."
- G. Seal penetrations made in acoustically rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- H. Welding Requirements:
 - 1. Restrict welding and burning to supports and bracing.
 - 2. No equipment shall be cut or welded without approval. Welding or cutting will not be approved if there is risk of damage to adjacent Work.
 - 3. Welding, where approved, shall be by inert-gas electric arc process and shall be performed by qualified welders according to applicable welding codes.
 - 4. If requested on-site, show satisfactory evidence of welder certificates indicating ability to perform welding work intended.
- I. Fastening Hardware:
 - 1. Stillson wrenches, pliers, and other tools that damage surfaces of rods, nuts, and other parts are prohibited for work of assembling and tightening fasteners.
 - 2. Tighten bolts and nuts firmly and uniformly. Do not overstress threads by excessive force or by oversized wrenches.
 - 3. Lubricate threads of bolts, nuts and screws with graphite and oil before assembly.
- J. If product locations are not indicated, install products in locations that are accessible and that will permit service and maintenance from floor, equipment platforms, or catwalks without removal of permanently installed furniture and equipment.

3.7 POT INSTALLATION

- A. Install one portable operator terminal(s).
- B. Turn over POTs to Owner at Substantial Completion.
- C. Install software on each POT and verify that software functions properly.

3.8 GATEWAY INSTALLATION

- A. Install gateways if required for DDC system communication interface requirements indicated.
 - 1. Install gateway(s) required to suit indicated requirements.
- B. Test gateway to verify that communication interface functions properly.

3.9 CONTROLLER INSTALLATION

- A. Install controllers in enclosures to comply with indicated requirements.
- B. Connect controllers to field power supply and to UPS units where indicated
- C. Install controller with latest version of applicable software and configure to execute requirements indicated.
- D. Test and adjust controllers to verify operation of connected I/O to achieve performance indicated requirements while executing sequences of operation.
- E. Installation of Network Controllers:
 - 1. Quantity and location of network controllers shall be determined by DDC system manufacturer to satisfy requirements indicated.
 - 2. Install controllers in a protected location that is easily accessible by operators.
 - 3. Top of controller shall be within 72 inches of finished floor.
- F. Installation of Programmable Application Controllers:
 - 1. Quantity and location of programmable application controllers shall be determined by DDC system manufacturer to satisfy requirements indicated.
 - 2. Install controllers in a protected location that is easily accessible by operators.
 - 3. Top of controller shall be within 72 inches of finished floor.
- G. Application-Specific Controllers:
 - 1. Quantity and location of application-specific controllers shall be determined by DDC system manufacturer to satisfy requirements indicated.
 - 2. For controllers not mounted directly on equipment being controlled, install controllers in a protected location that is easily accessible by operators.

3.10 ELECTRIC POWER CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect electrical power to DDC system products requiring electrical power connections.

- B. Design of electrical power to products not indicated with electric power is delegated to DDC system provider and installing trade. Work shall comply with NFPA 70 and other requirements indicated.
- C. Comply with requirements in Section 262816 "Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers" for electrical power circuit breakers.
- D. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" for electrical power conductors and cables.
- E. Comply with requirements in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for electrical power raceways and boxes.

3.11 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" for identification products and installation.
- B. Install engraved phenolic nameplate with unique identification on face for each of the following:
 - 1. Operator workstation.
 - 2. Server.
 - 3. Printer.
 - 4. Gateway.
 - 5. Router.
 - 6. Protocol analyzer.
 - 7. DDC controller.
 - 8. Enclosure.
 - 9. Electrical power device.
 - 10. UPS unit.
 - 11. Accessory.
- C. Install engraved phenolic nameplate with unique instrument identification on face of each instrument connected to a DDC controller.
- D. Install engraved phenolic nameplate with identification on face of each control damper actuator connected to a DDC controller.
- E. Where product is installed above accessible tile ceiling, also install matching engraved phenolic nameplate with identification on face of ceiling grid located directly below.
- F. Where product is installed above an inaccessible ceiling, also install engraved phenolic nameplate with identification on face of access door directly below.
- G. Warning Labels:

1. Shall be permanently attached to equipment that can be automatically started by DDC control system.
2. Shall be located in highly visible location near power service entry points.

3.12 NETWORK NAMING AND NUMBERING

- A. Coordinate with Owner and provide unique naming and addressing for networks and devices.
- B. ASHRAE 135 Networks:
 1. MAC Address:
 - a. Every network device shall have an assigned and documented MAC address unique to its network.
 - b. Ethernet Networks: Document MAC address assigned at its creation.
 - c. ARCNET or MS/TP networks: Assign from 00 to 64.
 2. Network Numbering:
 - a. Assign unique numbers to each new network.
 - b. Provide ability for changing network number through device switches or operator interface.
 - c. DDC system, with all possible connected LANs, can contain up to 65,534 unique networks.
 3. Device Object Identifier Property Number:
 - a. Assign unique device object identifier property numbers or device instances for each device network.
 - b. Provide for future modification of device instance number by device switches or operator interface.
 - c. LAN shall support up to 4,194,302 unique devices.
 4. Device Object Name Property Text:
 - a. Device object name property field shall support 32 minimum printable characters.
 - b. Assign unique device "Object Name" property names with plain-English descriptive names for each device.
 - 1) Example 1: Device object name for device controlling boiler plant at Building 1000 would be "HW System B1000."
 - 2) Example 2: Device object name for a VAV terminal unit controller could be "VAV unit 102".
 5. Object Name Property Text for Other Than Device Objects:

- a. Object name property field shall support 32 minimum printable characters.
 - b. Assign object name properties with plain-English names descriptive of application.
 - 1) Example 1: "Zone 1 Temperature."
 - 2) Example 2 "Fan Start and Stop."
6. Object Identifier Property Number for Other Than Device Objects:
- a. Assign object identifier property numbers according to [Drawings] [or] [tables] indicated.
 - b. If not indicated, object identifier property numbers may be assigned at Installer's discretion but must be approved by Owner in advance, be documented and be unique for like object types within device.

3.13 DDC SYSTEM I/O CHECKOUT PROCEDURES

- A. Check installed products before continuity tests, leak tests and calibration.
- B. Check instruments for proper location and accessibility.
- C. Check instruments for proper installation on direction of flow, elevation, orientation, insertion depth, or other applicable considerations that will impact performance.
- D. Check instrument tubing for proper isolation, fittings, slope, dirt legs, drains, material and support.
- E. For pneumatic products, verify that air supply for each product is properly installed.
- F. Control Damper Checkout:
 - 1. Verify that control dampers are installed correctly for flow direction.
 - 2. Verify that proper blade alignment, either parallel or opposed, has been provided.
 - 3. Verify that damper frame attachment is properly secured and sealed.
 - 4. Verify that damper actuator and linkage attachment is secure.
 - 5. Verify that actuator wiring is complete, enclosed and connected to correct power source.
 - 6. Verify that damper blade travel is unobstructed.
- G. Instrument Checkout:
 - 1. Verify that instrument is correctly installed for location, orientation, direction and operating clearances.
 - 2. Verify that attachment is properly secured and sealed.
 - 3. Verify that conduit connections are properly secured and sealed.
 - 4. Verify that wiring is properly labeled with unique identification, correct type and size and is securely attached to proper terminals.
 - 5. Inspect instrument tag against approved submittal.

6. For instruments with tubing connections, verify that tubing attachment is secure and isolation valves have been provided.
7. For flow instruments, verify that recommended upstream and downstream distances have been maintained.
8. For temperature instruments:
 - a. Verify sensing element type and proper material.
 - b. Verify length and insertion.

3.14 DDC SYSTEM I/O ADJUSTMENT, CALIBRATION AND TESTING

- A. Calibrate each instrument installed that is not factory calibrated and provided with calibration documentation.
- B. Provide a written description of proposed field procedures and equipment for calibrating each type of instrument. Submit procedures before calibration and adjustment.
- C. For each analog instrument, make a three-point test of calibration for both linearity and accuracy.
- D. Equipment and procedures used for calibration shall comply with instrument manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Provide diagnostic and test equipment for calibration and adjustment.
- F. Field instruments and equipment used to test and calibrate installed instruments shall have accuracy at least twice the instrument accuracy being calibrated. An installed instrument with an accuracy of 1 percent shall be checked by an instrument with an accuracy of 0.5 percent.
- G. Calibrate each instrument according to instrument instruction manual supplied by manufacturer.
- H. If after calibration indicated performance cannot be achieved, replace out-of-tolerance instruments.
- I. Comply with field testing requirements and procedures indicated by ASHRAE's Guideline 11, "Field Testing of HVAC Control Components," in the absence of specific requirements, and to supplement requirements indicated.
- J. Analog Signals:
 1. Check analog voltage signals using a precision voltage meter at zero, 50, and 100 percent.
 2. Check analog current signals using a precision current meter at zero, 50, and 100 percent.

3. Check resistance signals for temperature sensors at zero, 50, and 100 percent of operating span using a precision-resistant source.

K. Digital Signals:

1. Check digital signals using a jumper wire.
2. Check digital signals using an ohmmeter to test for contact making or breaking.

L. Control Dampers:

1. Stroke and adjust control dampers following manufacturer's recommended procedure, from 100 percent open to 100 percent closed and back to 100 percent open.
2. Stroke control dampers with pilot positioners. Adjust damper and positioner following manufacturer's recommended procedure, so damper is 100 percent closed, 50 percent closed and 100 percent open at proper air pressure.
3. Check and document open and close cycle times for applications with a cycle time less than 30 seconds.
4. For control dampers equipped with positive position indication, check feedback signal at multiple positions to confirm proper position indication.

M. Meters: Check sensors at zero, 50, and 100 percent of Project design values.

N. Sensors: Check sensors at zero, 50, and 100 percent of Project design values.

O. Switches: Calibrate switches to make or break contact at set points indicated.

P. Transmitters:

1. Check and calibrate transmitters at zero, 50, and 100 percent of Project design values.
2. Calibrate resistance temperature transmitters at zero, 50, and 100 percent of span using a precision-resistant source.

3.15 DDC SYSTEM CONTROLLER CHECKOUT

A. Verify power supply.

1. Verify voltage, phase and hertz.
2. Verify that protection from power surges is installed and functioning.
3. Verify that ground fault protection is installed.
4. If applicable, verify if connected to UPS unit.
5. If applicable, verify if connected to a backup power source.

B. Verify that wire and cabling is properly secured to terminals and labeled with unique identification.

- C. Verify that spare I/O capacity is provided.

3.16 DDC CONTROLLER I/O CONTROL LOOP TESTS

A. Testing:

1. Test every I/O point connected to DDC controller to verify that safety and operating control set points are as indicated and as required to operate controlled system safely and at optimum performance.
2. Test every I/O point throughout its full operating range.
3. Test every control loop to verify operation is stable and accurate.
4. Adjust control loop proportional, integral and derivative settings to achieve optimum performance while complying with performance requirements indicated. Document testing of each control loop's precision and stability via trend logs.
5. Test and adjust every control loop for proper operation according to sequence of operation.
6. Test software and hardware interlocks for proper operation. Correct deficiencies.
7. Operate each analog point at the following:
 - a. Upper quarter of range.
 - b. Lower quarter of range.
 - c. At midpoint of range.
8. Exercise each binary point.
9. For every I/O point in DDC system, read and record each value at operator workstation, at DDC controller and at field instrument simultaneously. Value displayed at operator workstation, at DDC controller and at field instrument shall match.
10. Prepare and submit a report documenting results for each I/O point in DDC system and include in each I/O point a description of corrective measures and adjustments made to achieve desired results.

3.17 DDC SYSTEM VALIDATION TESTS

- A. Perform validation tests before requesting final review of system. Before beginning testing, first submit Pretest Checklist and Test Plan.
- B. After approval of Test Plan, execute all tests and procedures indicated in plan.
- C. After testing is complete, submit completed test checklist.
- D. Pretest Checklist: Submit the following list with items checked off once verified:
 1. Detailed explanation for any items that are not completed or verified.
 2. Required mechanical installation work is successfully completed and HVAC equipment is working correctly.

3. HVAC equipment motors operate below full-load amperage ratings.
4. Required DDC system components, wiring, and accessories are installed.
5. Installed DDC system architecture matches approved Drawings.
6. Control electric power circuits operate at proper voltage and are free from faults.
7. Required surge protection is installed.
8. DDC system network communications function properly, including uploading and downloading programming changes.
9. Using BACnet protocol analyzer, verify that communications are error free.
10. Each controller's programming is backed up.
11. Equipment, products, tubing, wiring cable and conduits are properly labeled.
12. All I/O points are programmed into controllers.
13. Testing, adjusting and balancing work affecting controls is complete.
14. Dampers and actuators zero and span adjustments are set properly.
15. Each control damper and actuator goes to failed position on loss of power.
16. Valves and actuators zero and span adjustments are set properly.
17. Each control valve and actuator goes to failed position on loss of power.
18. Meter, sensor and transmitter readings are accurate and calibrated.
19. Control loops are tuned for smooth and stable operation.
20. View trend data where applicable.
21. Each controller works properly in standalone mode.
22. Safety controls and devices function properly.
23. Interfaces with fire-alarm system function properly.
24. Electrical interlocks function properly.
25. Operator workstations and other interfaces are delivered, all system and database software is installed, and graphic are created.
26. Record Drawings are completed.

E. Test Plan:

1. Prepare and submit a validation test plan including test procedures for performance validation tests.
2. Test plan shall address all specified functions of DDC system and sequences of operation.
3. Explain detailed actions and expected results to demonstrate compliance with requirements indicated.
4. Explain method for simulating necessary conditions of operation used to demonstrate performance.
5. Include a test checklist to be used to check and initial that each test has been successfully completed.
6. Submit test plan documentation 20 business days before start of tests.

F. Validation Test:

1. Verify operating performance of each I/O point in DDC system.
 - a. Verify analog I/O points at operating value.
 - b. Make adjustments to out-of-tolerance I/O points.

- 1) Identify I/O points for future reference.
 - 2) Simulate abnormal conditions to demonstrate proper function of safety devices.
 - 3) Replace instruments and controllers that cannot maintain performance indicated after adjustments.
2. Simulate conditions to demonstrate proper sequence of control.
3. Readjust settings to design values and observe ability of DDC system to establish desired conditions.
4. After 24 Hours following Initial Validation Test:
 - a. Re-check I/O points that required corrections during initial test.
 - b. Identify I/O points that still require additional correction and make corrections necessary to achieve desired results.
5. After 24 Hours of Second Validation Test:
 - a. Re-check I/O points that required corrections during second test.
 - b. Continue validation testing until I/O point is normal on two consecutive tests.
6. Completely check out, calibrate, and test all connected hardware and software to ensure that DDC system performs according to requirements indicated.
7. After validation testing is complete, prepare and submit a report indicating all I/O points that required correction and how many validation re-tests it took to pass. Identify adjustments made for each test and indicate instruments that were replaced.

3.18 FINAL REVIEW

- A. Submit written request to Architect and Construction Manager when DDC system is ready for final review. Written request shall state the following:
 1. DDC system has been thoroughly inspected for compliance with contract documents and found to be in full compliance.
 2. DDC system has been calibrated, adjusted and tested and found to comply with requirements of operational stability, accuracy, speed and other performance requirements indicated.
 3. DDC system monitoring and control of HVAC systems results in operation according to sequences of operation indicated.
 4. DDC system is complete and ready for final review.
- B. Review by Architect and Construction Manager shall be made after receipt of written request. A field report shall be issued to document observations and deficiencies.

- C. Take prompt action to remedy deficiencies indicated in field report and submit a second written request when all deficiencies have been corrected. Repeat process until no deficiencies are reported.
- D. Should more than two reviews be required, DDC system manufacturer and Installer shall compensate entity performing review for total costs, labor and expenses, associated with third and subsequent reviews. Estimated cost of each review shall be submitted and approved by DDC system manufacturer and Installer before making the review.
- E. Prepare and submit closeout submittals when no deficiencies are reported.
- F. A part of DDC system final review shall include a demonstration to parties participating in final review.
 - 1. Provide staff familiar with DDC system installed to demonstrate operation of DDC system during final review.
 - 2. Provide testing equipment to demonstrate accuracy and other performance requirements of DDC system that is requested by reviewers during final review.
 - 3. Demonstration shall include, but not be limited to, the following:
 - a. Accuracy and calibration of 20 I/O points randomly selected by reviewers. If review finds that some I/O points are not properly calibrated and not satisfying performance requirements indicated, additional I/O points may be selected by reviewers until total I/O points being reviewed that satisfy requirements equals quantity indicated.
 - b. HVAC equipment and system hardwired and software safeties and life-safety functions are operating according to sequence of operation. Up to 50 I/O points shall be randomly selected by reviewers. Additional I/O points may be selected by reviewers to discover problems with operation.
 - c. Correct sequence of operation after electrical power interruption and resumption after electrical power is restored for randomly selected HVAC systems.
 - d. Operation of randomly selected dampers and valves in normal-on, normal-off and failed positions.
 - e. Reporting of alarm conditions for randomly selected alarms, including different classes of alarms, to ensure that alarms are properly received by operators and operator workstations.
 - f. Trends, summaries, logs and reports set-up for Project.
 - g. For up to 30 HVAC systems randomly selected by reviewers, use graph trends to show that sequence of operation is executed in correct manner and that HVAC systems operate properly through complete sequence of operation including different modes of operations indicated. Show that control loops are stable and operating at set points and respond to changes in set point of 20 percent or more.
 - h. Software's ability to communicate with controllers, operator workstations, uploading and downloading of control programs.

- i. Software's ability to edit control programs off-line.
- j. Data entry to show Project-specific customizing capability including parameter changes.
- k. Step through penetration tree, display all graphics, demonstrate dynamic update, and direct access to graphics.
- l. Execution of digital and analog commands in graphic mode.
- m. Spreadsheet and curve plot software and its integration with database.
- n. Online user guide and help functions.
- o. Multitasking by showing different operations occurring simultaneously on four quadrants of split screen.
- p. System speed of response compared to requirements indicated.
- q. For Each Network and Programmable Application Controller:
 - 1) Memory: Programmed data, parameters, trend and alarm history collected during normal operation is not lost during power failure.
 - 2) Operator Interface: Ability to connect directly to each type of digital controller with a portable operator workstation and PDA. Show that maintenance personnel interface tools perform as indicated in manufacturer's technical literature.
 - 3) Standalone Ability: Demonstrate that controllers provide stable and reliable standalone operation using default values or other method for values normally read over network.
 - 4) Electric Power: Ability to disconnect any controller safely from its power source.
 - 5) Wiring Labels: Match control drawings.
 - 6) Network Communication: Ability to locate a controller's location on network and communication architecture matches Shop Drawings.
 - 7) Nameplates and Tags: Accurate and permanently attached to control panel doors, instrument, actuators and devices.
- r. For Each Operator Workstation:
 - 1) I/O points lists agree with naming conventions.
 - 2) Graphics are complete.
 - 3) UPS unit, if applicable, operates.
- s. Communications and Interoperability: Demonstrate proper interoperability of data sharing, alarm and event management, trending, scheduling, and device and network management. Requirements must be met even if only one manufacturer's equipment is installed.
 - 1) Data Presentation: On each operator workstation, demonstrate graphic display capabilities.
 - 2) Reading of Any Property: Demonstrate ability to read and display any used readable object property of any device on network.
 - 3) Set Point and Parameter Modifications: Show ability to modify set points and tuning parameters indicated.

- 4) Peer-to-Peer Data Exchange: Network devices are installed and configured to perform without need for operator intervention to implement Project sequence of operation and to share global data.
- 5) Alarm and Event Management: Alarms and events are installed and prioritized according to Owner. Demonstrate that time delays and other logic are set up to avoid nuisance tripping. Show that operators with sufficient privileges are permitted.
- 6) Schedule Lists: Schedules are configured for start and stop, mode change, occupant overrides, and night setback as defined in sequence of operations.
- 7) Schedule Display and Modification: Ability to display any schedule with start and stop times for calendar year. Show that all calendar entries and schedules are modifiable from any connected operator workstation by an operator with sufficient privilege.
- 8) Archival Storage of Data: Data archiving is handled by operator workstation and server and local trend archiving and display is accomplished.
- 9) Modification of Trend Log Object Parameters: Operator with sufficient privilege can change logged data points, sampling rate, and trend duration.
- 10) Device and Network Management:
 - a) Display of network device status.
 - b) Display of BACnet Object Information.
 - c) Silencing devices transmitting erroneous data.
 - d) Time synchronization.
 - e) Remote device re-initialization.
 - f) Backup and restore network device programming and master database(s).
 - g) Configuration management of routers.

3.19 ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 18 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

3.20 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, maintenance service shall include 12 months' full maintenance by DDC system manufacturer's authorized service representative. Include monthly preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective components, cleaning, calibration and adjusting as required for proper

operation. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.

3.21 SOFTWARE SERVICE AGREEMENT

- A. Technical Support: Beginning at Substantial Completion, service agreement shall include software support for two year(s).
- B. Upgrade Service: At Substantial Completion, update software to latest version. Install and program software upgrades that become available within two year(s) from date of Substantial Completion. Upgrading software shall include operating system and new or revised licenses for using software.
 - 1. Upgrade Notice: At least 30 days to allow Owner to schedule and access system and to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.

3.22 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative with complete knowledge of Project-specific system installed to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain DDC system.
- B. Extent of Training:
 - 1. Base extent of training on scope and complexity of DDC system indicated and training requirements indicated. Provide extent of training required to satisfy requirements indicated even if more than minimum training requirements are indicated.
 - 2. Inform Owner of anticipated training requirements if more than minimum training requirements are indicated.
 - 3. Minimum Training Requirements:
 - a. Provide not less than five days of training total.
 - b. Stagger training over multiple training classes to accommodate Owner's requirements. All training shall occur before end of warranty period.
 - c. Total days of training shall be broken into not more than five separate training classes.
 - d. Secondary training and evaluation shall be scheduled after 90 days from the time of final acceptance. Secondary training and evaluation shall include additional smart meter training.
- C. Training Schedule:
 - 1. Schedule training with Owner 20 business days before expected Substantial Completion.

2. Schedule training to provide Owner with at least 15 business days of notice in advance of training.
3. Training shall occur within normal business hours at a mutually agreed on time. Unless otherwise agreed to, training shall occur Monday through Friday, except on U.S. Federal holidays, with two morning sessions and two afternoon sessions. Each morning session and afternoon session shall be split in half with 15-minute break between sessions. Morning and afternoon sessions shall be separated by 60-minute lunch period. Training, including breaks and excluding lunch period, shall not exceed eight hours per day.
4. Provide staggered training schedule as requested by Owner.

D. Training Attendee List and Sign-in Sheet:

1. Request from Owner in advance of training a proposed attendee list with name, phone number and e-mail address.
2. Provide a preprinted sign-in sheet for each training session with proposed attendees listed and no fewer than six blank spaces to add additional attendees.
3. Preprinted sign-in sheet shall include training session number, date and time, instructor name, phone number and e-mail address, and brief description of content to be covered during session. List attendees with columns for name, phone number, e-mail address and a column for attendee signature or initials.
4. Circulate sign-in sheet at beginning of each session and solicit attendees to sign or initial in applicable location.
5. At end of each training day, send Owner an e-mail with an attachment of scanned copy (PDF) of circulated sign-in sheet for each session.

E. Training Attendee Headcount:

1. Plan in advance of training for five attendees.
2. Make allowance for Owner to add up to two attendee(s) at time of training.
3. Headcount may vary depending on training content covered in session. Attendee access may be restricted to some training content for purposes of maintaining system security.

F. Attendee Training Manuals:

1. Provide each attendee with a color hard copy of all training materials and visual presentations.
2. Hard-copy materials shall be organized in a three-ring binder with table of contents and individual divider tabs marked for each logical grouping of subject matter. Organize material to provide space for attendees to take handwritten notes within training manuals.
3. In addition to hard-copy materials included in training manual, provide each binder with a sleeve or pocket that includes a DVD or flash drive with PDF copy of all hard-copy materials.

G. Instructor Requirements:

1. One or multiple qualified instructors, as required, to provide training.
2. Instructors shall have not less than five years of providing instructional training on not less than five past projects with similar DDC system scope and complexity to DDC system installed.

H. Organization of Training Sessions:

1. Organize training sessions into logical groupings of technical content and to reflect different levels of operators having access to system. Plan training sessions to accommodate the following three levels of operators:
 - a. Daily operators.
 - b. Advanced operators.
 - c. System managers and administrators.
2. Plan and organize training sessions to group training content to protect DDC system security. Some attendees may be restricted to some training sessions that cover restricted content for purposes of maintaining DDC system security.

I. Training Outline:

1. Submit training outline for Owner review at least 10 business day before scheduling training.
2. Outline shall include a detailed agenda for each training day that is broken down into each of four training sessions that day, training objectives for each training session and synopses for each lesson planned.

J. On-Site Training:

1. Owner will provide conditioned classroom or workspace with ample desks or tables, chairs, power and data connectivity for instructor and each attendee.
2. Instructor shall provide training materials, projector and other audiovisual equipment used in training.
3. Provide as much of training located on-site as deemed feasible and practical by Owner.
4. On-site training shall include regular walk-through tours, as required, to observe each unique product type installed with hands-on review of operation, calibration and service requirements.
5. Operator workstation provided with DDC system shall be used in training. If operator workstation is not indicated, provide a temporary workstation to convey training content.

K. Off-Site Training:

1. Provide conditioned training rooms and workspace with ample tables desks or tables, chairs, power and data connectivity for each attendee.
2. Provide capability to remotely access to Project DDC system for use in training.

3. Provide a workstation for use by each attendee.

L. Training Content for Daily Operators:

1. Basic operation of system.
2. Understanding DDC system architecture and configuration.
3. Understanding each unique product type installed including performance and service requirements for each.
4. Understanding operation of each system and equipment controlled by DDC system including sequences of operation, each unique control algorithm and each unique optimization routine.
5. Operating operator workstations, printers and other peripherals.
6. Logging on and off system.
7. Accessing graphics, reports and alarms.
8. Adjusting and changing set points and time schedules.
9. Recognizing DDC system malfunctions.
10. Understanding content of operation and maintenance manuals including control drawings.
11. Understanding physical location and placement of DDC controllers and I/O hardware.
12. Accessing data from DDC controllers.
13. Operating portable operator workstations.
14. Review of DDC testing results to establish basic understanding of DDC system operating performance and HVAC system limitations as of Substantial Completion.
15. Running each specified report and log.
16. Displaying and demonstrating each data entry to show Project-specific customizing capability. Demonstrating parameter changes.
17. Stepping through graphics penetration tree, displaying all graphics, demonstrating dynamic updating, and direct access to graphics.
18. Executing digital and analog commands in graphic mode.
19. Demonstrating control loop precision and stability via trend logs of I/O for not less than 10 percent of I/O installed.
20. Demonstrating DDC system performance through trend logs and command tracing.
21. Demonstrating scan, update, and alarm responsiveness.
22. Demonstrating spreadsheet and curve plot software, and its integration with database.
23. Demonstrating on-line user guide, and help function and mail facility.
24. Demonstrating multitasking by showing dynamic curve plot, and graphic construction operating simultaneously via split screen.
25. Demonstrating the following for HVAC systems and equipment controlled by DDC system:
 - a. Operation of HVAC equipment in normal-off, -on and failed conditions while observing individual equipment, dampers and valves for correct position under each condition.

- b. For HVAC equipment with factory-installed software, show that integration into DDC system is able to communicate with DDC controllers or gateways, as applicable.
 - c. Using graphed trends, show that sequence of operation is executed in correct manner, and HVAC systems operate properly through complete sequence of operation including seasonal change, occupied and unoccupied modes, warm-up and cool-down cycles and other modes of operation indicated.
 - d. Hardware interlocks and safeties function properly and DDC system performs correct sequence of operation after electrical power interruption and resumption after power is restored.
 - e. Reporting of alarm conditions for each alarm, and confirm that alarms are received at assigned locations, including operator workstations.
 - f. Each control loop responds to set point adjustment and stabilizes within time period indicated.
 - g. Sharing of previously graphed trends of all control loops to demonstrate that each control loop is stable and set points are being maintained.
- M. Training Content for Advanced Operators:
 - 1. Creating, deleting and modifying alarms including annunciation and routing.
 - 2. Creating, deleting and modifying point trend logs including graphing and printing on an ad-hoc basis and operator-defined time intervals.
 - 3. Creating, deleting and modifying reports.
 - 4. Performing DDC system checkout and diagnostic procedures.
 - 5. Performing DDC controllers operation and maintenance procedures.
 - 6. Maintaining, calibrating, troubleshooting, diagnosing and repairing hardware.
 - 7. Adjusting, calibrating and replacing DDC system components.
- N. Training Content for System Managers and Administrators:
 - 1. DDC system software maintenance and backups.
 - 2. Uploading, downloading and off-line archiving of all DDC system software and databases.
 - 3. Interface with Project-specific, third-party operator software.
 - 4. Understanding password and security procedures.
 - 5. Adding new operators and making modifications to existing operators.
 - 6. Operator password assignments and modification.
 - 7. Operator authority assignment and modification.
 - 8. Workstation data segregation and modification.
- O. Video of Training Sessions:
 - 1. Provide a digital video and audio recording of each training session. Create a separate recording file for each session.
 - 2. Stamp each recording file with training session number, session name and date.
 - 3. Provide Owner with four copies of digital files on DVDs or flash drives for later reference and for use in future training.

4. Owner retains right to make additional copies for intended training purposes without having to pay royalties.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 230993.11 - SEQUENCE OF OPERATIONS FOR HVAC DDC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes control sequences for DDC for HVAC systems, subsystems, and equipment.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 23 09 23 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC".

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Analog Output: Proportional output signal (zero- to 10-V dc, 4 to 20 mA).
- B. Binary Output: On/off output signal or contact closure.
- C. DDC: Direct digital control.
- D. Digital Output: Data output that must be interpreted digitally.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
 - 1. An instrumentation list for each controlled system. Label each element of the controlled system in table format. Show, in the table element name, type of device, manufacturer, model number, and control device product data sheet number.
 - 2. A complete description of the operation of the control system, including sequences of operation. Include and reference a schematic diagram of the controlled system.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Riser diagrams showing control network layout, communication protocol, and wire types.

2. Schematic diagram of each controlled system. Include all control points labeled with point names shown or listed. Show the location of control elements in the system.
3. Wiring diagram for each controlled system. Show all control elements labels. Where a control element is the same as that shown on the control system schematic, label with the same name. Label all terminals.

1.5 VARIABLE AIR VOLUME - AHU (TYPICAL OF 3)

A. Run Conditions - Requested:

1. The unit shall run whenever:
 - a. Any zone is occupied.
 - b. OR a definable number of unoccupied zones need heating or cooling.

B. Emergency Shutdown: The unit shall shut down and generate an alarm upon receiving an emergency shutdown signal.

C. Freeze Protection: The unit shall shut down and generate an alarm upon receiving a freezestat status.

D. High Static Shutdown: The unit shall shut down and generate an alarm upon receiving an high static shutdown signal.

E. Return Air Smoke Detection: The unit shall shut down and generate an alarm upon receiving a return air smoke detector status.

F. Supply Air Smoke Detection: The unit shall shut down and generate an alarm upon receiving a supply air smoke detector status.

G. AHU Optimal Start: The unit shall start prior to scheduled occupancy based on the time necessary for the zones to reach their occupied setpoints. The start time shall automatically adjust based on changes in outside air temperature and zone temperatures.

H. Supply Fan: The supply fan shall run anytime the unit is commanded to run, unless shutdown on safeties. To prevent short cycling, the supply fan shall have a user definable (adj.) minimum runtime.

Alarms shall be provided as follows:

- Supply Fan Failure: Commanded on, but the status is off.
- Supply Fan in Hand: Commanded off, but the status is on.
- Supply Fan Runtime Exceeded: Status runtime exceeds a user definable limit (adj.).

- I. Supply Air Duct Static Pressure Control: The controller shall measure duct static pressure and shall modulate the supply fan VFD speed to maintain a duct static pressure setpoint of 1.5in H₂O (adj.). The supply fan VFD speed shall not drop below 30% (adj.).

Alarms shall be provided as follows:

- High Supply Air Static Pressure: If the supply air static pressure is 25% (adj.) greater than setpoint.
- Low Supply Air Static Pressure: If the supply air static pressure is 25% (adj.) less than setpoint.
- Supply Fan VFD Fault.

- J. Supply Air Temperature Setpoint - Optimized:

1. The controller shall monitor the supply air temperature and shall maintain a supply air temperature setpoint reset based on zone cooling and heating requirements
2. The supply air temperature setpoint shall be reset for cooling based on zone cooling requirements as follows:
 - The initial supply air temperature setpoint shall be 55°F (adj.).
 - As cooling demand increases, the setpoint shall incrementally reset down to a minimum of 53°F (adj.).
 - As cooling demand decreases, the setpoint shall incrementally reset up to a maximum of 72°F (adj.) .
3. If more zones need heating than cooling, then the supply air temperature setpoint shall be reset for heating as follows:
 - The initial supply air temperature setpoint shall be 82°F (adj.).
 - As heating demand increases, the setpoint shall incrementally reset up to a maximum of 85°F (adj.).
 - As heating demand decreases, the setpoint shall incrementally reset down to a minimum of 72°F (adj.).

- K. Cooling Coil Valve:

1. The controller shall measure the supply air temperature and modulate the cooling coil valve to maintain its cooling setpoint.

The cooling shall be enabled whenever:

- Outside air temperature is greater than 60°F (adj.).
 - AND the economizer (if present) is disabled or fully open.
 - AND the supply fan status is on.
 - AND the heating (if present) is not active.
2. The cooling coil valve shall open to 50% (adj.) whenever the freezestat (if present) is on.
 3. Alarms shall be provided as follows:
 - High Supply Air Temp: If the supply air temperature is 5°F (adj.) greater than setpoint.

L. Heating Coil Valve:

1. The controller shall measure the supply air temperature and modulate the heating coil valve to maintain its heating setpoint.

The heating shall be enabled whenever:

- Outside air temperature is less than 65°F (adj.).
 - AND the supply fan status is on.
 - AND the cooling (if present) is not active.
2. The heating coil valve shall open whenever:
 - Supply air temperature drops from 40°F to 35°F (adj.).
 - OR the freezestat (if present) is on.
 3. Alarms shall be provided as follows:
 - Low Supply Air Temp: If the supply air temperature is 5°F (adj.) less than setpoint.

- M. Mixed Air Dampers:** The dampers shall open to provide minimum outside air ventilation anytime the unit is occupied and shall close anytime the unit stops. The mixed air dampers shall close 5sec (adj.) after the supply fan stops.

If Optimal Start Up is available the outside air damper shall close and the return air damper shall open.

Alarms shall be provided as follows:

- Mixed Air Dampers Failure: Commanded open, but the status is closed.

- Mixed Air Dampers in Hand: Commanded closed, but the status is open.

Dehumidification: The controller shall measure the return air humidity and override the cooling sequence to maintain return air humidity at or below 60% rh (adj.). Dehumidification shall be enabled whenever the supply fan status is on.

Final Filter Differential Pressure Monitor: The controller shall monitor the differential pressure across the final filter.

Alarms shall be provided as follows: Final Filter Change Required: Final filter differential pressure exceeds a user definable limit (adj.).

Mixed Air Temperature: The controller shall monitor the mixed air temperature and use as required for economizer control (if present) or preheating control (if present).

Alarms shall be provided as follows:

- High Mixed Air Temp: If the mixed air temperature is greater than 90°F (adj.).
- Low Mixed Air Temp: If the mixed air temperature is less than 45°F (adj.).

Return Air Humidity: The controller shall monitor the return air humidity and use as required for economizer control (if present) or humidity control (if present).

Alarms shall be provided as follows:

- High Return Air Humidity: If the return air humidity is greater than 70% (adj.).
- Low Return Air Humidity: If the return air humidity is less than 35% (adj.).

Return Air Temperature: The controller shall monitor the return air temperature and use as required for setpoint control or economizer control (if present).

Alarms shall be provided as follows:

- High Return Air Temp: If the return air temperature is greater than 90°F (adj.).
- Low Return Air Temp: If the return air temperature is less than 45°F (adj.).

Supply Air Temperature: The controller shall monitor the supply air temperature.

Alarms shall be provided as follows:

- High Supply Air Temp: If the supply air temperature is greater than 120°F (adj.).

- Low Supply Air Temp: If the supply air temperature is less than 45°F (adj.).

Point Name	Hardware Points				Software Points						Show On Graphic
	AI	AO	BI	BO	AV	BV	Loop	Sched	Trend	Alarm	
Final Filter Differential Pressure	x								x		
Mixed Air Temp	x								x		x
Return Air Humidity	x								x		x
Return Air Temp	x								x		x
Supply Air Static Pressure	x								x	x	x
Supply Air Temp	x								x		x
Cooling Valve		x							x		x
Heating Valve		x							x		x
Supply Fan VFD Speed		x							x		x
Freezestat			x						x	x	x
High Static Shutdown			x						x	x	x
Outside Air Damper Status			x						x		x
Return Air Smoke Detector			x						x	x	x
Supply Air Smoke Detector			x						x	x	x
Supply Fan Status			x						x		x
Supply Fan VFD Fault			x							x	x
Mixed Air Dampers				x							x
Supply Fan Start/Stop				x					x		x
Dehumidification Setpoint					x				x		x
Supply Air Static Pressure Setpoint					x				x		x
Supply Air Temp Setpoint					x				x		x
Emergency Shutdown						x			x	x	x
Final Filter Change Required										x	x
High Mixed Air Temp										x	
High Return Air Humidity										x	
High Return Air Temp										x	

	Hardware Points				Software Points						
Point Name	AI	AO	BI	BO	AV	BV	Loop	Sched	Trend	Alarm	Show On Graphic
High Supply Air Static Pressure										x	
High Supply Air Temp										x	
High Supply Air Temp										x	
Low Mixed Air Temp										x	
Low Return Air Humidity										x	
Low Return Air Temp										x	
Low Supply Air Static Pressure										x	
Low Supply Air Temp										x	
Low Supply Air Temp										x	
Mixed Air Dampers Failure										x	
Mixed Air Dampers in Hand										x	
Supply Fan Failure										x	
Supply Fan in Hand										x	
Supply Fan Runtime Exceeded										x	
Totals	6	3	7	2	3	1	0	0	20	25	22

Total Hardware (18)

Total Software (49)

1.6 CHILLED WATER LOOP PUMPS (TYPICAL OF 2)

- A. Chilled Water Pump System - Run Conditions: The chilled water pumps shall be enabled whenever:

- A definable number of chilled water coils need cooling.
- AND the outside air temperature is greater than 54°F (adj.).

To prevent short cycling, the chilled water pump system shall run for and be off for minimum adjustable times (both user definable).

The pumps shall run for freeze protection anytime the outside air temperature is less than 38°F (adj.).

Chilled Water Pump Lead/Standby Operation: The two chilled water pumps shall operate in a lead/standby fashion.

- The lead pump shall run first.
- On failure of the lead pump, the standby pump shall run and the lead pump shall turn off.

The designated lead pump shall rotate upon one of the following conditions (user selectable):

- manually through a software switch
- if pump runtime (adj.) is exceeded
- daily
- weekly
- monthly

Alarms shall be provided as follows:

- Chilled Water Pump 1
 - Failure: Commanded on, but the status is off.
 - Running in Hand: Commanded off, but the status is on.
 - Runtime Exceeded: Status runtime exceeds a user definable limit.
- Chilled Water Pump 2
 - Failure: Commanded on, but the status is off.

- Running in Hand: Commanded off, but the status is on.
- Runtime Exceeded: Status runtime exceeds a user definable limit.

Chilled Water Temperature Monitoring: The following temperatures shall be monitored:

- Chilled water supply.
- Chilled water return.

Alarms shall be provided as follows:

- High Chilled Water Supply Temp: If the chilled water supply temperature is greater than 55°F (adj.).
- Low Chilled Water Supply Temp: If the chilled water supply temperature is less than 38°F (adj.).

Point Name	Hardware Points				Software Points						Show On Graphic
	AI	AO	BI	BO	AV	BV	Loop	Sched	Trend	Alarm	
Chilled Water Return Temp	x								x		x
Chilled Water Supply Temp	x								x		x
Chilled Water Pump 1 Status			x						x		x
Chilled Water Pump 2 Status			x						x		x
Chilled Water Pump 1 Start/Stop				x					x		x
Chilled Water Pump 2 Start/Stop				x					x		x
Outside Air Temp					x						x
Chilled Water Pump 1 Failure										x	
Chilled Water Pump 1 Running in Hand										x	
Chilled Water Pump 1 Runtime Exceeded										x	
Chilled Water Pump 2 Failure										x	
Chilled Water Pump 2 Running in Hand										x	
Chilled Water Pump 2										x	

	Hardware Points				Software Points						
Point Name	AI	AO	BI	BO	AV	BV	Loop	Sched	Trend	Alarm	Show On Graphic
Runtime Exceeded											
High Chilled Water Supply Temp										x	
Low Chilled Water Supply Temp										x	
Totals	2	0	2	2	1	0	0	0	6	8	7

Total Hardware (6)

Total Software (15)

1.7 SPLIT SYSTEMS (TYPICAL OF 1)

A. Run Conditions - Scheduled:

1. The unit shall run according to a user definable time schedule in the following modes:
 - a. Occupied Mode: The unit shall maintain
 - 1) A 74°F (adj.) cooling setpoint
 - 2) A 70°F (adj.) heating setpoint.
 - 3) A 65% (adj) relative humidity setpoint.
 - b. Standby Mode: The unit shall maintain
 - 1) A 76°F (adj.) cooling setpoint
 - 2) A 68°F (adj.) heating setpoint.
 - 3) A 65% (adj) relative humidity setpoint.
 - c. Unoccupied Mode (night setback): The unit shall maintain
 - 1) A 85°F (adj.) cooling setpoint.
 - 2) A 55°F (adj.) heating setpoint.
 - 3) A 65% (adj) relative humidity setpoint

B. Alarms shall be provided as follows:

1. High Zone Temp: If the zone temperature is greater than the cooling setpoint by a user definable amount (adj.).
2. Low Zone Temp: If the zone temperature is less than the heating setpoint by a user definable amount (adj.).

- C. Zone Setpoint Adjust: The occupant shall be able to adjust the zone temperature heating and cooling setpoints at the zone sensor.
- D. Zone Optimal Start: The unit shall use an optimal start algorithm for morning start-up. This algorithm shall minimize the unoccupied warm-up or cool-down period while still achieving comfort conditions by the start of scheduled occupied period.
- E. Zone Unoccupied Override: A timed local override control shall allow an occupant to override the schedule and place the unit into an occupied mode for an adjustable period of time. At the expiration of this time, control of the unit shall automatically return to the schedule.
- F. Freeze Protection: The unit shall shut down and generate an alarm upon receiving a freezestat status.
- G. Fan: The fan shall run anytime the unit is commanded to run, unless shutdown on safeties. Fan shall cycle during unoccupied and standby mode. Fan shall run during occupied mode.
- H. Heating and Cooling - 1 Compressor Stage: The controller shall measure the zone temperature and cycle the compressor to maintain its setpoint. To prevent short cycling, the stage shall have a user definable (adj.) minimum runtime. The compressor shall run subject to its own internal safeties and controls.
 - 1. The heating shall be enabled whenever:
 - a. Outside air temperature is less than 65°F (adj.).
 - b. AND the fan is on.
 - c. AND the reversing valve is in heat mode.
 - 2. The cooling shall be enabled whenever:
 - a. Outside air temperature is greater than 60°F (adj.).
 - b. AND the fan is on.
 - c. AND the reversing valve is in cool mode.
 - 3. Alarms shall be provided as follows:
 - a. Compressor Runtime Exceeded: The compressor runtime exceeds a user definable limit (adj.).
 - 4. Mixed Air Dampers: The outside air dampers shall maintain a minimum position (adj.) during building occupied mode and be closed during standby and unoccupied mode. During occupied mode, minimum outside air shall be 25% of scheduled outside air cfm. When a carbon dioxide level of 800 to 1000 ppm (adjustable) is reached during occupied mode, outside air damper shall modulate between

minimum and maximum positions. Unless in economizer mode, maximum outside air position shall be scheduled outside air cfm. During unoccupied or standby modes, the outside air damper shall be closed. The damper open position (max/min) shall be set during testing and balancing. The outside air damper shall close 1sec (adj.) after the fan stops.

5. If Optimal Start Up is available the outside air damper shall close and the return air damper shall open.
- I. Gas Heating Stage: The controller shall measure the zone temperature and stage the heating to maintain its heating setpoint. To prevent short cycling, the stage shall have a user definable (adj.) minimum runtime.
 1. The heating shall be enabled whenever:
 - a. The unit is in heating mode.
 - b. AND the zone temperature is below heating setpoint.
 - c. AND the fan is on.
- J. Dehumidification Stage: The controller shall measure the space humidity and stage the dehum to maintain its relative humidity setpoint. To prevent short cycling, the stage shall have a user definable (adj.) minimum runtime.
 1. The dehum mode shall be enabled whenever:
 - a. There is no call for cooling
 - b. AND there is no call for heating
 - c. AND the zone/space humidity is above relative humidity setpoint
 - d. AND the fan is on.
- K. Filter Differential Pressure Monitor: The controller shall monitor the differential pressure across the filter.
 1. Alarms shall be provided as follows:
 - a. Filter Change Required: Filter differential pressure exceeds a user definable limit (adj.).
- L. Discharge Air Temperature: The controller shall monitor the discharge air temperature.
 1. Alarms shall be provided as follows:
 - a. High Discharge Air Temp: If the discharge air temperature is greater than 120°F (adj.).
 - b. Low Discharge Air Temp: If the discharge air temperature is less than 40°F (adj.).

M. Fan Status: The controller shall monitor the fan status.

1. Alarms shall be provided as follows:
 - a. Fan Failure: Commanded on, but the status is off.
 - b. Fan in Hand: Commanded off, but the status is on.
 - c. Fan Runtime Exceeded: Fan status runtime exceeds a user definable limit (adj.).

N. Zone Carbon Dioxide (CO₂) Concentration Monitoring: The controller shall measure the zone CO₂ concentration.

1. Alarms shall be provided as follows:
 - a. High Zone Carbon Dioxide Concentration: If the zone CO₂ concentration is greater than 1100ppm (adj.) when in the occupied mode.

O. Zone Humidity: The controller shall monitor the zone humidity.

1. Alarms shall be provided as follows:
 - a. High Zone Humidity: If the zone humidity is greater than 70% (adj.).
 - b. Low Zone Humidity: If the zone humidity is less than 25% (adj.).

1.8 OUTSIDE AIR CONDITIONS (TYPICAL OF 1 PER BUILDING)

A. Outside Air Conditions: The controller shall monitor the outside air temperature and humidity and calculate the outside air enthalpy on a continual basis. These values shall be made available to the system at all times.

1. Alarm shall be generated as follows:
 - a. Sensor Failure: Sensor reading indicates shorted or disconnected sensor. In the event of a sensor failure, an alternate outside air conditions sensor shall be made available to the system without interruption in sensor readings.

B. If an OA Temp Sensor cannot be read, a default value of 65°F will be used.

C. If an OA Humidity Sensor cannot be read, a default value of 70% will be used.

D. Outside Air Temperature History: The controller shall monitor and record the high and low temperature readings for the outside air. These readings shall be recorded on a daily, month-to-date, and year-to-date basis.

1. Cooling Degree Day: The controller shall provide a Degree Day history index that reflects the energy consumption for the facilities cooling demand. Computations shall use a mean daily temperature of 65°F (adj.). The Degree Day peak value readings shall be recorded on a daily, month-to-date, and year-to-date basis.
2. Heating Degree Day: The controller shall provide a Degree Day history index that reflects the energy consumption for the facilities heating demand. Computations shall use a mean daily temperature of 65°F (adj.). The Degree Day peak value readings shall be recorded on a daily, month-to-date, and year-to-date basis.

1.9 DEHUMIDIFIER (TYPICAL OF 3)

A. Run Conditions - Scheduled:

1. The unit shall run according to a user definable time schedule in the following modes:
 - a. Occupied Mode: The unit shall maintain
 - i. 65% RH (adj.) relative humidity setpoint
 - b. Unoccupied Mode (night setback): The unit shall maintain
 - ii. 65% RH (adj.) relative humidity setpoint

B. Alarms shall be provided as follows:

1. High Zone Humidity: If the zone humidity is greater than 70% RH (adj.).

C. Zone Setpoint Adjust: The occupant shall not be able to adjust the zone humidity setpoints at the zone sensor.

D. Supply Fan:

1. The supply fan shall run anytime the unit is commanded to run, unless shutdown on safeties. To prevent short cycling, the supply fan shall have a user definable (adj.) minimum runtime. The supply fan shall cycle during occupied mode, unoccupied and standby mode.
2. Alarms shall be provided as follows:
 - a. Supply Fan Failure: Commanded on, but the status is off.
 - b. Supply Fan in Hand: Commanded off, but the status is on.

- c. Supply Fan Runtime Exceeded: Status runtime exceeds a user definable limit (adj.).
- E. Dehumidification: The controller shall measure the return air humidity and override the sequence to maintain return air humidity at or below 65% rh (adj.).
 - 1. Dehumidification shall be enabled whenever:
 - a. the supply fan status is on.
- F. Filter Differential Pressure Monitor: The controller shall monitor the differential pressure across the filter.
 - 1. Alarms shall be provided as follows:
 - a. Filter Change Required: Filter differential pressure exceeds a user definable limit (adj.).
- G. Space Humidity:
 - 1. The controller shall monitor the space humidity and use as required for humidity control.
 - 2. Alarms shall be provided as follows:
 - a. High Return Air Humidity: If the space humidity is greater than 70% (adj.).

1.10 DUCTLESS SPLIT SYSTEM AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM (TYPICAL OF 2)

- A. General Description: The variable refrigerant flow (VRF) system consists of (1) ductless indoor unit and (1) outdoor unit (DHP) that provides cooling for the conditioned space as shown on the drawings.
- B. Run Conditions-Scheduled:
 - 1. The unit shall run according to a user definable time schedule in the following modes:
 - a. Occupied Mode: The unit shall maintain
 - 1) A 74°F (adj.) cooling setpoint
 - b. Unoccupied Mode (night setback): The unit shall maintain
 - 1) A 74°F (adj.) cooling setpoint
 - 2. All setpoints shall be adjustable within the third party building automation system (Honeywell).

- C. Unoccupied Mode: The unit shall be in unoccupied mode for all periods not included in the occupied hours of operation. Building scheduling shall be by third party building automation system (Honeywell).
- D. Occupied Mode: The unit shall be in occupied mode based on occupied schedule or as sensed by the zone occupancy sensor. Third party building automation system (Honeywell) shall determine building schedule.
- E. Leak Detection Interlock (Indoor Unit): The indoor unit shall automatically be disabled upon detection of water in the overflow drain pan.
- F. Monitoring, Management, And Alarms:

The outdoor units, indoor units are furnished with integrated factory digital controls (DDC) system with a building monitoring and management software and a building automation system (BAS) interface BACnet protocol device allowing **remote monitoring, scheduling, and control from a third party BAS control system.**

- G. Integrated Factory Controls Monitoring: Monitoring of individual system component alarms and diagnostics shall be provided by the system control system.
- H. BAS Interface Monitoring: A common alarm shall be graphically displayed at the BAS system work station.
- I. Component Control Loops:
 - 1. OUTDOOR CONDENSING UNIT: When in all modes: The condensing unit shall operate subject to the integrated factory digital controls (DDC) system.
 - 2. INDOOR FAN COIL UNIT: When in all modes: The indoor unit shall operate subject to the integrated factory digital controls (DDC) system.
 - 3. FILTER MONITORING: The unit filters shall be monitored for preventative maintenance and diagnostic purposes. When in all modes: The controller shall monitor the fan runtime to provide maintenance reminder at 50% of filter elapsed time (1100 hours) and an alarm at 100% elapsed time (2200 hours).

1.11 VARIABLE AIR VOLUME - TERMINAL UNIT (TYPICAL OF 36)

- A. Run Conditions - Scheduled:

The unit shall run according to a user definable time schedule in the following modes:

- Occupied Mode: The unit shall maintain

- A 75°F (adj.) cooling setpoint
- A 70°F (adj.) heating setpoint.
- Unoccupied Mode (night setback): The unit shall maintain
 - A 85°F (adj.) cooling setpoint.
 - A 55°F (adj.) heating setpoint.

Alarms shall be provided as follows:

- High Zone Temp: If the zone temperature is greater than the cooling setpoint by a user definable amount (adj.).
 - Low Zone Temp: If the zone temperature is less than the heating setpoint by a user definable amount (adj.).
- B. Demand Limiting - Zone Setpoint Optimization: To lower power consumption, the zone setpoints shall automatically relax when the facility power consumption exceeds definable thresholds. The amount of relaxation shall be individually configurable for each zone. The zone setpoints shall automatically return to their previous settings when the facility power consumption drops below the thresholds.
- C. Zone Setpoint Adjust: The occupant shall be able to adjust the zone temperature heating and cooling setpoints at the zone sensor.
- D. Zone Optimal Start: The unit shall use an optimal start algorithm for morning start-up. This algorithm shall minimize the unoccupied warm-up or cool-down period while still achieving comfort conditions by the start of scheduled occupied period.
- E. Zone Unoccupied Override: A timed local override control shall allow an occupant to override the schedule and place the unit into an occupied mode for an adjustable period of time. At the expiration of this time, control of the unit shall automatically return to the schedule.
- F. Reversing Variable Volume Terminal Unit - Flow Control: The unit shall maintain zone setpoints by controlling the airflow through one of the following:
1. Occupied:
 - When zone temperature is greater than its cooling setpoint, the zone damper shall modulate between the minimum occupied airflow (adj.) and the maximum cooling airflow (adj.) until the zone is satisfied.

- When the zone temperature is between the cooling setpoint and the heating setpoint, the zone damper shall maintain the minimum required zone ventilation (adj.).
 - When zone temperature is less than its heating setpoint, the controller shall enable heating to maintain the zone temperature at its heating setpoint. Additionally, if warm air is available from the AHU, the zone damper shall modulate between the minimum occupied airflow (adj.) and the maximum heating airflow (adj.) until the zone is satisfied.
2. Unoccupied:
- When the zone is unoccupied the zone damper shall control to its minimum unoccupied airflow (adj.).
 - When the zone temperature is greater than its cooling setpoint, the zone damper shall modulate between the minimum unoccupied airflow (adj.) and the maximum cooling airflow (adj.) until the zone is satisfied.
 - When zone temperature is less than its unoccupied heating setpoint, the controller shall enable heating to maintain the zone temperature at the setpoint. Additionally, if warm air is available from the AHU, the zone damper shall modulate between the minimum unoccupied airflow (adj.) and the auxiliary heating airflow (adj.) until the zone is satisfied.

Point Name	Hardware Points				Software Points						Show On Graphic
	AI	A O	BI	BO	AV	BV	Loo p	Sche d	Tren d	Alar m	
Airflow	x								x		x
Zone Setpoint Adjust	x										x
Zone Temp	x								x		x
Zone Damper		x							x		x
Zone Override			x						x		x
Airflow Setpoint					x				x		x
Cooling Setpoint					x				x		x
Heating Setpoint					x				x		x
Heating Mode						x			x		
Schedule								x			
High Zone Temp										x	

	Hardware Points				Software Points						
Point Name	AI	AO	BI	BO	AV	BV	Loop	Sched	Trend	Alarm	Show On Graphic
Low Zone Temp										x	
Totals	3	1	1	0	3	1	0	1	8	2	8
Total Hardware (5)					Total Software (15)						

1.12 POWER MONITORING INTERFACE (UNLESS OTHERWISE NOTED ON DRAWINGS, TYPICAL OF 1 PER BUILDING)

- A. Electrical Power Interface Monitor: Current electrical power status and operating conditions shall be monitored through the device's communications interface port. The interface shall monitor and trend the points as shown on the Points List.

	Hardware Points				Software Points						
Point Name	AI	AO	BI	BO	AV	BV	Loop	Sched	Trend	Alarm	Show On Graphic
Apparent Power - kVA					x				x		x
Current Neutral					x				x		x
Current Phase A					x				x		x
Current Phase B					x				x		x
Current Phase C					x				x		x
Frequency					x				x		x
Power Factor					x				x		x
Real Energy - kWh					x				x		x
Real Power - kW					x				x		x
Voltage A-B					x				x		x
Voltage A-N					x				x		x
Voltage B-C					x				x		x
Voltage B-N					x				x		x
Voltage C-A					x				x		x
Voltage C-N					x				x		x

	Hardware Points				Software Points						
Point Name	AI	A O	BI	B O	A V	B V	Loop	Sched	Trend	Alar m	Show On Graphic
Totals	0	0	0	0	15	0	0	0	15	0	15
Total Hardware (0)				Total Software (30)							

1.13 VARIABLE FREQUENCY DRIVE INTERFACE (TYPICAL OF 7)

- A. Variable Frequency Drive (VFD) Interface Monitor: Current VFD status and operating conditions shall be monitored through its communications interface port. The interface shall monitor and trend the points as shown on the Points List.

	Hardware Points				Software Points						
Point Name	AI	A O	BI	B O	A V	B V	Loop	Sched	Trend	Alar m	Show On Graphic
Motor Current Amps					x				x		x
Motor Frequency Hertz					x				x		x
Motor Runtime					x						x
Motor Speed RPM					x				x		x
In Bypass						x			x	x	x
In Fault Condition						x			x	x	x
VFD Status						x			x		x
Totals	0	0	0	0	4	3	0	0	6	2	7
Total Hardware (0)				Total Software (15)							

1.14 ELECTRIC METER (UNLESS OTHERWISE NOTED ON DRAWINGS, TYPICAL OF 1 PER BUILDING)

- A. Electric Meter: The controller shall monitor the electric meter for electric consumption on a continual basis. These values shall be made available to the system at all times.
- B. Alarm shall be generated as follows: Meter Failure: Sensor reading indicates a loss of pulse output from the electric meter.

- C. Peak Demand History: The controller shall monitor and record the peak (high and low) demand readings from the electric meter. Peak readings shall be recorded on a daily, month-to-date, and year-to-date basis.
- D. Usage History: The controller shall monitor and record electric meter readings so as to provide a power consumption history. Usage readings shall be recorded on a daily, month-to-date, and year-to-date basis.
- E. Demand Levels: The controller shall set the system demand level (adj.) based on the current power consumption readings from the electric meter. There shall be six daily time periods in which the demand shall be adjusted on three levels. These demand levels shall be available for facility equipment to utilize for demand limiting.
- Demand Level 1: Power consumption has exceeded the first demand level threshold (adj.).
 - Demand Level 2: Power consumption has exceeded the second demand level threshold (adj.).
 - Demand Level 3: Power consumption has exceeded the third demand level threshold (adj.).

Point Name	Hardware Points				Software Points						Show On Graphic
	AI	A O	BI	B O	A V	B V	Loop	Sched	Trend	Alarm	
kW Pulse	x										x
Current Demand Level					x				x		x
kW Demand									x		x
kW Peak Month-to-Date									x		x
kW Peak Today									x		x
kW Peak Year-to-Date									x		x
kWh Today									x		x
MWh Month-to-Date									x		x
MWh Year-to-Date									x		x
Demand Level 1										x	
Demand Level 2										x	

Point Name	Hardware Points				Software Points						Show On Graphic
	AI	A O	BI	B O	A V	B V	Loop	Sched	Trend	Alarm	
Demand Level 3										x	
Meter Failure										x	
Totals	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	8	4	9

Total Hardware (1)

Total Software (13)

1.15 GAS METER (UNLESS OTHERWISE NOTED ON DRAWINGS, TYPICAL OF 1 PER BUILDING)

- A. Gas Meter: The controller shall monitor the gas meter for gas consumption on a continual basis. These values shall be made available to the system at all times.
- B. Alarm shall be generated as follows: Meter Failure: Sensor reading indicates a loss of pulse output from the gas meter.
- C. Peak Demand History: The controller shall monitor and record the peak (high and low) demand readings from the gas meter. Peak readings shall be recorded on a daily, month-to-date, and year-to-date basis.
- D. Usage History: The controller shall monitor and record gas meter readings so as to provide a gas consumption history. Usage readings shall be recorded on a daily, month-to-date, and year-to-date basis.

Point Name	Hardware Points				Software Points						Show On Graphic
	AI	A O	BI	B O	A V	B V	Loop	Sched	Trend	Alarm	
Gas Flow Rate	x										
Demand									x		x
Peak Month-to-Date									x		x
Peak Today									x		x
Peak Year-to-Date									x		x
Usage Month-to-Date									x		x
Usage Today									x		x
Usage Year-to-Date									x		x

Point Name	Hardware Points				Software Points						Show On Graphic
	AI	A O	BI	B O	A V	B V	Loop	Sched	Trend	Alarm	
Meter Failure										x	
Totals	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	7	1	7

Total Hardware (1) Total Software (8)

1.16 WATER METER (TYPICAL OF 1 PER BUILDING AND 1 PER LOOP MONITOR - REFERENCE SEQUENCE OF OPERATION)

- A. Water Meter: The controller shall monitor the water meter for water consumption on a continual basis. These values shall be made available to the system at all times.
- B. Alarm shall be generated as follows: Meter Failure: Sensor reading indicates a loss of pulse output from the water meter.
- C. Peak Demand History: The controller shall monitor and record the peak (high and low) demand readings from the water meter. These readings shall be recorded on a daily, month-to-date, and year-to-date basis.
- D. Usage History: The controller shall monitor and record water meter readings so as to provide a water consumption history. Usage readings shall be recorded on a daily, month-to-date, and year-to-date basis.

Point Name	Hardware Points				Software Points						Show On Graphic
	AI	A O	BI	B O	A V	B V	Loop	Sched	Trend	Alarm	
Water Flow Rate	x										
Demand									x		x
Peak Month-to-Date									x		x
Peak Today									x		x
Peak Year-to-Date									x		x
Usage Month-to-Date									x		x
Usage Today									x		x
Usage Year-to-Date									x		x
Meter Failure										x	

	Hardware Points				Software Points						
Point Name	AI	A O	BI	B O	A V	B V	Loop	Sched	Trend	Alarm	Show On Graphic
Totals	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	7	1	7
Total Hardware (1)				Total Software (8)							

1.17 SINGLE AIR-COOLED CHILLER (TYPICAL OF 1)

A. Chiller - Run Conditions:

- The chiller shall be enabled to run whenever:
 - A definable number of chilled water coils need cooling
 - AND the outside air temperature is greater than 54°F (adj.).
- To prevent short cycling, the chiller shall run for and be off for minimum adjustable times (both user definable), unless shutdown on safeties or outside air conditions.
- The chiller shall run subject to its own internal safeties and controls.

B. Chilled Water Pump: The chilled water pump shall run anytime the chiller is called to run. The chilled water pump shall also run for freeze protection whenever the outside air temperature is less than a user definable setpoint (adj.).

- The chilled water pump shall start prior to the chiller being enabled and shall stop only after the chiller is disabled. The chilled water pump shall therefore have:
 - A user adjustable delay on start.
 - AND a user adjustable delay on stop.
- The delay times shall be set appropriately to allow for orderly chilled water system start-up, shutdown and sequencing.
- Alarms shall be provided as follows:
 - Chilled Water Pump Failure: Commanded on, but the status is off.
 - Chilled Water Pump Running in Hand: Commanded off, but the status is on.
 - Chilled Water Pump Runtime Exceeded: Status runtime exceeds a user definable limit.

C. Chiller: The chiller shall be enabled a user adjustable time after pump statuses are proven on. The chiller shall therefore have a user adjustable delay on start.

1. The delay time shall be set appropriately to allow for orderly chilled water system start-up, shutdown and sequencing.
2. The chiller shall run subject to its own internal safeties and controls.
3. Alarms shall be provided as follows:
 - Chiller Failure: Commanded on, but the status is off.
 - Chiller Running in Hand: Commanded off, but the status is on.
 - Chiller Runtime Exceeded: Status runtime exceeds a user definable limit.

D. Chiller Chilled Water Supply Setpoint: The chiller shall maintain a chilled water supply temperature setpoint as determined by its own internal controls (provided by others).

E. Chilled Water Temperature Monitoring:

1. The following temperatures shall be monitored:
 - Chilled water supply.
 - Chilled water return.
2. Alarms shall be provided as follows:
 - High Chilled Water Supply Temp: If the chilled water supply temperature is greater than 55°F (adj.).
 - Low Chilled Water Supply Temp: If the chilled water supply temperature is less than 38°F (adj.).

Point Name	Hardware Points				Software Points						Show On Graphic
	AI	AO	BI	BO	AV	BV	Loop	Sched	Trend	Alarm	
Chilled Water Return Temp	x								x		x
Chilled Water Supply Temp	x								x		x
Chilled Water Pump Status			x						x		x
Chiller Status			x						x		x
Chilled Water Pump Start/Stop				x							x

	Hardware Points				Software Points						
Point Name	AI	AO	BI	BO	AV	BV	Loop	Sched	Trend	Alarm	Show On Graphic
Chiller Enable				x							x
Outside Air Temp					x						x
Chilled Water Pump Failure										x	
Chilled Water Pump Running in Hand										x	
Chilled Water Pump Runtime Exceeded										x	
Chiller Failure										x	
Chiller Running in Hand										x	
Chiller Runtime Exceeded										x	
High Chilled Water Supply Temp										x	
Low Chilled Water Supply Temp										x	
Totals	2	0	2	2	1	0	0	0	4	8	7

Total Hardware (6)

Total Software (13)

1.18 BOILER INTERFACE (TYPICAL OF 2)

- A. Boiler Interface Monitor: Current boiler status and operating conditions will be monitored through its communications interface port. The interface will monitor and trend the points as shown on the Points List.

	Hardware Points				Software Points						
Point Name	AI	AO	BI	BO	AV	BV	Loop	Sched	Trend	Alarm	Show On Graphic
Burner Cycles					x						x
Hot Water Return Temp					x				x		x
Hot Water Supply Temp					x				x		x
Hot Water Supply Temp Set-point					x				x		x

	Hardware Points				Software Points						
Point Name	AI	AO	BI	BO	AV	BV	Loop	Sched	Trend	Alarm	Show On Graphic
Operating Hours					x						x
Operating Pressure					x				x		x
Operating Temp					x				x		x
Boiler Status						x			x		x
Hot Water Flow Status						x			x		x
Totals	0	0	0	0	7	2	0	0	7	0	9
Total Hardware (0)					Total Software (16)						

1.19 TWO BOILER SYSTEM (TYPICAL OF 1)

A. Boiler System Run Conditions:

- The boiler system shall be enabled to run whenever:
 - A definable number of hot water coils need heating.
 - AND outside air temperature is less than 65°F (adj.).
- To prevent short cycling, the boiler system shall run for and be off for minimum adjustable times (both user definable), unless shutdown on safeties or outside air conditions.
- The boiler shall run subject to its own internal safeties and controls.
- The boiler system shall also run for freeze protection whenever the outside air temperature is less than 38°F (adj.).

B. Boiler 1 Safeties:

- The following safeties shall be monitored:
 - Boiler alarm.
 - Low water level.
- Alarms shall be provided as follows:
 - Boiler alarm.

- Low water level alarm.

C. Boiler 2 Safeties:

1. The following safeties shall be monitored:

- Boiler alarm.
- Low water level.

2. Alarms shall be provided as follows:

- Boiler alarm.
- Low water level alarm.

D. Hot Water Pump Lead/Lag Operation:

1. The two hot water pumps shall operate in a lead/lag fashion.

- The lead pump shall run first.
- On failure of the lead pump, the lag pump shall run and the lead pump shall turn off.
- On decreasing hot water differential pressure, the lag pump shall stage on and run in unison with the lead pump to maintain hot water differential pressure setpoint.

2. The designated lead pump shall rotate upon one of the following conditions (user selectable):

- manually through a software switch
- if pump runtime (adj.) is exceeded
- daily
- weekly
- monthly

3. Alarms shall be provided as follows:

- Hot Water Pump 1
 - Failure: Commanded on, but the status is off.
 - Running in Hand: Commanded off, but the status is on.
 - Runtime Exceeded: Status runtime exceeds a user definable limit.
 - VFD Fault.
- Hot Water Pump 2
 - Failure: Commanded on, but the status is off.

- Running in Hand: Commanded off, but the status is on.
 - Runtime Exceeded: Status runtime exceeds a user definable limit.
 - VFD Fault.
- D. Hot Water Differential Pressure Control: The controller shall measure hot water differential pressure and modulate the hot water pump VFDs in sequence to maintain its hot water differential pressure setpoint.
1. The following setpoints are recommended values. All setpoints shall be field adjusted during the commissioning period to meet the requirements of actual field conditions.
 2. The controller shall modulate hot water pump speeds to maintain a hot water differential pressure of 12lbf/in² (adj.). The VFDs minimum speed shall not drop below 20% (adj.).
 3. On dropping hot water differential pressure, the VFDs shall stage on and run to maintain setpoint as follows:
 - The controller shall modulate the lead VFD to maintain setpoint.
 - If the lead VFD speed is greater than a setpoint of 90% (adj.), the lag VFD shall stage on.
 - The lag VFD shall ramp up to match the lead VFD speed and then run in unison with the lead VFD to maintain setpoint.
 4. On rising hot water differential pressure, the VFDs shall stage off as follows:
 - If the VFDs speeds drops back to 60% (adj.) below setpoint, the lag VFD shall stage off.
 - The lead VFD shall continue to run to maintain setpoint.
 5. Alarms shall be provided as follows:
 - High Hot Water Differential Pressure: If 25% (adj.) greater than setpoint.
 - Low Hot Water Differential Pressure: If 25% (adj.) less than setpoint.
- E. Circulation Pump 1: The Circulation Pump 1 shall run anytime Boiler 1 is called to run and shall have a user definable delay (adj.) on stop.
1. Alarms shall be provided as follows:
 - Circulation Pump 1 Failure: Commanded on, but the status is off.
 - Circulation Pump 1 Running in Hand: Commanded off, but the status is on.
 - Circulation Pump 1 Runtime Exceeded: Status runtime exceeds a user-definable limit.

F. Circulation Pump 2: The Circulation Pump 2 shall run anytime Boiler 2 is called to run and shall have a user definable delay (adj.) on stop.

1. Alarms shall be provided as follows:

- Circulation Pump 2 Failure: Commanded on, but the status is off.
- Circulation Pump 2 Running in Hand: Commanded off, but the status is on.
- Circulation Pump 2 Runtime Exceeded: Status runtime exceeds a user-definable limit.

G. Boiler Lead/Lag Operation:

1. The two boilers shall operate in a lead/lag fashion.

- The lead boiler shall run first.
- On failure of the lead boiler, the lag boiler shall run and the lead boiler shall turn off.
- As hot water temperature drops below a setpoint of 150 F (adj.), the lag boiler shall stage on and run in unison with the lead boiler to maintain hot water temperature setpoint.
- As hot water temperature rises back to 20°F above setpoint, the lag boiler shall stage off.

2. The designated lead boiler shall rotate upon one of the following conditions: (user selectable):

- manually through a software switch
- if boiler runtime (adj.) is exceeded
- daily
- weekly
- monthly

3. Alarms shall be provided as follows:

- Boiler 1
 - Failure: Commanded on, but the status is off.
 - Running in Hand: Commanded off, but the status is on.
 - Runtime Exceeded: Status runtime exceeds a user definable limit.
- Boiler 2
 - Failure: Commanded on, but the status is off.
 - Running in Hand: Commanded off, but the status is on.

- Runtime Exceeded: Status runtime exceeds a user definable limit.
 - Lead Boiler Failure: The lead boiler is in failure and the standby boiler is on.
- H. Hot Water Supply Temperature Setpoint Reset: The hot water supply temperature setpoint shall reset using a trim and respond algorithm based on heating requirements.
1. As the facility's hot water valves open beyond a user definable threshold (90% open, typ.), the setpoint shall reset to a higher value (adj.). Once the hot water coils are satisfied (valves closing) then the setpoint shall gradually lower over time to reduce heating energy user.
 2. Primary Hot Water Temperature Monitoring:
 - a. The following temperatures shall be monitored:
 - Primary hot water supply.
 - Primary hot water return.
 3. Alarms shall be provided as follows:
 - High Primary Hot Water Supply Temp: If greater than 200°F (adj.).
 - Low Primary Hot Water Supply Temp: If less than 100°F (adj.).
- I. Boiler 1 Hot Water Temperature Monitoring:
1. The following temperatures shall be monitored:
 - Boiler 1 hot water supply.
 - Boiler 1 hot water return.
 2. Alarms shall be provided as follows:
 - High Hot Water Supply Temp: If greater than 200°F (adj.).
 - Low Hot Water Supply Temp: If less than 100°F (adj.).
- J. Boiler 2 Hot Water Temperature Monitoring:
1. The following temperatures shall be monitored:
 - Boiler 2 hot water supply.
 - Boiler 2 hot water return.
 2. Alarms shall be provided as follows:

- High Hot Water Supply Temp: If greater than 200°F (adj.).
- Low Hot Water Supply Temp: If less than 100°F (adj.).

	Hardware Points				Software Points						
Point Name	AI	AO	BI	BO	AV	BV	Loop	Sched	Trend	Alarm	Show On Graphic
Boiler 1 Hot Water Return Temp	x								x		x
Boiler 1 Hot Water Supply Temp	x								x		x
Boiler 2 Hot Water Return Temp	x								x		x
Boiler 2 Hot Water Supply Temp	x								x		x
Hot Water Differential Pressure	x								x		x
Primary Hot Water Return Temp	x								x		x
Primary Hot Water Supply Temp	x								x		x
Boiler 1 Hot Water Supply Temp Setpoint Reset		x							x		x
Boiler 2 Hot Water Supply Temp Setpoint Reset		x							x		x
Hot Water Pump 1 VFD Speed		x							x		x
Hot Water Pump 2 VFD Speed		x							x		x
Boiler 1 Alarm Status			x						x	x	x
Boiler 1 Low Water Level			x						x	x	x
Boiler 1 Status			x						x		x
Boiler 2 Alarm Status			x						x	x	x
Boiler 2 Low Water Level			x						x	x	x
Boiler 2 Status			x						x		
Circulation Pump 1 Status			x						x		x
Circulation Pump 2 Status			x						x		x

	Hardware Points				Software Points						
Point Name	AI	AO	BI	BO	AV	BV	Loop	Sched	Trend	Alarm	Show On Graphic
Hot Water Pump 1 Status			x						x		x
Hot Water Pump 1 VFD Fault			x							x	x
Hot Water Pump 2 Status			x						x		x
Hot Water Pump 2 VFD Fault			x							x	x
Boiler 1 Enable				x							x
Boiler 2 Enable				x							x
Circulation Pump 1 Start/Stop				x					x		x
Circulation Pump 2 Start/Stop				x					x		x
Hot Water Pump 1 Start/Stop				x							x
Hot Water Pump 2 Start/Stop				x							x
Hot Water Differential Pressure Setpoint					x				x		x
Outside Air Temp					x						x
Boiler 1 Failure										x	
Boiler 1 High Hot Water Supply Temp										x	
Boiler 1 Low Hot Water Supply Temp										x	
Boiler 1 Running in Hand										x	
Boiler 1 Runtime Exceeded										x	
Boiler 2 Failure										x	
Boiler 2 High Hot Water Supply Temp										x	
Boiler 2 Low Hot Water Supply Temp										x	
Boiler 2 Running in Hand										x	
Boiler 2 Runtime Exceeded										x	
Circulation Pump 1 Failure										x	
Circulation Pump 1 Running in Hand										x	

	Hardware Points				Software Points						
Point Name	AI	AO	BI	BO	AV	BV	Loop	Sched	Trend	Alarm	Show On Graphic
Circulation Pump 1 Runtime Exceeded										x	
Circulation Pump 2 Failure										x	
Circulation Pump 2 Running in Hand										x	
Circulation Pump 2 Runtime Exceeded										x	
High Hot Water Differential Pressure										x	
High Primary Hot Water Supply Temp										x	
Hot Water Pump 1 Failure										x	
Hot Water Pump 1 Running in Hand										x	
Hot Water Pump 1 Runtime Exceeded										x	
Hot Water Pump 2 Failure										x	
Hot Water Pump 2 Running in Hand										x	
Hot Water Pump 2 Runtime Exceeded										x	
Lead Boiler Failure										x	x
Low Hot Water Differential Pressure										x	
Low Primary Hot Water Supply Temp										x	
Totals	7	4	12	6	2	0	0	0	24	33	31

Total Hardware (29)

Total Software (59)

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 232113 - HYDRONIC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes pipe and fitting materials, joining methods, special-duty valves, and specialties for the following:
 - 1. Hot-water heating piping.
 - 2. Chilled-water piping.
 - 3. Condenser-water piping.
 - 4. Makeup-water piping.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Hydronic piping components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure and temperature:
 - 1. Hot-Water Heating Piping: 150 psig at 200 deg F.
 - 2. Chilled-Water Piping: 150 psig at 45deg F.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following:
 - 1. Pressure-seal fittings.
 - 2. Valves. Include flow and pressure drop curves based on manufacturer's testing for calibrated-orifice balancing valves and automatic flow-control valves.
 - 3. Air control devices.
 - 4. Hydronic specialties.
- B. Shop Drawings: Detail, at 1/4 scale, the piping layout, fabrication of pipe anchors, hangers, supports for multiple pipes, alignment guides, expansion joints and loops, and attachments of the same to the building structure. Detail location of anchors, alignment guides, and expansion joints and loops.
- C. Welding certificates.

- D. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- E. Field quality-control test reports.
- F. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air control devices, hydronic specialties, and special-duty valves to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
- G. Water Analysis: Submit a copy of the water analysis to illustrate water quality available at Project site.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications:
 - 1. Installers of Pressure-Sealed Joints: Installers shall be certified by the pressure-seal joint manufacturer as having been trained and qualified to join piping with pressure-seal pipe couplings and fittings.
 - 2. Fiberglass Pipe and Fitting Installers: Installers of RTRF and RTRP shall be certified by the manufacturer of pipes and fittings as having been trained and qualified to join fiberglass piping with manufacturer-recommended adhesive.
- B. Steel Support Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- C. Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.
 - 1. Comply with provisions in ASME B31 Series, "Code for Pressure Piping."
 - 2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.
- D. ASME Compliance: Comply with ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," for materials, products, and installation. Safety valves and pressure vessels shall bear the appropriate ASME label. Fabricate and stamp air separators and expansion tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 01.

1.6 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Differential Pressure Meter: For each type of balancing valve and automatic flow control valve, include flowmeter, probes, hoses, flow charts, and carrying case.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel with plain ends; type, grade, and wall thickness as indicated in Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article.
- B. Cast-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4; Classes 125 and 250 as indicated in Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article.
- C. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Classes 150 and 300 as indicated in Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article.
- D. Malleable-Iron Unions: ASME B16.39; Classes 150, 250, and 300 as indicated in Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article.
- E. Cast-Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.1, Classes 25, 125, and 250; raised ground face, and bolt holes spot faced as indicated in Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article.
- F. Wrought-Steel Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M, wall thickness to match adjoining pipe.
- G. Wrought Cast- and Forged-Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets of the following material group, end connections, and facings:
 - 1. Material Group: 1.1.
 - 2. End Connections: Butt welding.
 - 3. Facings: Raised face.
- H. Grooved Mechanical-Joint Fittings and Couplings:
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Anvil International, Inc.
 - b. Central Sprinkler Company; a division of Tyco Fire & Building Products.
 - c. National Fittings, Inc.
 - d. S. P. Fittings; a division of Star Pipe Products.
 - e. Victaulic Company of America.
 - 2. Joint Fittings: ASTM A 536, Grade 65-45-12 ductile iron; ASTM A 47/A 47M, Grade 32510 malleable iron; ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type F, E, or S, Grade B fabricated steel; or ASTM A 106, Grade B steel fittings with grooves or shoulders constructed to accept grooved-end couplings; with nuts, bolts, locking pin, locking toggle, or lugs to secure grooved pipe and fittings.
 - 3. Couplings: Ductile- or malleable-iron housing and synthetic rubber gasket of central cavity pressure-responsive design; with nuts, bolts, locking pin, locking toggle, or lugs to secure grooved pipe and fittings.

- I. Steel Pressure-Seal Fittings:
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Victaulic Company of America.
 - 2. Housing: Steel.
 - 3. O-Rings and Pipe Stop: EPDM.
 - 4. Tools: Manufacturer's special tool.
 - 5. Minimum 300-psig working-pressure rating at 230 deg F.
- J. Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of same materials and wall thicknesses as pipe in which they are installed.

2.2 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
 - 1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
 - a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
 - b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
- B. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
- E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for joining copper with copper; or BAg-1, silver alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.
- F. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
- G. Gasket Material: Thickness, material, and type suitable for fluid to be handled and working temperatures and pressures.

2.3 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. Description: Combination fitting of copper-alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, solder-joint, plain, or weld-neck end connections that match piping system materials.

- B. Insulating Material: Suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.
- C. Dielectric Unions:
 - 1. Factory-fabricated union assembly, for 250-psig minimum working pressure at 180 deg F.
- D. Dielectric Flanges:
 - 1. Factory-fabricated companion-flange assembly, for 150- or 300-psig minimum working pressure as required to suit system pressures.
- E. Dielectric-Flange Kits:
 - 1. Companion-flange assembly for field assembly. Include flanges, full-face- or ring-type neoprene or phenolic gasket, phenolic or polyethylene bolt sleeves, phenolic washers, and steel backing washers.
 - 2. Separate companion flanges and steel bolts and nuts shall have 150- or 300-psig minimum working pressure where required to suit system pressures.
- F. Dielectric Couplings:
 - 1. Galvanized-steel coupling with inert and noncorrosive thermoplastic lining; threaded ends; and 300-psig minimum working pressure at 225 deg F.
- G. Dielectric Nipples:
 - 1. Electroplated steel nipple with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; plain, threaded, or grooved ends; and 300-psig minimum working pressure at 225 deg F.

2.4 VALVES

- A. Gate, Globe, Check, Ball, and Butterfly Valves: Comply with requirements specified in Division 15 Section "Valves."
- B. Bronze, Calibrated-Orifice, Balancing Valves:
 - 1. Body: Bronze, ball or plug type with calibrated orifice or venturi.
 - 2. Ball: Brass or stainless steel.
 - 3. Plug: Resin.
 - 4. Seat: PTFE.
 - 5. End Connections: Threaded or socket.
 - 6. Pressure Gage Connections: Integral seals for portable differential pressure meter.
 - 7. Handle Style: Lever, with memory stop to retain set position.
 - 8. CWP Rating: Minimum 125 psig.
 - 9. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

C. Cast-Iron or Steel, Calibrated-Orifice, Balancing Valves:

1. Body: Cast-iron or steel body, ball, plug, or globe pattern with calibrated orifice or venturi.
2. Ball: Brass or stainless steel.
3. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
4. Disc: Glass and carbon-filled PTFE.
5. Seat: PTFE.
6. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.
7. Pressure Gage Connections: Integral seals for portable differential pressure meter.
8. Handle Style: Lever, with memory stop to retain set position.
9. CWP Rating: Minimum 125 psig.
10. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

D. Diaphragm-Operated, Pressure-Reducing Valves:

1. Body: Bronze or brass.
2. Disc: Glass and carbon-filled PTFE.
3. Seat: Brass.
4. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
5. Diaphragm: EPT.
6. Low inlet-pressure check valve.
7. Inlet Strainer: Removable without system shutdown.
8. Valve Seat and Stem: Noncorrosive.
9. Valve Size, Capacity, and Operating Pressure: Selected to suit system in which installed, with operating pressure and capacity factory set and field adjustable.

E. Diaphragm-Operated Safety Valves:

1. Body: Bronze or brass.
2. Disc: Glass and carbon-filled PTFE.
3. Seat: Brass.
4. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
5. Diaphragm: EPT.
6. Wetted, Internal Work Parts: Brass and rubber.
7. Inlet Strainer: Removable without system shutdown.
8. Valve Seat and Stem: Noncorrosive.
9. Valve Size, Capacity, and Operating Pressure: Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IV, and selected to suit system in which installed, with operating pressure and capacity factory set and field adjustable.

F. Automatic Flow-Control Valves:

1. Body: Brass or ferrous metal.
2. Piston and Spring Assembly: Stainless steel, tamper proof, self cleaning, and removable.

3. Combination Assemblies: Include bonze or brass-alloy ball valve.
4. Identification Tag: Marked with zone identification, valve number, and flow rate.
5. Size: Same as pipe in which installed.
6. Performance: Maintain constant flow, plus or minus 5 percent over system pressure fluctuations.
7. Minimum CWP Rating: 175 psig.
8. Maximum Operating Temperature: 200 deg F.

2.5 AIR CONTROL DEVICES

A. Manual Air Vents:

1. Body: Bronze.
2. Internal Parts: Nonferrous.
3. Operator: Screwdriver or thumbscrew.
4. Inlet Connection: NPS 1/2.
5. Discharge Connection: NPS 1/8.
6. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 225 deg F.

B. Automatic Air Vents:

1. Body: Bronze or cast iron.
2. Internal Parts: Nonferrous.
3. Operator: Noncorrosive metal float.
4. Inlet Connection: NPS 1/2.
5. Discharge Connection: NPS 1/4.
6. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

2.6 HYDRONIC PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Y-Pattern Strainers:

1. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B, cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
3. Strainer Screen: 40-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.
4. CWP Rating: 125 psig.

B. Basket Strainers:

1. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B, high-tensile cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.

2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
 3. Strainer Screen: 40-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.
 4. CWP Rating: 125 psig.
- C. T-Pattern Strainers:
1. Body: Ductile or malleable iron with removable access coupling and end cap for strainer maintenance.
 2. End Connections: Grooved ends.
 3. Strainer Screen: 40-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 57 percent free area.
 4. CWP Rating: 750 psig.
- D. Stainless-Steel Bellow, Flexible Connectors:
1. Body: Stainless-steel bellows with woven, flexible, bronze, wire-reinforcing protective jacket.
 2. End Connections: Threaded or flanged to match equipment connected.
 3. Performance: Capable of 3/4-inch misalignment.
 4. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
 5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.
- E. Spherical, Rubber, Flexible Connectors:
1. Body: Fiber-reinforced rubber body.
 2. End Connections: Steel flanges drilled to align with Classes 150 and 300 steel flanges.
 3. Performance: Capable of misalignment.
 4. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
 5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Hot-water heating piping, aboveground, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be any of the following:
1. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and brazed joints.
 2. Schedule 40 steel pipe; Class 125, cast-iron fittings; cast-iron flanges and flange fittings; and threaded joints.
- B. Hot-water heating piping, aboveground, NPS 2-1/2 and larger, shall be any of the following:

1. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and brazed joints.
 2. Schedule 40 steel pipe, wrought-steel fittings and wrought-cast or forged-steel flanges and flange fittings, and welded and flanged joints.
 3. Schedule 40 steel pipe; grooved, mechanical joint coupling and fittings; and grooved, mechanical joints.
- C. Chilled-water piping, aboveground, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be any of the following:
1. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and brazed joints.
 2. Schedule 40 steel pipe; Class 125, cast-iron fittings; cast-iron flanges and flange fittings; and threaded joints.
- D. Chilled-water piping, aboveground, NPS 2-1/2 and larger, shall be any of the following:
1. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and brazed joints.
 2. Schedule 40 steel pipe, wrought-steel fittings and wrought-cast or forged-steel flanges and flange fittings, and welded and flanged joints.
 3. Schedule 40 steel pipe; grooved, mechanical joint coupling and fittings; and grooved, mechanical joints.
- E. Condenser-water piping, aboveground, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be any of the following:
1. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and brazed joints.
 2. Schedule 40 steel pipe; Class 125, cast-iron fittings; cast-iron flanges and flange fittings; and threaded joints.
- F. Condenser-water piping, aboveground, NPS 2-1/2 and larger, shall be any of the following:
1. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and brazed joints.
 2. Schedule 40 steel pipe, wrought-steel fittings and wrought-cast or forged-steel flanges and flange fittings, and welded and flanged joints.
 3. Schedule 40 steel pipe; grooved, mechanical joint coupling and fittings; and grooved, mechanical joints.
- G. Makeup-water piping installed aboveground shall be the following:
1. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and brazed joints.
- H. Air-Vent Piping:
1. Inlet: Same as service where installed with metal-to-plastic transition fittings for plastic piping systems according to the piping manufacturer's written instructions.
 2. Outlet: Type K, annealed-temper copper tubing with soldered or flared joints.
- I. Safety-Valve-Inlet and -Outlet Piping for Hot-Water Piping: Same materials and joining methods as for piping specified for the service in which safety valve is installed

with metal-to-plastic transition fittings for plastic piping systems according to the piping manufacturer's written instructions.

3.2 VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. Install shutoff-duty valves at each branch connection to supply mains, and at supply connection to each piece of equipment.
- B. Install throttling-duty valves at each branch connection to return main.
- C. Install calibrated-orifice, balancing valves in the return pipe of each heating or cooling terminal.
- D. Install check valves at each pump discharge and elsewhere as required to control flow direction.
- E. Install safety valves at hot-water generators and elsewhere as required by ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Install drip-pan elbow on safety-valve outlet and pipe without valves to the outdoors; and pipe drain to nearest floor drain or as indicated on Drawings. Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1, for installation requirements.
- F. Install pressure-reducing valves at makeup-water connection to regulate system fill pressure.

3.3 PIPING INSTALLATIONS

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicate piping locations and arrangements if such were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- B. Install piping in concealed locations, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- F. Install piping at indicated slopes.

- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- J. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- K. Install groups of pipes parallel to each other, spaced to permit applying insulation and servicing of valves.
- L. Install drains, consisting of a tee fitting, NPS 3/4 ball valve, and short NPS 3/4 threaded nipple with cap, at low points in piping system mains and elsewhere as required for system drainage.
- M. Install piping at a uniform grade of 0.2 percent upward in direction of flow.
- N. Reduce pipe sizes using eccentric reducer fitting installed with level side up.
- O. Install branch connections to mains using mechanically formed tee fittings in main pipe, with the branch connected to the bottom of the main pipe. For up-feed risers, connect the branch to the top of the main pipe.
- P. Install valves according to Division 15 Section "Valves."
- Q. Install unions in piping, NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to valves, at final connections of equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.
- R. Install flanges in piping, NPS 2-1/2 and larger, at final connections of equipment and elsewhere as indicated.
- S. Install strainers on inlet side of each control valve, pressure-reducing valve, solenoid valve, in-line pump, and elsewhere as indicated. Install NPS 3/4 nipple and ball valve in blowdown connection of strainers NPS 2 and larger. Match size of strainer blowoff connection for strainers smaller than NPS 2.

3.4 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Install the following pipe attachments:
 - 1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal piping less than 20 feet long.
 - 2. Adjustable roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal piping 20 feet or longer.
 - 3. Pipe Roller: MSS SP-58, Type 44 for multiple horizontal piping 20 feet or longer, supported on a trapeze.

4. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
 5. Provide copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.
- B. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
1. NPS 3/4: Maximum span, 7 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 2. NPS 1: Maximum span, 7 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 3. NPS 1-1/4: Maximum span, 7 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 4. NPS 1-1/2: Maximum span, 9 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 5. NPS 2: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 6. NPS 2-1/2: Maximum span, 11 feet; minimum rod size, 1/2 inch.
 7. NPS 3: Maximum span, 12 feet; minimum rod size, 1/2 inch.
 8. NPS 3-1/2: Maximum span, 13 feet; minimum rod size, 1/2 inch.
 9. NPS 4: Maximum span, 14 feet; minimum rod size, 5/8 inch.
 10. NPS 5: Maximum span, 16 feet; minimum rod size, 5/8 inch.
 11. NPS 6: Maximum span, 17 feet; minimum rod size, 3/4 inch.
 12. NPS 8: Maximum span, 19 feet; minimum rod size, 3/4 inch.
- C. Install hangers for drawn-temper copper tubing with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
1. NPS 3/4: Maximum span, 5 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 2. NPS 1: Maximum span, 6 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 3. NPS 1-1/4: Maximum span, 7 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 4. NPS 1-1/2: Maximum span, 8 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 5. NPS 2: Maximum span, 8 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 6. NPS 2-1/2: Maximum span, 9 feet; minimum rod size, 1/2 inch.
 7. NPS 3: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 1/2 inch.
- D. Support vertical runs at roof, at each floor, and at 10-foot intervals between floors.

3.5 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and Division 23 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- C. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- D. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.

- E. Braze Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.
- F. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
 - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- G. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12/D10.12M, using qualified processes and welding operators according to Part 1 "Quality Assurance" Article.
- H. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.
- I. Grooved Joints: Assemble joints with coupling and gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Cut or roll grooves in ends of pipe based on pipe and coupling manufacturer's written instructions for pipe wall thickness. Use grooved-end fittings and rigid, grooved-end-pipe couplings.
- J. Mechanically Formed, Copper-Tube-Outlet Joints: Use manufacturer-recommended tool and procedure, and brazed joints.
- K. Pressure-Sealed Joints: Use manufacturer-recommended tool and procedure. Leave insertion marks on pipe after assembly.

3.6 HYDRONIC SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION

- A. Install manual air vents at high points in piping, at heat-transfer coils, and elsewhere as required for system air venting.
- B. Install automatic air vents at high points of system piping in mechanical equipment rooms only. Manual vents at heat-transfer coils and elsewhere as required for air venting.

3.7 TERMINAL EQUIPMENT CONNECTIONS

- A. Sizes for supply and return piping connections shall be the same as or larger than equipment connections.
- B. Install control valves in accessible locations close to connected equipment.

- C. Install bypass piping with globe valve around control valve. If parallel control valves are installed, only one bypass is required.
- D. Install ports for pressure gages and thermometers at coil inlet and outlet connections.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Prepare hydronic piping according to ASME B31.9 and as follows:
 - 1. Leave joints, including welds, uninsulated and exposed for examination during test.
 - 2. Provide temporary restraints for expansion joints that cannot sustain reactions due to test pressure. If temporary restraints are impractical, isolate expansion joints from testing.
 - 3. Flush hydronic piping systems with clean water; then remove and clean or replace strainer screens.
 - 4. Isolate equipment from piping. If a valve is used to isolate equipment, its closure shall be capable of sealing against test pressure without damage to valve. Install blinds in flanged joints to isolate equipment.
 - 5. Install safety valve, set at a pressure no more than one-third higher than test pressure, to protect against damage by expanding liquid or other source of overpressure during test.
- B. Perform the following tests on hydronic piping:
 - 1. Use ambient temperature water as a testing medium unless there is risk of damage due to freezing. Another liquid that is safe for workers and compatible with piping may be used.
 - 2. While filling system, use vents installed at high points of system to release air. Use drains installed at low points for complete draining of test liquid.
 - 3. Isolate expansion tanks and determine that hydronic system is full of water.
 - 4. Subject piping system to hydrostatic test pressure that is not less than 1.5 times the system's working pressure. Test pressure shall not exceed maximum pressure for any vessel, pump, valve, or other component in system under test. Verify that stress due to pressure at bottom of vertical runs does not exceed 90 percent of specified minimum yield strength or 1.7 times "SE" value in Appendix A in ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping."
 - 5. After hydrostatic test pressure has been applied for at least 10 minutes, examine piping, joints, and connections for leakage. Eliminate leaks by tightening, repairing, or replacing components, and repeat hydrostatic test until there are no leaks.
 - 6. Prepare written report of testing.
- C. Perform the following before operating the system:
 - 1. Open manual valves fully.

2. Inspect pumps for proper rotation.
3. Set makeup pressure-reducing valves for required system pressure.
4. Inspect air vents at high points of system and determine if all are installed and operating freely (automatic type), or bleed air completely (manual type).
5. Set temperature controls so all coils are calling for full flow.
6. Inspect and set operating temperatures of hydronic equipment, such as boilers, chillers, cooling towers, to specified values.
7. Verify lubrication of motors and bearings.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 232116 - HYDRONIC PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Hydronic specialty valves.
 - 2. Air-control devices.
 - 3. Strainers.
 - 4. Connectors.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product:
 - 1. Include construction details and material descriptions for hydronic piping specialties.
 - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
 - 3. Include flow and pressure drop curves based on manufacturer's testing for calibrated-orifice balancing valves and automatic flow-control valves.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For hydronic piping specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Differential Pressure Meter: For each type of balancing valve and automatic flow control valve, include flowmeter, probes, hoses, flow charts, and carrying case.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Pipe Welding: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.
- B. Safety Valves and Pressure Vessels: Shall bear the appropriate ASME label. Fabricate and stamp air separators and expansion tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 HYDRONIC SPECIALTY VALVES

- A. Plastic Butterfly Valves:
 - 1. Body: PVC or CPVC to match piping wafer type for installation between flanges.
 - 2. Disc: EPDM-coated steel.
 - 3. Seats: PTFE.
 - 4. Handle Style: Locking lever.
 - 5. CWP Rating: Equal to piping service.
 - 6. Maximum Operating Temperature: Equal to piping service.
- B. Bronze, Calibrated-Orifice, Balancing Valves:
 - 1. Body: Bronze, ball or plug type with calibrated orifice or venturi.
 - 2. Ball: Brass or stainless steel.
 - 3. Plug: Resin.
 - 4. Seat: PTFE.
 - 5. End Connections: Threaded or socket.
 - 6. Pressure Gage Connections: Integral seals for portable differential pressure meter.
 - 7. Handle Style: Lever, with memory stop to retain set position.
 - 8. CWP Rating: Minimum 125 psig.
 - 9. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.
- C. Cast-Iron or Steel, Calibrated-Orifice, Balancing Valves:
 - 1. Body: Cast-iron or steel body, ball, plug, or globe pattern with calibrated orifice or venturi.
 - 2. Ball: Brass or stainless steel.
 - 3. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
 - 4. Disc: Glass and carbon-filled PTFE.
 - 5. Seat: PTFE.
 - 6. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.
 - 7. Pressure Gage Connections: Integral seals for portable differential pressure meter.
 - 8. Handle Style: Lever, with memory stop to retain set position.
 - 9. CWP Rating: Minimum 125 psig.

10. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.
- D. Diaphragm-Operated, Pressure-Reducing Valves: ASME labeled.
1. Body: Bronze or brass.
 2. Disc: Glass and carbon-filled PTFE.
 3. Seat: Brass.
 4. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
 5. Diaphragm: EPT.
 6. Low inlet-pressure check valve.
 7. Inlet Strainer: , removable without system shutdown.
 8. Valve Seat and Stem: Noncorrosive.
 9. Valve Size, Capacity, and Operating Pressure: Selected to suit system in which installed, with operating pressure and capacity factory set and field adjustable.
- E. Diaphragm-Operated Safety Valves: ASME labeled.
1. Body: Bronze or brass.
 2. Disc: Glass and carbon-filled PTFE.
 3. Seat: Brass.
 4. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
 5. Diaphragm: EPT.
 6. Wetted, Internal Work Parts: Brass and rubber.
 7. Inlet Strainer: , removable without system shutdown.
 8. Valve Seat and Stem: Noncorrosive.
 9. Valve Size, Capacity, and Operating Pressure: Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IV, and selected to suit system in which installed, with operating pressure and capacity factory set and field adjustable.
- F. Automatic Flow-Control Valves:
1. Body: Brass or ferrous metal.
 2. Flow Control Assembly, provide either of the following:
 - a. Piston and Spring Assembly: Stainless steel, tamper proof, self-cleaning, and removable.
 - b. Elastomeric Diaphragm and Polyphenylsulfone Orifice Plate: Operating ranges within 2- to 80-psig differential pressure.
 3. Combination Assemblies: Include bronze or brass-alloy ball valve.
 4. Identification Tag: Marked with zone identification, valve number, and flow rate.
 5. Size: Same as pipe in which installed.
 6. Performance: Maintain constant flow within plus or minus 10 percent, regardless of system pressure fluctuations.
 7. Minimum CWP Rating: 175 psig.
 8. Maximum Operating Temperature: 200 deg F.

2.2 AIR-CONTROL DEVICES

A. Manual Air Vents:

1. Body: Bronze.
2. Internal Parts: Nonferrous.
3. Operator: Screwdriver or thumbscrew.
4. Inlet Connection: NPS 1/2.
5. Discharge Connection: NPS 1/8.
6. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 225 deg F.

B. Automatic Air Vents:

1. Body: Bronze or cast iron.
2. Internal Parts: Nonferrous.
3. Operator: Noncorrosive metal float.
4. Inlet Connection: NPS 1/2.
5. Discharge Connection: NPS 1/4.
6. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

C. Expansion Tanks:

1. Tank: Welded steel, rated for 125-psig working pressure and 375 deg F maximum operating temperature, with taps in bottom of tank for tank fitting and taps in end of tank for gage glass. Tanks shall be factory tested after taps are fabricated and shall be labeled according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
2. Air-Control Tank Fitting: Cast-iron body, copper-plated tube, brass vent tube plug, and stainless-steel ball check, 100-gal. unit only; sized for compression-tank diameter. Provide tank fittings for 125-psig working pressure and 250 deg F maximum operating temperature.
3. Tank Drain Fitting: Brass body, nonferrous internal parts; 125-psig working pressure and 240 deg F maximum operating temperature; constructed to admit air to compression tank, drain water, and close off system.
4. Gage Glass: Full height with dual manual shutoff valves, 3/4-inch-diameter gage glass, and slotted-metal glass guard.

D. Diaphragm Bladder-Type ASME Expansion Tanks:

1. Tank: Welded steel, rated for 125-psig working pressure and 375 deg F maximum operating temperature. Factory test after taps are fabricated and supports installed and are labeled according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
2. Diaphragm Bladder: Securely sealed into tank to separate air charge from system water to maintain required expansion capacity.

3. Air-Charge Fittings: Schrader valve, stainless steel with EPDM seats.
- E. Diaphragm-Type Non-ASME Expansion Tanks:
 1. Tank: Carbon steel, rated for minimum 100-psig working pressure at minimum 200 deg F maximum operating temperature. Non-ASME construction.
 2. Diaphragm: Securely sealed into tank to separate air charge from system water to maintain required expansion capacity.
- F. Air-Charge Fittings: Schrader valve, stainless steel with EPDM seats.
- G. Tangential-Type Air Separators:
 1. Tank: Welded steel; ASME constructed and labeled for 125-psig minimum working pressure and 375 deg F maximum operating temperature.
 2. Air Collector Tube: Perforated stainless steel, constructed to direct released air into expansion tank.
 3. Tangential Inlet and Outlet Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged connections for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
 4. Blowdown Connection: Threaded.
 5. Size: Match system flow capacity.
- H. In-Line Air Separators:
 1. Tank: One-piece cast iron with an integral weir constructed to decelerate system flow to maximize air separation.
 2. Maximum Working Pressure: Up to 175 psig.
 3. Maximum Operating Temperature: Up to 300 deg F.
- I. Air Purgers:
 1. Body: Cast iron with internal baffles that slow the water velocity to separate the air from solution and divert it to the vent for quick removal.
 2. Maximum Working Pressure: 150 psig.
 3. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

2.3 STRAINERS

- A. Y-Pattern Strainers:
 1. Body: ASTM A126, Class B, cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
 2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
 3. Strainer Screen: Stainless-steel, 20-mesh strainer, or perforated stainless-steel basket.
 4. CWP Rating: 125 psig.

B. Basket Strainers:

1. Body: ASTM A126, Class B, high-tensile cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
3. Strainer Screen: 40-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.
4. CWP Rating: 125 psig.

C. T-Pattern Strainers:

1. Body: Ductile or malleable iron with removable access coupling and end cap for strainer maintenance.
2. End Connections: Grooved ends.
3. Strainer Screen: 40-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 57 percent free area.
4. CWP Rating: 750 psig.

2.4 CONNECTORS

A. Stainless-Steel Bellow, Flexible Connectors:

1. Body: Stainless-steel bellows with woven, flexible, bronze, wire-reinforcing protective jacket.
2. End Connections: Threaded or flanged to match equipment connected.
3. Performance: Capable of 3/4-inch misalignment.
4. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

B. Spherical, Rubber, Flexible Connectors:

1. Body: Fiber-reinforced rubber body.
2. End Connections: Steel flanges drilled to align with Classes 150 and 300 steel flanges.
3. Performance: Capable of misalignment.
4. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A.** Install shutoff-duty valves at each branch connection to supply mains and at supply connection to each piece of equipment.

- B. Install throttling-duty valves at each branch connection to return main.
- C. Install calibrated-orifice, balancing valves in the return pipe of each heating or cooling terminal.
- D. Install check valves at each pump discharge and elsewhere as required to control flow direction.
- E. Install safety valves at hot-water generators and elsewhere as required by ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Install drip-pan elbow on safety-valve outlet and pipe without valves to the outdoors; pipe drain to nearest floor drain or as indicated on Drawings. Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1, for installation requirements.
- F. Install pressure-reducing valves at makeup-water connection to regulate system fill pressure.

3.2 HYDRONIC SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION

- A. Install manual air vents at high points in piping, at heat-transfer coils, and elsewhere as required for system air venting.
- B. Install automatic air vents at high points of system piping in mechanical equipment rooms only. Install manual vents at heat-transfer coils and elsewhere as required for air venting.
- C. Install piping from boiler air outlet, air separator, or air purger to expansion tank with a 2 percent upward slope toward tank.
- D. Install in-line air separators in pump suction. Install drain valve on air separators NPS 2 and larger.
- E. Install tangential air separator in pump suction. Install blowdown piping with gate or full-port ball valve; extend full size to nearest floor drain.
- F. Install expansion tanks above the air separator. Install tank fitting in tank bottom and charge tank. Use manual vent for initial fill to establish proper water level in tank.
 - 1. Install tank fittings that are shipped loose.
 - 2. Support tank from floor or structure above with sufficient strength to carry weight of tank, piping connections, fittings, plus tank full of water. Do not overload building components and structural members.
- G. Install expansion tanks on the floor. Vent and purge air from hydronic system, and ensure that tank is properly charged with air to suit system Project requirements.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 232123 - HYDRONIC PUMPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Close-coupled, in-line centrifugal pumps.
 - 2. Close-coupled, end-suction centrifugal pumps.
 - 3. Separately coupled, horizontally mounted, in-line centrifugal pumps.
 - 4. Separately coupled, vertically mounted, in-line centrifugal pumps.
 - 5. Separately coupled, base-mounted, end-suction centrifugal pumps.
 - 6. Separately coupled, base-mounted, double-suction centrifugal pumps.
 - 7. Separately coupled, vertically mounted, double-suction centrifugal pumps.
 - 8. Separately coupled, vertically mounted, turbine centrifugal pumps.
 - 9. Wet-rotor pumps.
 - 10. Automatic condensate pump units.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ECM: Electronically commutated motor.
- B. EPDM: Ethylene propylene diene monomer.
- C. EPR: Ethylene propylene rubber.
- D. FKM: Fluoroelastomer polymer.
- E. HI: Hydraulic Institute.
- F. NBR: Nitrile rubber or Buna-N.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of pump.

1. Include certified performance curves and rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, final impeller dimensions, and accessories for each type of product indicated.
 2. Indicate pump's operating point on curves.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each pump.
1. Show pump layout and connections.
 2. Include setting drawings with templates for installing foundation and anchor bolts and other anchorages.
 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans, or BIM model, drawn to scale, showing the items described in this Section, and coordinated with all building trades.
1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For pumps to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
1. Mechanical Seals: One mechanical seal(s) for each pump.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.2 CLOSE-COUPLED, IN-LINE CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain pumps from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, centrifugal, overhung-impeller, close-coupled, in-line pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3; designed for installation with pump and motor shafts mounted horizontally or vertically.
- C. Pump Construction:
 - 1. Casing: Radially split, cast iron, with threaded gauge tapings at inlet and outlet, replaceable bronze wear rings, and threaded companion-flange connections.
 - 2. Impeller: ASTM B584, cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced, keyed to shaft, and secured with a locking cap screw. For constant-speed pumps, trim impeller to match specified performance.
 - 3. Pump Shaft Sleeve: Bronze.
 - 4. Pump Stub Shaft: Type 304 stainless steel.
 - 5. Seal: Mechanical seal consisting of carbon rotating ring against a ceramic seat held by a stainless steel spring, and NBR rubber bellows and gasket. Include water slinger on shaft between motor and seal.
 - 6. Seal Flushing: Flush, cool, and lubricate pump seal by directing pump discharge water to flow over the seal.
- D. Shaft Coupling: Rigid, axially-split spacer coupling to allow service of pump seal without disturbing pump or motor.
- E. Motor: Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
 - 1. Enclosure : Totally enclosed, fan cooled.
 - 2. NEMA Premium Efficient motors as defined in NEMA MG 1.
 - 3. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
 - 4. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in electrical Sections.
 - 5. Variable-speed motor.
 - 6. Provide integral pump motor variable-speed controller.

2.3 CLOSE-COUPLED, END-SUCTION CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain pumps from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, centrifugal, overhung-impeller, close-coupled, end-suction pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3; designed for installation with pump and motor shafts mounted horizontally.
- C. Pump Construction:
 - 1. Casing: Radially split, cast iron, with replaceable bronze wear rings, drain plug at bottom and air vent at top of volute, threaded gauge tappings at inlet and outlet, and threaded companion-flange connections.
 - 2. Impeller: ASTM B584, cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced, keyed to shaft, and secured with a locking cap screw. For constant-speed pumps, trim impeller to match specified performance.
 - 3. Pump Shaft Sleeve: Bronze.
 - 4. Pump Stub Shaft: Type 304 stainless steel.
 - 5. Seal: Mechanical seal consisting of carbon rotating ring against a ceramic seat held by a stainless steel spring, and NBR bellows and gasket. Include water slinger on shaft between motor and seal.
- D. Motor: Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
 - 1. Enclosure: Totally enclosed, fan cooled.
 - 2. NEMA Premium Efficient motors as defined in NEMA MG 1.
 - 3. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
 - 4. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in electrical Sections.
 - 5. Variable-speed motor.
 - 6. Provide integral pump motor variable-speed controller.

2.4 SEPARATELY COUPLED, HORIZONTALLY MOUNTED, IN-LINE CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain pumps from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, centrifugal, overhung-impeller, separately coupled, in-line pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3; designed for installation with pump and motor shafts mounted horizontally.
- C. Pump Construction:

1. Casing: Radially split, cast iron, with threaded gauge tappings at inlet and outlet, and threaded companion-flange connections.
 2. Impeller: ASTM B584, cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced, and keyed to shaft. For pumps that are not frequency-drive controlled, trim impeller to match specified performance.
 3. Pump Shaft: Type 304 stainless steel.
 4. Seal: Mechanical seal consisting of carbon rotating ring against a ceramic seat held by a stainless steel spring, and NBR bellows and gasket.
 5. Pump Bearings: Permanently lubricated ball bearings.
- D. Shaft Coupling: Molded-rubber insert with interlocking spider capable of absorbing vibration.
- E. Motor: Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
1. Enclosure Type: Totally enclosed, fan cooled.
 2. NEMA Premium Efficient motors as defined in NEMA MG 1.
 3. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
 4. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in electrical Sections.
 5. Variable-speed motor.
 6. Provide integral pump motor variable-speed controller.

2.5 SEPARATELY COUPLED, VERTICALLY MOUNTED, IN-LINE CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain pumps from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, centrifugal, overhung-impeller, separately coupled, in-line pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3; designed for installation with pump and motor shafts mounted vertically.
- C. Pump Construction:
1. Casing: Radially split, cast iron, with threaded gauge tappings at inlet and outlet, replaceable bronze wear rings, and threaded companion-flange connections.
 2. Impeller: ASTM B584, cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced, keyed to shaft, and secured with a locking cap screw. For pumps that are not frequency-drive controlled, trim impeller to match specified performance.
 3. Pump Shaft: Type 304 stainless steel.
 4. Seal: Mechanical seal consisting of carbon rotating ring against a ceramic seat held by a stainless steel spring, and NBR bellows and gasket.

- D. Shaft Coupling: Molded-rubber insert with interlocking spider capable of absorbing vibration.
- E. Motor: Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
 - 1. Enclosure: Totally enclosed, fan cooled.
 - 2. NEMA Premium Efficient motors as defined in NEMA MG 1.
 - 3. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
 - 4. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in electrical Sections.
 - 5. Variable-speed motor.
 - 6. Provide integral pump motor variable-speed controller.

2.6 SEPARATELY COUPLED, BASE-MOUNTED, END-SUCTION CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain pumps from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, centrifugal, overhung-impeller, separately coupled, end-suction pump with flexible shaft coupling as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3; designed for base mounting, with pump and motor shafts horizontal.
- C. Pump Construction:
 - 1. Casing: Radially split, cast iron, with replaceable bronze wear rings, threaded gauge tappings at inlet and outlet, drain plug at bottom and air vent at top of volute, and threaded companion-flange connections.
 - 2. Impeller: ASTM B584, cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced, keyed to shaft, and secured with a locking cap screw. For pumps that are not frequency-drive controlled, trim impeller to match specified performance.
 - 3. Pump Shaft: Type 304 stainless steel.
 - 4. Seal, Mechanical Type: Mechanical seal consisting of carbon rotating ring against a ceramic seat held by a stainless steel spring, and NBR bellows and gasket.
 - 5. Seal, Packing Type: Packing seal consisting of stuffing box with a minimum of four rings of graphite-impregnated braided yarn with bronze lantern ring between center two graphite rings, and bronze packing gland.
 - 6. Pump Bearings: Grease-lubricated ball bearings in cast-iron housing with grease fittings.
- D. Shaft Coupling: Molded-rubber insert and interlocking spider capable of absorbing vibration. EPDM coupling sleeve for variable-speed applications.

- E. Coupling Guard: Dual rated; ANSI B15.1, Section 8; OSHA 1910.219 approved; steel; removable; attached to mounting frame.
- F. Mounting Frame: Welded-steel frame and cross members, factory fabricated from ASTM A36/A36M channels and angles. Fabricate to mount pump casing, coupling guard, and motor.
- G. Motor: Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
 - 1. Enclosure: Totally enclosed, fan cooled.
 - 2. NEMA Premium Efficient motors as defined in NEMA MG 1.
 - 3. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
 - 4. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in electrical Sections.
 - 5. Variable-speed motor.
 - 6. Provide integral pump motor variable-speed controller.
 - 7. .

2.7 WET-ROTOR PUMPS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain pumps from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, wet-rotor pump. Pump and motor to form an integral unit with bearings lubricated by the pumped liquid.
- C. Pump Construction:
 - 1. Body: 100 percent lead-free bronze.
 - 2. Impeller: Polypropylene.
 - 3. Pump Shaft: Ceramic.
 - 4. Bearings. Double-sintered carbon.
- D. Motor: Single speed.
 - 1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and use.
 - 2. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
 - a. Efficiency: Premium Efficiency.
 - 3. Integral pump motor variable-speed control.
 - 4. ECM.

2.8 AUTOMATIC CONDENSATE PUMP UNITS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain pump units from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Description: Packaged units with corrosion-resistant pump, aluminum tank with cover, and automatic controls. Collects and removes condensate from fan coil units, air handling units, condensing boilers, and similar components. Include factory- or field-installed check valve and 72-inch-minimum, electrical power cord with plug.

2.9 PUMP SPECIALTY FITTINGS

- A. Suction Diffuser:
 - 1. Angle pattern.
 - 2. 175-psig pressure rating, cast-iron body and end cap, pump-inlet fitting.
 - 3. Bronze 16-mesh wire startup and bronze permanent strainers with 3/16-inch.
 - 4. Bronze straightening vanes.
 - 5. Drain plug.
 - 6. Factory-fabricated support.
- B. Triple-Duty Valve:
 - 1. Angle or straight pattern.
 - 2. 175-psig pressure rating, cast-iron body, pump-discharge fitting.
 - 3. Valve with multi-turn stem and memory stop to allow valve to be returned to its original position after shutoff.
 - 4. Brass valve disc with EPDM rubber seat.
 - 5. Type 304 stainless steel valve stem.
 - 6. Drain plug and bronze-fitted shutoff, balancing, and check valve features.
 - 7. Brass gauge ports with integral check valve and orifice for flow measurement.

2.10 INTEGRAL PUMP MOTOR VARIABLE-SPEED CONTROLLERS

- A. Where specified or scheduled, provide pumps with an integral pump motor speed controller.
 - 1. Motor: Operates as constant- or variable-speed pump with speed regulated by an integrated variable-speed drive.
 - 2. Integrated Pump Controller: Supports direct communication with the building management system (BMS) with built-in support for the following protocols: BACnet.
 - 3. Commissioning and pump set up access to pump controls via the following:
 - a. A web interface (data exchange).
 - b. A user interface located on the face of speed controller to adjust modes and mode values.

- c. An electronic display that reads real-time mode set values, flow, head, speed, and power and that locks out unauthorized adjustment of pump.
- 4. Provide electronics with "Auto" as factory default but slope of the proportional curve will automatically match the required system curve, constant pressure control ($\Delta p/c$), variable differential pressure control ($\Delta p/v$), constant curve duty (uncontrolled pump), and rpm regulation. RPM (speed) regulation can be accomplished by the following:
 - a. Manual (via user interface or HTML).
 - b. Remote via 0 to 10 V dc.
 - c. Data protocol communications with the BMS.
- 5. Pump Electronics: Standard with multiple digital inputs and one external digital output to be available for additional mechanical room control and pump status monitoring.
- 6. Controller: Mounted on or adjacent to the motor. Provide enclosure rated to UL Type 12.
- 7. Electronically Protected Pumps: Rated for continuous duty and with built-in startup circuit. Provide overcurrent, line surge and current limit protection, thermal monitoring, heat sink status and over temperature protection.
- 8. Pump capable of being monitored continuously via integrated Internet link.
- 9. Integrated pump controller system to have the following features:
 - a. Controller software shall be capable of sensorless control in variable-volume systems without need for pump-mounted (internal/external) or remotely mounted differential pressure sensor.
 - b. Integrated Pump Controller Sensorless Control: Operates under Quadratic Pressure Control (QPC) to ensure that head reduction with reducing flow conforms to quadratic control curve.
 - c. Controller:
 - 1) Minimum head of 40 percent of design duty head.
 - 2) User-adjustable control mode settings and minimum/maximum head set points using built-in programming interface.
 - d. Controller Integrated Control Software:
 - 1) Capable of controlling pump performance for non-overloading power at every point of operation.
 - 2) Capable of maintaining flow rate data.

2.11 ELECTRONICALLY COMMUTATED MOTOR (ECM)

- A. Provide pumps so they are specified or scheduled with ECM.

1. Synchronous, constant torque, ECM with permanent magnet rotor. Rotor magnets to be time-stable, nontoxic ceramic magnets (Sr-Fe).
2. Driven by a frequency converter with an integrated power factor correction filter. Conventional induction motors will not be acceptable.
3. Each motor with an integrated variable-frequency drive, tested as one unit by manufacturer.
4. Motor speed adjustable over full range from 0 rpm to maximum scheduled speed.
5. Variable motor speed to be controlled by a 0- to 10 V-dc or 4- to 20-mA input.
6. Integrated motor protection verified by UL to protect the pump against over-/undervoltage, overtemperature of motor and/or electronics, overcurrent, locked rotor, and dry run (no-load condition).

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine equipment foundations and anchor-bolt locations for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before pump installation.
- C. Examine foundations and inertia bases for suitable conditions where pumps will be installed.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PUMP INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with HI 1.4 and HI 2.4.
- B. Install pumps to provide access for periodic maintenance including removing motors, impellers, couplings, and accessories.
- C. Independently support pumps and piping so weight of piping is not supported by pumps and weight of pumps is not supported by piping.
- D. Automatic Condensate Pump Units: Install units for collecting condensate and extend to open drain.
- E. Equipment Mounting:

1. Install base-mounted pumps on cast-in-place concrete equipment bases. Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
 2. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation and seismic-control devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
 3. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."
- F. Equipment Mounting: Install in-line pumps with continuous-thread hanger rods and spring hangers with vertical-limit stop of size required to support weight of in-line pumps.
1. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
 2. Comply with requirements for hangers and supports specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

3.3 ALIGNMENT

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform alignment service.
- B. Perform alignment service. When required by manufacturer to maintain warranty coverage, engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform it.
- C. Comply with requirements in HI standards for alignment of pump and motor shaft. Add shims to the motor feet and bolt motor to base frame. Do not use grout between motor feet and base frame.
- D. Comply with pump and coupling manufacturers' written instructions.
- E. After alignment is correct, tighten foundation bolts evenly but not too firmly. Completely fill baseplate with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout while metal blocks and shims or wedges are in place. After grout has cured, fully tighten foundation bolts.

3.4 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 232213 "Steam and Condensate Heating Piping" and Section 232216 "Steam and Condensate Piping Specialties." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where installing piping adjacent to pump, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Connect piping to pumps. Install valves that are same size as piping connected to pumps.

- D. Install suction and discharge pipe sizes equal to or greater than diameter of pump nozzles.
- E. Install triple-duty valve on discharge side of pumps.
- F. Install Y-type strainer suction diffuser and shutoff valve on suction side of pumps.
 - 1. Use startup strainer for initial system startup. Install permanent strainer element before turnover of system to Owner.
- G. Install flexible connectors on suction and discharge sides of base-mounted pumps between pump casing and valves.
- H. Install pressure gauges on pump suction and discharge or at integral pressure-gauge tapping, or install single gauge with multiple-input selector valve.
- I. Install check valve on each condensate pump unit discharge unless unit has a factory-installed check valve.

3.5 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect wiring in accordance with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Ground equipment in accordance with Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- C. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, in accordance with NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
- D. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.
 - 1. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs, as specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
 - 2. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with a black background and engraved white letters at least 1/2 inch high.

3.6 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Connect control wiring in accordance with Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."

3.7 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Perform startup service.
 - 1. Complete installation and startup checks in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. Check piping connections for tightness.
 - 3. Clean strainers on suction piping. Use startup strainer for initial startup.
 - 4. Perform the following startup checks for each pump before starting:
 - a. Verify bearing lubrication.
 - b. Verify that pump is free to rotate by hand and that pump for handling hot liquid is free to rotate with pump hot and cold. If pump is bound or drags, do not operate until cause of trouble is determined and corrected.
 - c. Verify that pump is rotating in correct direction.
 - 5. Prime pump by opening suction valves and closing drains, and prepare pump for operation.
 - 6. Start motor.
 - 7. Open discharge valve slowly.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Perform tests and inspections.
- D. Hydronic pumps will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.9 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain hydronic pumps.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 232300 - REFRIGERANT PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes refrigerant piping used for air-conditioning applications.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Line Test Pressure for Refrigerant R-410A:
 - 1. Suction Lines for Air-Conditioning Applications: 300 psig.
 - 2. Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: 535 psig.
 - 3. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines: 535 psig.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve and refrigerant piping specialty indicated. Include pressure drop, based on manufacturer's test data, for the following:
 - 1. Thermostatic expansion valves.
 - 2. Solenoid valves.
 - 3. Hot-gas bypass valves.
 - 4. Filter dryers.
 - 5. Strainers.
 - 6. Pressure-regulating valves.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show layout of refrigerant piping and specialties, including pipe, tube, and fitting sizes, flow capacities, valve arrangements and locations, slopes of horizontal runs, oil traps, double risers, wall and floor penetrations, and equipment connection details. Show interface and spatial relationships between piping and equipment.
 - 1. Shop Drawing Scale: 1/4 inch equals 1 foot.
 - 2. Refrigerant piping indicated on Drawings is schematic only. Size piping and design actual piping layout, including oil traps, double risers, specialties, and pipe and tube sizes to accommodate, as a minimum, equipment provided, elevation difference

between compressor and evaporator, and length of piping to ensure proper operation and compliance with warranties of connected equipment.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.
- B. Field quality-control test reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For refrigerant valves and piping specialties to include in maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
- B. Comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Code for Refrigeration Systems."
- C. Comply with ASME B31.5, "Refrigeration Piping and Heat Transfer Components."

1.8 PRODUCT STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Store piping in a clean and protected area with end caps in place to ensure that piping interior and exterior are clean when installed.

1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations. These items are specified in Section 07720 "Roof Accessories."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type K or ASTM B 280, Type ACR.
- B. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.
- C. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.

D. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32. Use 95-5 tin antimony or alloy HB solder to join copper socket fittings on copper pipe.

E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8.

F. Flexible Connectors:

1. Body: Tin-bronze bellows with woven, flexible, tinned-bronze-wire-reinforced protective jacket.
2. End Connections: Socket ends.
3. Offset Performance: Capable of minimum 3/4-inch misalignment in minimum 7-inch-long assembly.
4. Pressure Rating: Factory test at minimum 500 psig.
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

2.2 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel with plain ends; Type, Grade, and wall thickness as selected in Part 3 piping applications articles.

B. Wrought-Steel Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M, for welded joints.

C. Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, steel, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets, bevel-welded end connection, and raised face.

D. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

E. Flanged Unions:

1. Body: Forged-steel flanges for NPS 1 to NPS 1-1/2 and ductile iron for NPS 2 to NPS 3. Apply rust-resistant finish at factory.
2. Gasket: Fiber asbestos free.
3. Fasteners: Four plated-steel bolts, with silicon bronze nuts. Apply rust-resistant finish at factory.
4. End Connections: Brass tailpiece adapters for solder-end connections to copper tubing.
5. Offset Performance: Capable of minimum 3/4-inch misalignment in minimum 7-inch-long assembly.
6. Pressure Rating: Factory test at minimum 400 psig.
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 330 deg F.

F. Flexible Connectors:

1. Body: Stainless-steel bellows with woven, flexible, stainless-steel-wire-reinforced protective jacket
2. End Connections:

- a. NPS 2 and Smaller: With threaded-end connections.
- b. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: With flanged-end connections.
3. Offset Performance: Capable of minimum 3/4-inch misalignment in minimum 7-inch-long assembly.
4. Pressure Rating: Factory test at minimum 500 psig.
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

2.3 VALVES AND SPECIALTIES

A. Diaphragm Packless Valves:

1. Body and Bonnet: Forged brass or cast bronze; globe design with straight-through or angle pattern.
2. Diaphragm: Phosphor bronze and stainless steel with stainless-steel spring.
3. Operator: Rising stem and hand wheel.
4. Seat: Nylon.
5. End Connections: Socket, union, or flanged.
6. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

B. Packed-Angle Valves:

1. Body and Bonnet: Forged brass or cast bronze.
2. Packing: Molded stem, back seating, and replaceable under pressure.
3. Operator: Rising stem.
4. Seat: Nonrotating, self-aligning polytetrafluoroethylene.
5. Seal Cap: Forged-brass or valox hex cap.
6. End Connections: Socket, union, threaded, or flanged.
7. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
8. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

C. Check Valves:

1. Body: Ductile iron, forged brass, or cast bronze; globe pattern.
2. Bonnet: Bolted ductile iron, forged brass, or cast bronze; or brass hex plug.
3. Piston: Removable polytetrafluoroethylene seat.
4. Closing Spring: Stainless steel.
5. Manual Opening Stem: Seal cap, plated-steel stem, and graphite seal.
6. End Connections: Socket, union, threaded, or flanged.
7. Maximum Opening Pressure: 0.50 psig.
8. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
9. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

D. Service Valves:

1. Body: Forged brass with brass cap including key end to remove core.

2. Core: Removable ball-type check valve with stainless-steel spring.
 3. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
 4. End Connections: Copper spring.
 5. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
- E. Solenoid Valves: Comply with ARI 760 and UL 429; listed and labeled by an NRTL.
1. Body and Bonnet: Plated steel.
 2. Solenoid Tube, Plunger, Closing Spring, and Seat Orifice: Stainless steel.
 3. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
 4. End Connections: Threaded.
 5. Electrical: Molded, watertight coil in NEMA 250 enclosure of type required by location with 1/2-inch conduit adapter, and ac coil.
 6. Working Pressure Rating: 400 psig.
 7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.
 8. Manual operator.
- F. Safety Relief Valves: Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code; listed and labeled by an NRTL.
1. Body and Bonnet: Ductile iron and steel, with neoprene O-ring seal.
 2. Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
 3. Seat Disc: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
 4. End Connections: Threaded.
 5. Working Pressure Rating: 400 psig.
 6. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.
- G. Thermostatic Expansion Valves: Comply with ARI 750.
1. Body, Bonnet, and Seal Cap: Forged brass or steel.
 2. Diaphragm, Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
 3. Packing and Gaskets: Non-asbestos.
 4. Capillary and Bulb: Copper tubing filled with refrigerant charge.
 5. Suction Temperature: 40 deg F.
 6. Superheat: Adjustable.
 7. Reverse-flow option (for heat-pump applications).
 8. End Connections: Socket, flare, or threaded union.
 9. Working Pressure Rating: 700 psig.
- H. Hot-Gas Bypass Valves: Comply with UL 429; listed and labeled by an NRTL.
1. Body, Bonnet, and Seal Cap: Ductile iron or steel.
 2. Diaphragm, Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
 3. Packing and Gaskets: Non-asbestos.
 4. Solenoid Tube, Plunger, Closing Spring, and Seat Orifice: Stainless steel.
 5. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
 6. Equalizer: Internal.

7. Electrical: Molded, watertight coil in NEMA 250 enclosure of type required by location with 1/2-inch conduit adapter, and ac coil.
8. End Connections: Socket.
9. Throttling Range: Maximum 5 psig.
10. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
11. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

I. Straight-Type Strainers:

1. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
2. Screen: 100-mesh stainless steel.
3. End Connections: Socket or flare.
4. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

J. Angle-Type Strainers:

1. Body: Forged brass or cast bronze.
2. Drain Plug: Brass hex plug.
3. Screen: 100-mesh monel.
4. End Connections: Socket or flare.
5. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
6. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

K. Moisture/Liquid Indicators:

1. Body: Forged brass.
2. Window: Replaceable, clear, fused glass window with indicating element protected by filter screen.
3. Indicator: Color coded to show moisture content in ppm.
4. Minimum Moisture Indicator Sensitivity: Indicate moisture above 60 ppm.
5. End Connections: Socket or flare.
6. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

L. Replaceable-Core Filter Dryers: Comply with ARI 730.

1. Body and Cover: Painted-steel shell with ductile-iron cover, stainless-steel screws, and neoprene gaskets.
2. Filter Media: 10 micron, pleated with integral end rings; stainless-steel support.
3. Desiccant Media: Activated alumina.
4. Designed for reverse flow (for heat-pump applications).
5. End Connections: Socket.
6. Access Ports: NPS 1/4 connections at entering and leaving sides for pressure differential measurement.
7. Maximum Pressure Loss: 2 psig.
8. Rated Flow: Based upon HVAC tons of refrigeration.

9. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
10. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

M. Permanent Filter Dryers: Comply with ARI 730.

1. Body and Cover: Painted-steel shell.
2. Filter Media: 10 micron, pleated with integral end rings; stainless-steel support.
3. Desiccant Media: Activated alumina.
4. Designed for reverse flow (for heat-pump applications).
5. End Connections: Socket.
6. Access Ports: NPS 1/4 connections at entering and leaving sides for pressure differential measurement.
7. Maximum Pressure Loss: 2 psig.
8. Rated Flow: Based upon HVAC tons of refrigeration.
9. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
10. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

N. Mufflers:

1. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
2. End Connections: Socket or flare.
3. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
4. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

O. Receivers: Comply with ARI 495.

1. Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code; listed and labeled by an NRTL.
2. Comply with UL 207; listed and labeled by an NRTL.
3. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
4. Tappings: Inlet, outlet, liquid level indicator, and safety relief valve.
5. End Connections: Socket or threaded.
6. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

P. Liquid Accumulators: Comply with ARI 495.

1. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
2. End Connections: Socket or threaded.
3. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
4. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

2.4 REFRIGERANTS

A. ASHRAE 34, R-410A: Pentafluoroethane/Difluoromethane.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS FOR REFRIGERANT R-410A

- A. Suction Lines NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller for Conventional Air-Conditioning Applications: Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed or soldered joints.
- B. Suction Lines NPS 3-1/2 and Smaller for Conventional Air-Conditioning Applications: Copper, Type ACR, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed or soldered joints.
- C. Suction Lines NPS 4 and Smaller for Conventional Air-Conditioning Applications: Copper, Type ACR, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with soldered joints.
- D. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines, and Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: Copper, Type ACR, annealed- or drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed or soldered joints.
- E. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines, and Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications:
 - 1. NPS 5/8 and Smaller: Copper, Type ACR, annealed- or drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed or soldered joints.
 - 2. NPS 3/4 to NPS 1 and Smaller: Copper, Type K, annealed- or drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed or soldered joints.
 - 3. NPS 1-1/4 and Smaller: Copper, Type ACR, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with 95-5 tin-antimony soldered joints.
 - 4. NPS 1-1/2 to NPS 2: Copper, Type ACR, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with Alloy HB soldered joints.
- F. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines, and Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications NPS 2 to NPS 4: Schedule 40, black-steel and wrought-steel fittings with welded joints.
- G. Safety-Relief-Valve Discharge Piping: Copper, Type ACR, annealed- or drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed or soldered joints.
- H. Safety-Relief-Valve Discharge Piping: Copper, Type K, annealed- or drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed or soldered joints.
- I. Safety-Relief-Valve Discharge Piping:
 - 1. NPS 5/8 and Smaller: Copper, Type ACR, annealed- or drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed or soldered joints.
 - 2. NPS 3/4 to NPS 1 and Smaller: Copper, Type K, annealed- or drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed or soldered joints.

3. NPS 1-1/4 and Smaller: Copper, Type ACR, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with 95-5 tin-antimony soldered joints.
 4. NPS 1-1/2 to NPS 2: Copper, Type ACR, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with Alloy HB soldered joints.
- J. Safety-Relief-Valve Discharge Piping NPS 2 to NPS 4: Schedule 40, black-steel and wrought-steel fittings with welded joints.

3.2 VALVE AND SPECIALTY APPLICATIONS

- A. Install diaphragm packless valves in suction and discharge lines of compressor.
- B. Install service valves for gage taps at inlet and outlet of hot-gas bypass valves and strainers if they are not an integral part of valves and strainers.
- C. Install a check valve at the compressor discharge and a liquid accumulator at the compressor suction connection.
- D. Except as otherwise indicated, install diaphragm packless valves on inlet and outlet side of filter dryers.
- E. Install a full-sized, three-valve bypass around filter dryers.
- F. Install solenoid valves upstream from each expansion valve and hot-gas bypass valve. Install solenoid valves in horizontal lines with coil at top.
- G. Install thermostatic expansion valves as close as possible to distributors on evaporators.
 1. Install valve so diaphragm case is warmer than bulb.
 2. Secure bulb to clean, straight, horizontal section of suction line using two bulb straps. Do not mount bulb in a trap or at bottom of the line.
 3. If external equalizer lines are required, make connection where it will reflect suction-line pressure at bulb location.
- H. Install safety relief valves where required by ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Pipe safety-relief-valve discharge line to outside according to ASHRAE 15.
- I. Install moisture/liquid indicators in liquid line at the inlet of the thermostatic expansion valve or at the inlet of the evaporator coil capillary tube.
- J. Install strainers upstream from and adjacent to the following unless they are furnished as an integral assembly for device being protected:
 1. Solenoid valves.
 2. Thermostatic expansion valves.
 3. Hot-gas bypass valves.
 4. Compressor.

- K. Install filter dryers in liquid line between compressor and thermostatic expansion valve, and in the suction line at the compressor.
- L. Install receivers sized to accommodate pump-down charge.
- M. Install flexible connectors at compressors.

3.3 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems; indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings.
- B. Install refrigerant piping according to ASHRAE 15.
- C. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- F. Install piping adjacent to machines to allow service and maintenance.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- J. Refer to drawings and specifications for solenoid valve controllers, control wiring, and sequence of operation.
- K. Install piping as short and direct as possible, with a minimum number of joints, elbows, and fittings.
- L. Arrange piping to allow inspection and service of refrigeration equipment. Install valves and specialties in accessible locations to allow for service and inspection. Install access doors or panels as specified in Section 08311 "Access Doors and Frames" if valves or equipment requiring maintenance is concealed behind finished surfaces.
- M. Install refrigerant piping in protective conduit where installed belowground.

- N. Install refrigerant piping in rigid or flexible conduit in locations where exposed to mechanical injury.
- O. Slope refrigerant piping as follows:
 - 1. Install horizontal hot-gas discharge piping with a uniform slope downward away from compressor.
 - 2. Install horizontal suction lines with a uniform slope downward to compressor.
 - 3. Install traps and double risers to entrain oil in vertical runs.
 - 4. Liquid lines may be installed level.
- P. When brazing or soldering, remove solenoid-valve coils and sight glasses; also remove valve stems, seats, and packing, and accessible internal parts of refrigerant specialties. Do not apply heat near expansion-valve bulb.
- Q. Before installation of steel refrigerant piping, clean pipe and fittings using the following procedures:
 - 1. Shot blast the interior of piping.
 - 2. Remove coarse particles of dirt and dust by drawing a clean, lintless cloth through tubing by means of a wire or electrician's tape.
 - 3. Draw a clean, lintless cloth saturated with trichloroethylene through the tube or pipe. Continue this procedure until cloth is not discolored by dirt.
 - 4. Draw a clean, lintless cloth, saturated with compressor oil, squeezed dry, through the tube or pipe to remove remaining lint. Inspect tube or pipe visually for remaining dirt and lint.
 - 5. Finally, draw a clean, dry, lintless cloth through the tube or pipe.
 - 6. Safety-relief-valve discharge piping is not required to be cleaned but is required to be open to allow unrestricted flow.
- R. Install piping with adequate clearance between pipe and adjacent walls and hangers or between pipes for insulation installation.
- S. Identify refrigerant piping and valves according to specifications.
- T. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified.
- U. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified.
- V. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified.

3.4 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.

- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Fill pipe and fittings with an inert gas (nitrogen or carbon dioxide), during brazing or welding, to prevent scale formation.
- D. Soldered Joints: Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," Chapter "Pipe and Tube."
 - 1. Use Type BcuP, copper-phosphorus alloy for joining copper socket fittings with copper pipe.
 - 2. Use Type BAg, cadmium-free silver alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.
- F. Threaded Joints: Thread steel pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry-seal threading is specified.
 - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- G. Steel pipe can be threaded, but threaded joints must be seal brazed or seal welded.
- H. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12/D10.12M.
- I. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.

3.5 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Hanger, support, and anchor products are specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Install the following pipe attachments:
 - 1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal runs less than 20 feet long.
 - 2. Roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal runs 20 feet or longer.
 - 3. Pipe Roller: MSS SP-58, Type 44 for multiple horizontal piping 20 feet or longer, supported on a trapeze.
 - 4. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
 - 5. Copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.

- C. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
1. NPS 1/2: Maximum span, 60 inches; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
 2. NPS 5/8: Maximum span, 60 inches; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
 3. NPS 1: Maximum span, 72 inches; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
 4. NPS 1-1/4: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 5. NPS 1-1/2: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 6. NPS 2: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 7. NPS 2-1/2: Maximum span, 108 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 8. NPS 3: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 9. NPS 4: Maximum span, 12 feet; minimum rod size, 1/2 inch.
- D. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
1. NPS 2: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 2. NPS 2-1/2: Maximum span, 11 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 3. NPS 3: Maximum span, 12 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 4. NPS 4: Maximum span, 14 feet; minimum rod size, 1/2 inch.
- E. Support multifloor vertical runs at least at each floor.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
1. Comply with ASME B31.5, Chapter VI.
 2. Test refrigerant piping, specialties, and receivers. Isolate compressor, condenser, evaporator, and safety devices from test pressure if they are not rated above the test pressure.
 3. Test high- and low-pressure side piping of each system separately at not less than the pressures indicated in Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article.
 - a. Fill system with nitrogen to the required test pressure.
 - b. System shall maintain test pressure at the manifold gage throughout duration of test.
 - c. Test joints and fittings with electronic leak detector or by brushing a small amount of soap and glycerin solution over joints.
 - d. Remake leaking joints using new materials, and retest until satisfactory results are achieved.

3.7 SYSTEM CHARGING

- A. Charge system using the following procedures:
 - 1. Install core in filter dryers after leak test but before evacuation.
 - 2. Evacuate entire refrigerant system with a vacuum pump to 500 micrometers. If vacuum holds for 12 hours, system is ready for charging.
 - 3. Break vacuum with refrigerant gas, allowing pressure to build up to 2 psig.
 - 4. Charge system with a new filter-dryer core in charging line.

3.8 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust thermostatic expansion valve to obtain proper evaporator superheat.
- B. Adjust high- and low-pressure switch settings to avoid short cycling in response to fluctuating suction pressure.
- C. Adjust set-point temperature of air-conditioning or chilled-water controllers to the system design temperature.
- D. Perform the following adjustments before operating the refrigeration system, according to manufacturer's written instructions:
 - 1. Open shutoff valves in condenser water circuit.
 - 2. Verify that compressor oil level is correct.
 - 3. Open compressor suction and discharge valves.
 - 4. Open refrigerant valves except bypass valves that are used for other purposes.
 - 5. Check open compressor-motor alignment and verify lubrication for motors and bearings.
- E. Replace core of replaceable filter dryer after system has been adjusted and after design flow rates and pressures are established.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 232513 - WATER TREATMENT FOR CLOSED-LOOP HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes the following water treatment for closed-loop hydronic systems:
 - 1. Manual chemical-feed equipment.
 - 2. Chemicals.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. RO: Reverse osmosis.
- B. TDS: Total dissolved solids consist of salts and other materials that combine with water as a solution.
- C. TSS: Total suspended solids include both organic and inorganic solids that are suspended in the water. These solids may include silt, plankton, and industrial wastes.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories for the following products:
 - 1. Bypass feeders.
 - 2. Water meters.
 - 3. Inhibitor injection timers.
 - 4. pH controllers.
 - 5. Chemical solution tanks.
 - 6. Injection pumps.
 - 7. Chemical-treatment test equipment.
 - 8. Chemical material safety data sheets.
 - 9. Inhibited ethylene glycol.
 - 10. Inhibited propylene glycol.

- B. Shop Drawings: Pretreatment and chemical-treatment equipment, showing tanks, maintenance space required, and piping connections to hydronic systems.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
 - 2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For components, from manufacturer.
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- B. Water-Analysis Provider Qualifications: Verification of experience and capability of HVAC water-treatment service provider.
- C. Field quality-control reports.
- D. Water-Treatment Program: Written sequence of operation on an annual basis for the application equipment required to achieve water quality defined in "Performance Requirements" Article.
- E. Water Analysis: Illustrate water quality available at Project site.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For sensors, injection pumps, and controllers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. HVAC Water-Treatment Service Provider Qualifications: An experienced HVAC water-treatment service provider, capable of analyzing water qualities, installing water-treatment equipment, and applying water treatment as specified in this Section.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide all hardware, chemicals, and other material necessary to maintain HVAC water quality in all systems, as indicated in this Specification. Water quality for hydronic systems shall minimize corrosion, scale buildup, and biological growth for optimum efficiency of hydronic equipment without creating a hazard to operating personnel or the environment.
- B. Base HVAC water treatment on quality of water available at Project site, hydronic system equipment material characteristics and functional performance characteristics, operating personnel capabilities, and requirements and guidelines of authorities having jurisdiction.

2.2 MANUAL CHEMICAL-FEED EQUIPMENT

- A. Bypass Feeders: Provide steel feeders with corrosion-resistant exterior coating, minimum 3-1/2-inch fill opening in the top, and NPS 3/4 bottom inlet and top side outlet. Provide quarter turn or threaded fill cap with gasket seal and diaphragm to lock the top on the feeder when exposed to system pressure in the vessel.
 - 1. Capacity: 5 gal..
 - 2. Minimum Working Pressure: 175 psig.

2.3 CHEMICAL-TREATMENT TEST EQUIPMENT

- A. Test Kit: Manufacturer-recommended equipment and chemicals in a wall-mounted cabinet for testing pH, corrosion inhibitors, alkalinity, hardness, and other properties recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Corrosion Test-Coupon Assembly: Constructed of corrosive-resistant material, complete with piping, valves, and mild steel and copper coupons. Locate copper coupon downstream from mild steel coupon in the test-coupon assembly.
 - 1. Two-station rack for closed-loop systems.

2.4 CHEMICALS

- A. Chemicals shall be as recommended by water-treatment system manufacturer, compatible with piping system components and connected equipment, and able to attain water quality specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 WATER ANALYSIS

- A. Perform an analysis of supply water to determine quality of water available at Project site.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install water-testing equipment on wall near water-chemical-application equipment.
- B. Mount sensors and injectors in piping circuits.
- C. Bypass Feeders: Install in closed hydronic systems.

Install bypass feeders in a bypass isolation isolating pipes unless in place otherwise on drawings
Install water meter in make-up water supply
Install test stop assembly in bypass isolation isolating pipes unless otherwise in place on drawings
Install a gate or float ball isolation valves on inlet outlet and drain below the feeder inlet
Install a swing check on the inlet after the isolation valves

3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Make piping connections between HVAC water-treatment equipment and dissimilar-metal piping with dielectric fittings. Dielectric fittings are specified in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping."
- D. Install shutoff valves on HVAC water-treatment equipment inlet and outlet. Metal general-duty valves are specified in Section 230523.11 "Globe Valves for HVAC Piping," Section 230523.12 "Ball Valves for HVAC Piping," Section 230523.13 "Butterfly Valves for HVAC Piping," and Section 230523.15 "Gate Valves for HVAC Piping."
- E. Comply with requirements in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for backflow preventers required in makeup-water connections to potable-water systems.

3.4 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Confirm applicable electrical requirements in electrical Sections for connecting electrical equipment.
- B. Ground equipment in accordance with Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- C. Connect wiring in accordance with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including piping and electrical connections.
 - 2. Inspect piping and equipment to determine that systems and equipment have been cleaned, flushed, and filled with water, and are fully operational before introducing chemicals for water-treatment system.
 - 3. Place HVAC water-treatment system into operation and calibrate controls during the preliminary phase of hydronic systems' startup procedures.
 - 4. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is tested and satisfactory test results are achieved.
 - 5. Test for leaks and defects. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
 - 6. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, and replaced water piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that has been covered or concealed before it has been tested and approved.
 - 7. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow test pressure to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects.
 - 8. Repair leaks and defects with new materials, and retest piping until no leaks exist.
- C. Equipment will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- E. At eight-week intervals following Substantial Completion, perform separate water analyses on hydronic systems to show that automatic chemical-feed systems are maintaining water quality within performance requirements specified in this Section. Submit written reports of water analysis, advising Owner of changes necessary to adhere to "Performance Requirements" Article.

F. Comply with ASTM D3370 and with the following standards:

1. Silica: ASTM D859.
2. Acidity and Alkalinity: ASTM D1067.
3. Iron: ASTM D1068.
4. Water Hardness: ASTM D1126.

3.6 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

A. Scope of Maintenance Service: Provide chemicals and service program to maintain water conditions required above, to inhibit corrosion and scale formation for hydronic piping and equipment. Services and chemicals shall be provided for a period of two years from date of Substantial Completion and shall include the following:

1. Initial water analysis and HVAC water-treatment recommendations.
2. Startup assistance for Contractor to flush the systems, clean with detergents, and initially fill systems with required chemical treatment prior to operation.
3. Periodic field service and consultation.
4. Customer report charts and log sheets.
5. Laboratory technical analysis.
6. Analyses and reports of all chemical items concerning safety and compliance with government regulations.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain HVAC water-treatment systems and equipment.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 233113 - METAL DUCTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Single-wall rectangular ducts and fittings.
2. Double-wall rectangular ducts and fittings.
3. Single-wall round ducts and fittings.
4. Double-wall round ducts and fittings.
5. Sheet metal materials.
6. Duct liner.
7. Sealants and gaskets.
8. Hangers and supports.
9. Seismic-restraint devices.

- B. Related Sections:

1. Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing requirements for metal ducts.
2. Section 233116 "Nonmetal Ducts" for fibrous-glass ducts, thermoset fiber-reinforced plastic ducts, thermoplastic ducts, PVC ducts, and concrete ducts.
3. Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for dampers, sound-control devices, duct-mounting access doors and panels, turning vanes, and flexible ducts.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following products:

1. Liners and adhesives.
2. Sealants and gaskets.
3. Seismic-restraint devices.

- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1. Product Data: For adhesives, indicating VOC content.

2. Laboratory Test Reports: For adhesives, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.
3. Product Data: For sealants, indicating VOC content.
4. Laboratory Test Reports: For sealants, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.
5. Laboratory Test Reports: For antimicrobial coatings, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.

C. Shop Drawings:

1. Fabrication, assembly, and installation, including plans, elevations, sections, components, and attachments to other work.
2. Factory- and shop-fabricated ducts and fittings.
3. Duct layout indicating sizes, configuration, liner material, and static-pressure classes.
4. Elevation of top and bottom of ducts.
5. Dimensions of main all duct runs from building grid lines.
6. Fittings.
7. Reinforcement and spacing.
8. Seam and joint construction.
9. Penetrations through fire-rated and other partitions.
10. Equipment installation based on equipment being used on Project.
11. Locations for duct accessories, including dampers, turning vanes, and access doors and panels.
12. Hangers and supports, including methods for duct and building attachment and vibration isolation.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: A single set of plans or BIM model, drawn to scale, showing the items described in this Section, and coordinated with all building trades.
- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel in accordance with the following:
 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," for hangers and supports.
 2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum," for aluminum supports.
 3. AWS D9.1/D9.1M, "Sheet Metal Welding Code," for duct joint and seam welding.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
- B. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment," and Section 7 - "Construction and System Startup."
- C. ASHRAE/IES Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6.4.4 - "HVAC System Construction and Insulation."
- D. Duct Dimensions: Unless otherwise indicated, all duct dimensions indicated on Drawings are inside clear dimensions and do not include insulation or duct wall thickness.

2.2 SINGLE-WALL RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Construct ducts of galvanized sheet steel unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. For ducts exposed to weather, construct of Type 304 stainless steel indicated by manufacturer to be suitable for outdoor installation.
- B. Transverse Joints: Fabricate joints in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-1, "Rectangular Duct/Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
 - 1. For ducts with longest side less than 36 inches, select joint types in accordance with Figure 2-1.
 - 2. For ducts with longest side 36 inches or greater, use flange joint connector Type T-22, T-24, T-24A, T-25a, or T-25b. Factory-fabricated flanged duct connection system may be used if submitted and approved by engineer of record.
 - 3. Where specified for specific applications, all joints shall be welded.
- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Duct/Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

1. Where specified for specific applications, all joints shall be welded.
- D. Elbows, Transitions, Offsets, Branch Connections, and Other Duct Construction: Select types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Ch. 4, "Fittings and Other Construction," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

2.3 DOUBLE-WALL RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. Rectangular Ducts: Fabricate ducts with indicated dimensions for clear internal dimensions of the inner duct.
- B. Outer Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
1. Construct ducts of galvanized sheet steel unless otherwise indicated.
 2. For ducts exposed to weather, construct outer duct of Type 304 stainless steel indicated by manufacturer to be suitable for outdoor installation.
- C. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-1, "Rectangular Duct/Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
1. For ducts with longest side less than 36 inches, select joint types in accordance with Figure 2-1.
 2. For ducts with longest side 36 inches or greater, use flange joint connector Type T-22, T-24, T-24A, T-25a, or T-25b. Factory-fabricated flanged duct connection system may be used if submitted and approved by engineer of record.
 3. Where specified for specific applications, all joints shall be welded.
- D. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Duct/Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
1. Where specified for specific applications, all joints shall be welded.
- E. Interstitial Insulation: Fibrous-glass liner complying with ASTM C1071, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."
1. Maximum Thermal Conductivity: 0.27 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.

2. Install spacers that position the inner duct at uniform distance from outer duct without compressing insulation.
 3. Coat insulation with antimicrobial coating.
 4. Cover insulation with polyester film complying with UL 181, Class 1.
- F. Interstitial Insulation: Flexible elastomeric duct liner complying with ASTM C534/C534M, Type II for sheet materials, and with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
1. Maximum Thermal Conductivity: 0.25 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.

2.4 SINGLE-WALL ROUND DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Ch. 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
1. Construct ducts of galvanized sheet steel unless otherwise indicated.
 2. For ducts exposed to weather, construct of Type 304 stainless steel indicated by manufacturer to be suitable for outdoor installation.
- B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Round Duct Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
1. Transverse Joints in Ducts Larger Than 60 Inches in Diameter: Flanged.
- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Round Duct Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
1. Fabricate round ducts larger than 90 inches in diameter with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
 2. Fabricate flat-oval ducts larger than 72 inches in width (major dimension) with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
- D. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

2.5 DOUBLE-WALL ROUND DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. Round: Indicated dimensions are the duct width (major dimension) and diameter of the round sides connecting the flat portions of the duct (minor dimension) of the inner duct.
1. Outer Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Ch. 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
 - a. Construct ducts of galvanized sheet steel unless otherwise indicated.
 - b. For ducts exposed to weather, construct outer duct of Type 304 stainless steel indicated by manufacturer to be suitable for outdoor installation.
 2. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Round Duct Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
 - a. Transverse Joints in Ducts Larger Than 60 Inches in Diameter: Flanged.
 3. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Round Duct Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
 - a. Fabricate round ducts larger than 90 inches in diameter with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
 - b. Fabricate flat-oval ducts larger than 72 inches in width (major dimension) with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
 4. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- B. Inner Duct: solid galvanized sheet steel.
- C. Interstitial Insulation: Fibrous-glass liner complying with ASTM C1071, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."
1. Maximum Thermal Conductivity: 0.27 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.

2. Install spacers that position the inner duct at uniform distance from outer duct without compressing insulation.
 3. Coat insulation with antimicrobial coating.
 4. Cover insulation with polyester film complying with UL 181, Class 1.
- D. Interstitial Insulation: Flexible elastomeric duct liner complying with ASTM C534/C534M, Type II for sheet materials, and with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
1. Maximum Thermal Conductivity: 0.25 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.

2.6 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

- A. General Material Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.
- B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A653/A653M.
1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G60.
 2. Finishes for Surfaces Exposed to View: Mill phosphatized.
- C. PVC-Coated, Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A653/A653M.
1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G60.
- D. Carbon-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A1008/A1008M, with oiled, matte finish for exposed ducts.
- E. Stainless-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A480/A480M, Type 304 or 316, as indicated in "Duct Schedule" Article; cold rolled, annealed, sheet. Exposed surface finish shall be No. 2B, No. 2D, No. 3, or No. 4 as indicated in "Duct Schedule" Article.
- F. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B209 Alloy 3003, H14 temper; with mill finish for concealed ducts, and standard, one-side bright finish for duct surfaces exposed to view.
- G. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: ASTM A36/A36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
1. Where black- and galvanized-steel shapes and plates are used to reinforce aluminum ducts, isolate the different metals with butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM gasket materials.
- H. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch-minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch-minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

2.7 DUCT LINER

- A. Fibrous-Glass Duct Liner: Comply with ASTM C1071, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."
1. Maximum Thermal Conductivity:
 - a. Type I, Flexible: 0.27 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.
 - b. Type II, Rigid: 0.23 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.
 2. Antimicrobial Erosion-Resistant Coating: Apply to the surface of the liner that will form the interior surface of the duct to act as a moisture repellent and erosion-resistant coating. Antimicrobial compound shall be tested for efficacy by an NRTL and registered by the EPA for use in HVAC systems.
 3. Solvent-Based Liner Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B and with ASTM C916.
 - a. Adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less.
 - b. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Duct Liner: Preformed, cellular, closed-cell, sheet materials complying with ASTM C534/C534M, Type II, Grade 1; and with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
1. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
 2. Liner Adhesive: As recommended by insulation manufacturer and complying with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
 - a. Adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less.
 - b. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- C. Fiberglass-Free Duct Liner: Made from partially recycled cotton or polyester products and containing no fiberglass. Airstream surface overlaid with fire-resistant facing to prevent surface erosion by airstream, complying with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B. Treat natural-fiber products with antimicrobial coating.

1. Maximum Thermal Conductivity: 0.24 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature when tested in accordance with ASTM C518.
2. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84; certified by an NRTL.
3. Liner Adhesive: As recommended by insulation manufacturer and complying with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
 - a. Adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less.
 - b. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

D. Insulation Pins and Washers:

1. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.
2. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick aluminum; with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place, but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.

E. Shop Application of Duct Liner: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 7-11, "Flexible Duct Liner Installation."

1. Adhere a single layer of indicated thickness of duct liner with at least 90 percent adhesive coverage at liner contact surface area. Attaining indicated thickness with multiple layers of duct liner is prohibited.
2. Apply adhesive to transverse edges of liner facing upstream that do not receive metal nosing.
3. Butt transverse joints without gaps, and coat joint with adhesive.
4. Fold and compress liner in corners of rectangular ducts or cut and fit to ensure butted-edge overlapping.
5. Do not apply liner in rectangular ducts with longitudinal joints, except at corners of ducts, unless duct size and dimensions of standard liner make longitudinal joints necessary.
6. Apply adhesive coating on longitudinal seams in ducts with air velocity of 2500 fpm or greater.
7. Secure liner with mechanical fasteners 4 inches from corners and at intervals not exceeding 12 inches transversely; at 3 inches from transverse joints and at intervals not exceeding 18 inches longitudinally.
8. Secure transversely oriented liner edges facing the airstream with metal nosings that have either channel or "Z" profiles or are integrally formed from duct wall. Fabricate edge facings at the following locations:

- a. Fan discharges.
 - b. Intervals of lined duct preceding unlined duct.
 - c. Upstream edges of transverse joints in ducts where air velocities are higher than 2500 fpm or where indicated.
9. Secure insulation between perforated sheet metal inner duct of same thickness as specified for outer shell. Use mechanical fasteners that maintain inner duct at uniform distance from outer shell without compressing insulation.
 - a. Sheet Metal Inner Duct Perforations: 3/32-inch diameter, with an overall open area of 23 percent.
10. Terminate inner ducts with buildouts attached to fire-damper sleeves, dampers, turning vane assemblies, or other devices. Fabricated buildouts (metal hat sections) or other buildout means are optional; when used, secure buildouts to duct walls with bolts, screws, rivets, or welds.

2.8 SEALANT AND GASKETS

- A. General Sealant and Gasket Requirements: Surface-burning characteristics for sealants and gaskets shall be a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
- B. Two-Part Tape Sealing System:
 1. Tape: Woven cotton fiber impregnated with mineral gypsum and modified acrylic/silicone activator to react exothermically with tape to form hard, durable, airtight seal.
 2. Tape Width: 6 inches.
 3. Sealant: Modified styrene acrylic.
 4. Water resistant.
 5. Mold and mildew resistant.
 6. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10 inch wg, positive and negative.
 7. Service: Indoor and outdoor.
 8. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.
 9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum.
 10. Sealant shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less.
 11. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- C. Water-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:
 1. Application Method: Brush on.

2. Solids Content: Minimum 65 percent.
3. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 20.
4. Water resistant.
5. Mold and mildew resistant.
6. VOC: Maximum 75 g/L (less water).
7. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10 inch wg, positive and negative.
8. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.

D. Solvent-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:

1. Application Method: Brush on.
2. Base: Synthetic rubber resin.
3. Solvent: Toluene and heptane.
4. Solids Content: Minimum 60 percent.
5. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 60.
6. Water resistant.
7. Mold and mildew resistant.
8. Sealant shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less.
9. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
10. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive or negative.
11. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
12. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.

E. Flanged Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C920.

1. General: Single-component, acid-curing, silicone, elastomeric.
2. Type: S.
3. Grade: NS.
4. Class: 25.
5. Use: O.
6. Sealant shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less.
7. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

F. Flange Gaskets: Butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM polymer with polyisobutylene plasticizer.

G. Round Duct Joint O-Ring Seals:

1. Seal shall provide maximum leakage class of 3 cfm/100 sq. ft. at 1-inch wg and shall be rated for 10-inch wg static-pressure class, positive or negative.
2. EPDM O-ring to seal in concave bead in coupling or fitting spigot.
3. Double-lipped, EPDM O-ring seal, mechanically fastened to factory-fabricated couplings and fitting spigots.

2.9 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Hanger Rods for Noncorrosive Environments: Galvanized-steel rods and nuts.
- B. Hanger Rods for Corrosive Environments: Electrogalvanized, all-thread rods or galvanized rods with threads painted with zinc-chromate primer after installation.
- C. Strap and Rod Sizes: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct."
- D. Steel Cables for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel complying with ASTM A603.
- E. Steel Cables for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless steel complying with ASTM A492.
- F. Steel Cable End Connections: Galvanized-steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for duct hanger service; with an automatic-locking and clamping device.
- G. Duct Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.
- H. Trapeze and Riser Supports:
 1. Supports for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized-steel shapes and plates.
 2. Supports for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless-steel shapes and plates.
 3. Supports for Aluminum Ducts: Aluminum or galvanized steel coated with zinc chromate.

2.10 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICES

- A. General Requirements for Restraint Components: Rated strengths, features, and applications shall be as defined in reports by an evaluation service member of the ICC Evaluation Service.
 1. Structural Safety Factor: Allowable strength in tension, shear, and pullout force of components shall be at least four times the maximum seismic forces to which they will be subjected.

- B. Channel Support System: Shop- or field-fabricated support assembly made of slotted steel channels rated in tension, compression, and torsion forces and with accessories for attachment to braced component at one end and to building structure at the other end. Include matching components and corrosion-resistant coating.
- C. Restraint Cables: ASTM A603, galvanized or ASTM A492, stainless-steel cables with end connections made of galvanized-steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for restraining cable service; and with an automatic-locking and clamping device or double-cable clips.
- D. Hanger Rod Stiffener: Steel tube or steel slotted-support-system sleeve with internally bolted connections to hanger rod.
- E. Mechanical Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and stud-wedge or female-wedge type. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested in accordance with ASTM E488/E488M.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 DUCT INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of duct system. Indicated duct locations, configurations, and arrangements were used to size ducts and calculate friction loss for air-handling equipment sizing and for other design considerations. Install duct systems as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings and coordination drawings.
- B. Install ducts in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install ducts in maximum practical lengths with fewest possible joints.
- D. Install factory- or shop-fabricated fittings for changes in direction, size, and shape and for branch connections.
- E. Unless otherwise indicated, install ducts vertically and horizontally, and parallel and perpendicular to building lines.
- F. Install ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent enclosure elements of building.
- G. Install ducts with a clearance of 1 inch, plus allowance for insulation thickness.
- H. Route ducts to avoid passing through transformer vaults and electrical equipment rooms and enclosures.

- I. Where ducts pass through non-fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls and are exposed to view, cover the opening between the partition and duct or duct insulation with sheet metal flanges of same metal thickness as the duct. Overlap openings on four sides by at least 1-1/2 inches.
- J. Install fire, combination fire/smoke, and smoke dampers where indicated on Drawings and as required by code, and by local authorities having jurisdiction. Comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers and specific installation requirements of the damper UL listing.
- K. Install heating coils, cooling coils, air filters, dampers, and all other duct-mounted accessories in air ducts where indicated on Drawings.
- L. Protect duct interiors from moisture, construction debris and dust, and other foreign materials both before and after installation. Comply with SMACNA's "IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction," Appendix G, "Duct Cleanliness for New Construction Guidelines."
- M. Elbows: Use long-radius elbows wherever they fit.
 - 1. Fabricate 90-degree rectangular mitered elbows to include turning vanes.
 - 2. Fabricate 90-degree round elbows with a minimum of three segments for 12 inches and smaller and a minimum of five segments for 14 inches and larger.
- N. Branch Connections: Use lateral or conical branch connections.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF EXPOSED DUCTWORK

- A. Protect ducts exposed in finished spaces from being dented, scratched, or damaged.
- B. Trim duct sealants flush with metal. Create a smooth and uniform exposed bead. Do not use two-part tape sealing system.
- C. Grind welds to provide smooth surface free of burrs, sharp edges, and weld splatter. When welding stainless steel with a No. 3 or 4 finish, grind the welds flush, polish the exposed welds, and treat the welds to remove discoloration caused by welding.
- D. Maintain consistency, symmetry, and uniformity in arrangement and fabrication of fittings, hangers and supports, duct accessories, and air outlets.
- E. Repair or replace damaged sections and finished work that does not comply with these requirements.

**3.3 ADDITIONAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS FOR TYPE 1
COMMERCIAL KITCHEN GREASE HOOD EXHAUST DUCT**

- A. Install ducts in accordance with NFPA 96, "Ventilation Control and Fire Protection of Commercial Cooking Operation"; SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; and SMACNA's "Kitchen Ventilation Systems and Food Service Equipment Fabrication and Installation Guidelines" unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Install all ducts without dips and traps that may hold grease, and sloped a minimum of 2 percent to drain grease back to the hood.
- C. All joints shall be welded and shall be telescoping, bell, or flange joint as per NFPA 96.
- D. Install fire-rated access panel assemblies at each change in direction and at maximum intervals of 20 feet in horizontal ducts, and at every floor for vertical ducts, or as indicated on Drawings.
- E. Do not penetrate fire-rated assemblies except as allowed by applicable building codes and authorities having jurisdiction.

**3.4 ADDITIONAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS FOR EXHAUST DUCTS
SERVING COMMERCIAL DISHWASHERS AND OTHER HIGH-HUMIDITY
LOCATIONS**

- A. Install dishwasher exhaust ducts and other exhaust ducts from wet, high-humidity locations without dips and traps that may hold water. Slope ducts a minimum of 2 percent back to dishwasher or toward drain.
- B. Provide a drain pocket at each low point and at the base of each riser with a 1-inchtrapped copper drain from each drain pocket to open site floor drain.
- C. Minimize number of transverse seams.
- D. Do not locate longitudinal seams on bottom of duct.

3.5 DUCTWORK EXPOSED TO WEATHER

- A. All external joints are to be welded have secure watertight mechanical connections. Seal all openings to provide weatherproof construction.
- B. Construct ductwork to resist external loads of wind, snow, ice, and other effects of weather. Provide necessary supporting structures.
- C. Single Wall:
 - 1. Ductwork shall be Type 304 stainless steel.

- a. If duct outer surface is uninsulated, protect outer surface with suitable paint. Paint materials and application requirements are specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting."
 2. Where ducts have external insulation, provide weatherproof aluminum jacket. See Section 230713 "Duct Insulation."
- D. Double Wall:
1. Ductwork shall comply with requirements in "Double-Wall Rectangular Ducts and Fittings" or "Double-Wall Round Ducts and Fittings" Article.
 2. Ductwork outer wall shall be Type 304 stainless steel indicated by manufacturer to be suitable for outdoor installation.
 3. Provide interstitial insulation.

3.6 DUCT SEALING

- A. Seal ducts for duct static-pressure, seal classes, and leakage classes specified in "Duct Schedule" Article in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- B. Seal ducts at a minimum to the following seal classes in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible":
 1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
 2. Outdoor, Supply-Air Ducts: Seal Class A.
 3. Outdoor, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class C.
 4. Outdoor, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class C.
 5. Unconditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes 2-Inch wg and Lower: Seal Class B.
 6. Unconditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes Higher Than 2-Inch wg: Seal Class A.
 7. Unconditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class C.
 8. Unconditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class B.
 9. Conditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes 2-Inch wg and Lower: Seal Class C.
 10. Conditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes Higher Than 2-Inch wg: Seal Class B.
 11. Conditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class B.
 12. Conditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class C.

3.7 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 5, "Hangers and Supports."

- B. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.
 - 1. Where practical, install concrete inserts before placing concrete.
 - 2. Install powder-actuated concrete fasteners after concrete is placed and completely cured.
 - 3. Use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for standard-weight aggregate concretes or for slabs more than 4 inches thick.
 - 4. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes or for slabs less than 4 inches thick.
 - 5. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for seismic restraints.
- C. Hanger Spacing: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct," for maximum hanger spacing; install hangers and supports within 24 inches of each elbow and within 48 inches of each branch intersection.
- D. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.
- E. Support vertical ducts with steel angles or channel secured to the sides of the duct with welds, bolts, sheet metal screws, or blind rivets; support at each floor and at a maximum intervals of 16 feet.
- F. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

3.8 CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections to equipment with flexible connectors complying with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for branch, outlet and inlet, and terminal unit connections.

3.9 PAINTING

- A. Paint interior of metal ducts that are visible through registers and grilles and that do not have duct liner. Apply one coat of flat, black, latex paint over a compatible galvanized-steel primer. Paint materials and application requirements are specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."

3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Leakage Tests:
 - 1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual." Submit a test report for each test.
 - 2. Test the following systems:
 - a. Ducts with a Pressure Class Higher Than 3-Inch wg: Test representative duct sections totaling no less than 25 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
 - b. Supply Ducts with a Pressure Class of 2-Inch wg or Higher: Test representative duct sections totaling no less than 50 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
 - c. Return Ducts with a Pressure Class of 2-Inch wg or Higher: Test representative duct sections totaling no less than 50 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
 - d. Exhaust Ducts with a Pressure Class of 2-Inch wg or Higher: Test representative duct sections totaling no less than 50 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
 - e. Outdoor-Air Ducts with a Pressure Class of 2-Inch wg or Higher: Test representative duct sections totaling no less than 50 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
 - 3. Disassemble, reassemble, and seal segments of systems to accommodate leakage testing and for compliance with test requirements.
 - 4. Testing of each duct section is to be performed with access doors, coils, filters, dampers, and other duct-mounted devices in place as designed. No devices are to be removed or blanked off so as to reduce or prevent additional leakage.
 - 5. Test for leaks before applying external insulation.
 - 6. Conduct tests at static pressures equal to maximum design pressure of system or section being tested. If static-pressure classes are not indicated, test system at maximum system design pressure. Do not pressurize systems above maximum design operating pressure.
 - 7. Give seven days' advance notice for testing.
- C. Duct System Cleanliness Tests:
 - 1. Visually inspect duct system to ensure that no visible contaminants are present.
 - 2. Test sections of metal duct system, chosen randomly by Owner, for cleanliness in accordance with "Description of Method 3 - NADCA Vacuum Test" in NADCA ACR, "Assessment, Cleaning and Restoration of HVAC Systems."
 - a. Acceptable Cleanliness Level: Net weight of debris collected on the filter media shall not exceed 0.75 mg/100 sq. cm.

- D. Duct system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.11 DUCT CLEANING

- A. Clean new duct system(s) before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- B. For cleaning of existing ductwork, see Section 230130.52 "Existing HVAC Air Distribution System Cleaning."
- C. Use duct cleaning methodology as indicated in NADCA ACR.
- D. Use service openings for entry and inspection.
 - 1. Provide openings with access panels appropriate for duct static-pressure and leakage class at dampers, coils, and any other locations where required for inspection and cleaning access. Provide insulated panels for insulated or lined duct. Patch insulation and liner as recommended by duct liner manufacturer. Comply with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for access panels and doors.
 - 2. Disconnect and reconnect flexible ducts as needed for cleaning and inspection.
 - 3. Remove and reinstall ceiling to gain access during the cleaning process.
- E. Particulate Collection and Odor Control:
 - 1. When venting vacuuming system inside the building, use HEPA filtration with 99.97 percent collection efficiency for 0.3-micron-size (or larger) particles.
 - 2. When venting vacuuming system to outdoors, use filter to collect debris removed from HVAC system, and locate exhaust downwind and away from air intakes and other points of entry into building.
- F. Clean the following components by removing surface contaminants and deposits:
 - 1. Air outlets and inlets (registers, grilles, and diffusers).
 - 2. Supply, return, and exhaust fans including fan housings, plenums (except ceiling supply and return plenums), scrolls, blades or vanes, shafts, baffles, dampers, and drive assemblies.
 - 3. Air-handling unit internal surfaces and components including mixing box, coil section, air wash systems, spray eliminators, condensate drain pans, humidifiers and dehumidifiers, filters and filter sections, and condensate collectors and drains.
 - 4. Coils and related components.
 - 5. Return-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes except in ceiling plenums and mechanical equipment rooms.
 - 6. Supply-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes.
 - 7. Dedicated exhaust and ventilation components and makeup air systems.
- G. Mechanical Cleaning Methodology:

1. Clean metal duct systems using mechanical cleaning methods that extract contaminants from within duct systems and remove contaminants from building.
2. Use vacuum-collection devices that are operated continuously during cleaning. Connect vacuum device to downstream end of duct sections so areas being cleaned are under negative pressure.
3. Use mechanical agitation to dislodge debris adhered to interior duct surfaces without damaging integrity of metal ducts, duct liner, or duct accessories.
4. Clean fibrous-glass duct liner with HEPA vacuuming equipment; do not permit duct liner to get wet. Replace fibrous-glass duct liner that is damaged, deteriorated, or delaminated or that has friable material, mold, or fungus growth.
5. Clean coils and coil drain pans in accordance with NADCA ACR. Keep drain pan operational. Rinse coils with clean water to remove latent residues and cleaning materials; comb and straighten fins.
6. Provide drainage and cleanup for wash-down procedures.
7. Antimicrobial Agents and Coatings: Apply EPA-registered antimicrobial agents if fungus is present. Apply antimicrobial agents in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions after removal of surface deposits and debris.

3.12 STARTUP

- A. Air Balance: Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

3.13 DUCT SCHEDULE

- A. Fabricate ducts with galvanized sheet steel except as otherwise indicated and as follows:
 1. Fabricate all ducts to achieve SMACNA pressure class, seal class, and leakage class as indicated below.
- B. Supply Ducts:
 1. Ducts Connected to Fan Coil Units, Furnaces, Heat Pumps, and Terminal Units:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive 2-inch wg.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 2.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 2.
 2. Ducts Connected to Constant-Volume Air-Handling Units:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive 2-inch wg.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 2.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 2.

3. Ducts Connected to Variable-Air-Volume Air-Handling Units:

- a. Pressure Class: Positive 3-inch wg.
- b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
- c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 2.
- d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 2.

4. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:

- a. Pressure Class: Positive 2-inch wg.
- b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
- c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 2.
- d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 2.

C. Return Ducts:

1. Ducts Connected to Fan Coil Units, Furnaces, Heat Pumps, and Terminal Units:

- a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 1-inch wg.
- b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
- c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 2.
- d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 2.

2. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units Insert equipment:

- a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
- b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
- c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 2.
- d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 2.

3. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed above:

- a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
- b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
- c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 2.
- d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 2.

D. Exhaust Ducts:

1. Ducts Connected to Fans Exhausting (ASHRAE 62.1, Class 1 and 2) Air:

- a. Pressure Class: Negative 2-inch wg.
- b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A if negative pressure, and A if positive pressure.
- c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 2.
- d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 2.

2. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units:

- a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A if negative pressure, and A if positive pressure.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 2.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 2.
 - 3. Ducts Connected to Commercial Kitchen Hoods: Comply with NFPA 96.
 - a. Exposed to View: Type 304, stainless-steel sheet, No. 4 finish.
 - b. Concealed: Type 304, stainless-steel sheet, No. 2D finish.
 - c. Welded seams and joints.
 - d. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
 - e. Airtight/watertight.
 - 4. Ducts Connected to Dishwashers, Dishwasher Hoods, and Other High-Humidity Locations:
 - a. Type 304, stainless-steel sheet.
 - b. Exposed to View: No. 4 finish.
 - c. Concealed: No. 2D finish.
 - d. Welded longitudinal seams; welded or flanged transverse joints with watertight EPDM gaskets.
 - e. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
 - f. Airtight/watertight.
 - 5. Ducts Connected to Fans Exhausting Fume Hood, Laboratory, and Process (ASHRAE 62.1, Class 3 and Class 4) Air:
 - a. Type 316, stainless-steel sheet.
 - 1) Exposed to View: No. 4 finish.
 - 2) Concealed: No. 2B finish.
 - b. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 3-inch wg.
 - c. Welded seams and joints.
 - d. Airtight/watertight.
- E. Outdoor-Air (Not Filtered, Heated, or Cooled) Ducts:
- 1. Ducts Connected to Fan Coil Units, Furnaces, Heat Pumps, and Terminal Units:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 8.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 8.
 - 2. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units:

- a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 2.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 2.
 3. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 2.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 2.
- F. Intermediate Reinforcement:
 1. Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel.
 2. PVC-Coated Ducts:
 - a. Exposed to Airstream: Match duct material.
 - b. Not Exposed to Airstream: Match duct material.
 3. Stainless-Steel Ducts:
 - a. Exposed to Airstream: Match duct material.
 - b. Not Exposed to Airstream: Match duct material.
 4. Aluminum Ducts: Aluminum.
- G. Liner:
 1. Supply-Air Ducts: Fibrous glass, Type I, 1 inch(es thick.
 2. Return-Air Ducts: Fibrous glass, Type I, 1 inch(es thick.
 3. Exhaust-Air Ducts: Fibrous glass, Type I, inch(es thick.
 4. Supply Fan Plenums: Fibrous glass, Type II, 1 inch(es thick.
 5. Return- and Exhaust-Fan Plenums: Fibrous glass, Type II, 2 inches thick.
 6. Transfer Ducts: Fibrous glass, Type I, 1 inch(es thick.
- H. Double-Wall Duct Interstitial Insulation:
 1. Supply-Air Ducts: 1-1/2 inches thick.
 2. Return-Air Ducts: 1-1/2 inches thick.
 3. Exhaust-Air Ducts: 1 inch thick.
- I. Elbow Configuration:
 1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
 - a. Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower:

- 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
 - 2) Mitered Type RE 4 without vanes.
 - b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm:
 - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio.
 - 2) Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
 - 3) Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
 - c. Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher:
 - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
 - 2) Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
 - 3) Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
2. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
 - a. Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
 - b. Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
 - c. Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
3. Round Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-4, "Round Duct Elbows."
 - a. Minimum Radius-to-Diameter Ratio and Elbow Segments: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 3-1, "Mitered Elbows." Elbows with less than 90-degree change of direction have proportionately fewer segments.
 - 1) Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower: 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and three segments for 90-degree elbow.
 - 2) Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm: 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and four segments for 90-degree elbow.
 - 3) Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher: 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and five segments for 90-degree elbow.

4) Radius-to Diameter Ratio: 1.5.

- b. Round Elbows, 12 Inches and Smaller in Diameter: Stamped or pleated.
- c. Round Elbows, 14 Inches and Larger in Diameter: Welded.

J. Branch Configuration:

- 1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-6, "Branch Connection."
 - a. Rectangular Main to Rectangular Branch: 45-degree entry.
 - b. Rectangular Main to Round Branch: Conical spin in.
- 2. Round and Flat Oval: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees." Saddle taps are permitted in existing duct.
 - a. Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower: 90-degree tap.
 - b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm: Conical tap.
 - c. Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher: 45-degree lateral.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 233300 - DUCT ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Backdraft dampers.
 - 2. Manual volume control dampers.
 - 3. Fire and smoke dampers.
 - 4. Actuators.
 - 5. Duct silencers.
 - 6. Turning vanes.
 - 7. Duct-mounted access doors and panels.
 - 8. Flexible connectors.
 - 9. Flexible ducts.
 - 10. Accessories hardware.
- B. Related Sections: The following Sections contain requirements that relate to this Section:
 - 1. Division 23 Section "Air Outlets and Inlets" for diffusers, registers, and grilles.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. General: Submit the following in accordance with Conditions of Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.
- B. Product data including details for materials, dimensions of individual components, profiles, and finishes for the following items:
 - 1. Backdraft dampers.
 - 2. Manual volume control dampers.
 - 3. Fire and smoke dampers.
 - 4. Duct-mounted access panels and doors.
 - 5. Flexible ducts.

- C. Shop drawings from manufacturer detailing assemblies. Include dimensions, weights, loadings, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection. Detail the following:
 - 1. Special fittings and volume control damper installation (both manual and automatic) details.
 - 2. Fire and smoke damper installations, including sleeves and duct-mounted access door and panel installations.
- D. Product Certification: Submit certified test data on dynamic insertion loss; self-noise power levels; and airflow performance data, static pressure loss, and dimensions and weights.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. NFPA Compliance: Comply with the following NFPA Standards:
 - 1. NFPA 90A, "Standard for the Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems."
 - 2. NFPA 90B, "Standard for the Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUAL VOLUME CONTROL DAMPERS

- A. General: Provide factory-fabricated volume-control dampers, complete with required hardware and accessories. Stiffen damper blades to provide stability under operating conditions. Provide locking device to hold single-blade dampers in a fixed position without vibration. Close duct penetrations for damper components to seal duct consistent with pressure class. Extend axles full length of damper blades. Provide bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
- B. Standard Volume Control Dampers: Multiple- or single-blade, parallel- or opposed-blade design as indicated, standard leakage rating, with linkage outside of air stream, and suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
 - 1. Steel Frames: Hat-shaped, galvanized-steel channels, minimum of 16 gage, and with mitered and welded corners. Provide frames with flanges where indicated for attaching to walls. Provide flangeless frames where indicated for installation in ducts.
 - 2. Roll-Formed Steel Blades: 16-gage galvanized steel.
 - 3. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.

4. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.

2.2 FIRE DAMPERS

- A. General: UL labeled according to UL Standard 555 "Standard for Fire Dampers." Refer to Fire Damper Schedule at the end of this Section.
- B. Fire Rating: 1-1/2 or 3 hours, as indicated.
- C. Frame: Type B; fabricated with roll-formed, 21-gage, galvanized-steel; with mitered and interlocking corners.
- D. Mounting Sleeve: Factory-installed or field-installed galvanized steel.
 1. Minimum Thickness: 0.056-inch (16-gage) or 0.138-inch (10-gage) thick as indicated, and length to suit application.
 2. Exceptions: Omit sleeve where damper frame width permits direct attachment of perimeter mounting angles on each side of the wall or floor, and thickness of damper frame meets sleeve requirements.
- E. Mounting Orientation: Vertical or horizontal as indicated.
- F. Blades: Roll-formed, interlocking, 21-gage galvanized steel. In place of interlocking blades, provide full-length, 21-gage, galvanized-steel blade connectors.
- G. Horizontal Dampers: Include a blade lock and stainless steel negator closure spring.
- H. Fusible Link: Replaceable, 165 deg F rated.

2.3 CEILING FIRE DAMPERS

- A. General: UL listed and labeled; comply with the construction details for the tested floor/roof-ceiling assemblies as indicated in the UL Fire Resistance Directory.
- B. Frame: 20-gage, rectangular or round, galvanized steel; style to suit ceiling construction.
- C. Blades: 22-gage galvanized steel with nonasbestos refractory insulation.
- D. Fusible Link: Replaceable, 165 deg F rated.

2.4 TURNING VANES

- A. Manufactured Turning Vanes: Fabricate of 1-1/2-inch-wide, curved blades set at 3/4 inch on center, support with bars perpendicular to blades set at 2 inches on center, and set into side strips suitable for mounting in ducts.

2.5 DUCT-MOUNTED ACCESS DOORS AND PANELS

- A. General: Refer to the Access Door Materials Schedule at the end of this Section for frame and door thickness, number of hinges and locks, and location of locks. Provide construction and airtightness suitable for duct pressure class.
- B. Frame: Galvanized sheet steel. Provide with bend-over tabs and foam gaskets.
- C. Door: Double-wall, galvanized sheet metal construction with insulation fill and thickness, number of hinges and locks as indicated for duct pressure class. Provide vision panel where indicated. Provide 1-inch by 1-inch butt hinge or piano hinge and cam latches.
- D. Seal around frame attachment to duct and door to frame with neoprene or foam rubber seals.
- E. Insulation: 1-inch thick fiber glass or polystyrene foam board.

2.6 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

- A. General: Flame-retarded or noncombustible fabrics, coatings, and adhesives complying with UL Standard 181, Class 1.
- B. Standard Metal-Edged Connectors: Factory-fabricated with a strip of fabric 3-1/2 inches wide attached to 2 strips of 2-3/4-inch-wide, 24-gage, galvanized sheet steel or 0.032-gage aluminum sheets. Select metal compatible with connected duct system. Fold and crimp metal edge strips onto fabric as illustrated in SMACNA HVAC Duct Standard, 1st Edition, Figure 2-19.
- C. Conventional, Indoor System Flexible Connectors Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with polychloroprene.
 - 1. Minimum Weight: 26 oz. per sq yd.
 - 2. Tensile Strength: 480 lb per inch in the warp and 360 lb per inch in the filling.
- F. Conventional, Outdoor System Flexible Connectors Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with Du Pont's HYPALON or other synthetic-rubber weatherproof coating resistant to the sun's ultraviolet rays and ozone environment.
 - 1. Minimum Weight: 26 oz. per sq yd.
 - 2. Tensile Strength: 530 lb per inch in the warp and 440 lb per inch in the filling.

2.7 FLEXIBLE DUCTS

- A. General: Comply with UL 181, Class 1.
- B. Flexible Ducts - Insulated: Factory-fabricated, insulated, round duct, with an outer jacket enclosing 1-1/2-inch-thick, glass fiber insulation around a continuous inner liner.
 - 1. Reinforcement: Steel-wire helix encapsulated in the inner liner.
 - 2. Outer Jacket: Polyethylene film.
 - 3. Inner Liner: Polyethylene film.

2.8 ACCESSORIES HARDWARE

- A. Instrument Test Holes: Cast iron or cast aluminum to suit duct material, including screw cap and gasket and a flat mounting gasket. Size to allow insertion of pitot tube and other testing instruments and provide in length to suit duct insulation thickness.
- B. Adhesives: High strength, quick setting, neoprene based, waterproof and resistant to gasoline and grease.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of duct accessories. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install duct accessories according to manufacturer's installation instructions and applicable portions of details of construction as shown in SMACNA standards.
- B. Install volume control dampers in lined duct with methods to avoid damage to liner and to avoid erosion of duct liner.
- C. Provide test holes at fan inlet and outlet and elsewhere as indicated.
- D. Install fire and smoke dampers according to the manufacturer's UL-approved printed instructions.
- E. Install fusible links in fire dampers.
- F. Label access doors according to Division 23.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust duct accessories for proper settings.
- B. Adjust fire and smoke dampers for proper action.
- C. Final positioning of manual dampers is specified in Division 23 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing."

ACCESS DOOR MATERIALS SCHEDULE

<u>DUCT</u> <u>PRESSURE</u> <u>CLASS</u>	<u>DOOR</u> <u>SIZE</u> <u>INCHES</u>	<u>NUMBER</u> <u>OF</u> <u>HINGES</u>	<u>NUMBER</u> <u>LOCKS</u>	<u>METAL GAGE</u> <u>FRAME</u>	<u>DOOR</u>	<u>BACK</u>
2 INCHES	12X12	2	1-S	24	26	26
& LESS	16x20	2	2-S	22	24	26
	24X24	3	2-S	22	22	26

S: SIDE

T: TOP

B: BOTTOM

END OF SECTION

SECTION 233600 - AIR TERMINAL UNITS

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Modulating, single-duct air terminal units.
 - 2. Casing liner.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of air terminal unit.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for air terminal units.
 - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
 - 1. Product Data: For adhesives, indicating VOC content.
 - 2. Product data showing compliance with ASHRAE 62.1.
- C. Shop Drawings: For air terminal units.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
 - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
 - 4. Hangers and supports, including methods for duct and building attachment and vibration isolation.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans and other details, or BIM model, drawn to scale, indicating the items described in this Section, and coordinated with all building trades.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air terminal units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 - a. Instructions for resetting minimum and maximum air volumes.
 - b. Instructions for adjusting software set points.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a Qualified Electrical Testing Laboratory, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. ASHRAE 62.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment," and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-up."
- C. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, "Section 6 - Heating, Ventilating, and Air Conditioning."

2.2 MODULATING, SINGLE-DUCT AIR TERMINAL UNITS

- A. Description: Volume-damper assembly inside unit casing with control components inside a protective metal shroud.
- B. Casing: Minimum 22-gauge- thick galvanized steel.
 1. Casing Liner: Comply with requirements in "Casing Liner" Article below for "Casing Liner, Flexible Elastomeric" Paragraph with "Antimicrobial Erosion-Resistant Coating" Subparagraph.
 2. Air Inlet: Round stub connection or S-slip and drive connections for duct attachment.
 3. Air Outlet: S-slip and drive connections.
 4. Access: Removable panels for access to parts requiring service, adjustment, or maintenance; with airtight gasket.
- C. Volume Damper: Galvanized steel with peripheral gasket and self-lubricating bearings.

1. Maximum Damper Leakage: AHRI 880 rated, 1 percent of nominal airflow at 3-inch wg inlet static pressure.
- D. Velocity Sensors: Multipoint array with velocity inlet sensors.
- E. Attenuator Section: Casing material and thickness matching associated air terminal unit casing. Provide absorptive attenuator integral with the air terminal unit, with noise transmission loss performance as required in schedules on Drawings.
- F. Hydronic Heating Coils: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins spaced no closer than 0.08 inch. Include manual air vent and drain valve. Provide hydronic heating coils for air terminal units scheduled on Drawings.
- G. Direct Digital Controls:
 1. Terminal Unit Controller: Pressure-independent, VAV controller and integrated actuator, and electronic airflow transducer with multipoint velocity sensor at air inlet, factory calibrated to minimum and maximum air volumes.
 - a. Occupied and unoccupied operating mode.
 - b. Remote reset of airflow or temperature set points.
 - c. Adjusting and monitoring with portable terminal.
 - d. Communication with temperature-control system specified in Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC."
 2. Room Sensor: Wall mounted with temperature set-point adjustment and access for connection of portable operator terminal.
 3. Terminal Unit Controller, Section 230923: Controller is to be factory mounted and wired by air terminal manufacturer; unit controllers, integrated actuators, and room sensors to be furnished under Section 230923 "Direct Digital Controls (DDC) for HVAC."
- H. Control Sequence: See Section 230993.11 "Sequence of Operation for HVAC" Drawings for control sequences.

2.3 CASING LINER

- A. Casing Liner, Flexible Elastomeric: Flexible elastomeric duct liner fabricated of preformed, cellular, closed-cell, sheet materials complying with ASTM C534/C534M, Type II, Grade 1; and with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
 1. Minimum Thickness: 1/2 inch.
 2. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
 3. Liner Adhesive: As recommended by insulation manufacturer and complying with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.

- a. Verify adhesive has a VOC content of 80 g/L or less.

2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. AHRI 880 Certification: Test, rate, and label assembled air terminal units in accordance with AHRI 880.
- B. Water Coils: Factory pressure test to 300 psig in accordance with AHRI 410 and ASHRAE 33.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment" and Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" for hangers and supports.
- B. Install air terminal units according to NFPA 90A.
- C. Install air terminal units level and plumb. Maintain sufficient clearance for normal service and maintenance.
- D. Install wall-mounted thermostats.

3.2 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Where installing piping adjacent to air terminal unit, allow space for service and maintenance.
- B. Hot-Water Piping: Comply with requirements in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping" and Section 232116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties," and connect heating coils to supply piping with shutoff valve, strainer, control valve, and union or flange; and to return piping with balancing valve and union or flange.

3.3 DUCTWORK CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" for connecting ducts to air terminal units.
- B. Make connections to air terminal units with flexible connectors complying with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."

3.4 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install field power to each air terminal unit electrical power connection. Coordinate with air terminal unit manufacturer and installers.
- B. Connect wiring in accordance with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- C. Ground equipment in accordance with Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- D. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, in accordance with NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
- E. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.
 - 1. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with a black background and engraved white letters at least 1/2 inch high.

3.5 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Connect control wiring in accordance with Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."

3.6 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Label each air terminal unit with drawing designation, nominal airflow, maximum and minimum factory-set airflows, and coil type. Comply with requirements in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for equipment labels and warning signs and labels.

3.7 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
 - 1. Complete installation and startup checks in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. Verify that inlet duct connections are as recommended by air terminal unit manufacturer to achieve proper performance.
 - 3. Verify that controls and control enclosure are accessible.
 - 4. Verify that control connections are complete.
 - 5. Verify that nameplate and identification tag are visible.

6. Verify that controls respond to inputs as specified.

3.8 ADJUSTING

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for air terminal unit testing, adjusting, and balancing.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
 1. After installing air terminal units and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
 2. Leak Test: After installation, fill water coils and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- B. Air terminal unit will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.10 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain air terminal units.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 233713 - AIR OUTLETS AND INLETS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division-1 Specification sections, apply to work of this section.

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Extent of air outlets and inlets work is indicated by drawings and schedules, and by requirements of this section.
- B. Types of outlets and inlets required for project include the following:
 - 1. Ceiling air diffusers.
 - 2. Wall registers and grilles.
 - 3. Louvers.
- C. Refer to other Division-23 sections for ductwork and duct accessories required in conjunction with air outlets and inlets; not work of this section.
- D. Refer to other Division-23 sections for balancing of air outlets and inlets; not work of this section.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer's Qualifications: Firms regularly engaged in manufacture of air outlets and inlets of types and capacities required, whose products have been in satisfactory use in similar service for not less than 5 years.
- B. Codes and Standards:
 - 1. ARI Compliance: Test and rate air outlets and inlets in accordance with ARI 650 "Standard for Air Outlets and Inlets".
 - 2. AMCA Compliance: Test and rate louvers in accordance with AMCA 500 "Test Method for Louvers, Dampers and Shutters".
 - 3. AMCA Seal: Provide louvers bearing AMCA Certified Rating Seal.
 - 4. NFPA Compliance: Install air outlets and inlets in accordance with NFPA 90A

"Standard for the Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems".

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's technical product data for air outlets and inlets including the following:
 - 1. Schedule of air outlets and inlets indicating drawing designation, room location, number furnished, model number, size, and accessories furnished.
 - 2. Data sheet for each type of air outlet and inlet, and accessory furnished; indicating construction, finish, and mounting details.
 - 3. Performance data for each type of air outlet and inlet furnished, including aspiration ability, temperature and velocity traverses; throw and drop; and noise criteria ratings. Indicate selections on data.
- B. Shop Drawings: Submit manufacturer's assembly-type shop drawing for each type of air outlet and inlet, indicating materials and methods of assembly of components.
- C. Maintenance Data: Submit maintenance data, including cleaning instructions for finishes, and spare parts lists. Include this data, product data, and shop drawings in maintenance manuals; in accordance with requirements of Division 1.

1.5 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver air outlets and inlets wrapped in factory-fabricated fiber-board type containers. Identify on outside of container type of outlet or inlet and location to be installed. Avoid crushing or bending and prevent dirt and debris from entering and settling in devices.
- B. Store air outlets and inlets in original cartons and protect from weather and construction work traffic. Where possible, store indoors; when necessary to store outdoors, store above grade and enclose with waterproof wrapping.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CEILING AIR DIFFUSERS

- A. General: Except as otherwise indicated, provide manufacturer's standard ceiling air diffusers where shown; of size, shape, capacity and type indicated; constructed of materials and components as indicated, and as required for complete installation.
- B. Performance: Provide ceiling air diffusers that have, as minimum, temperature and velocity

traverses, throw and drop, and noise criteria ratings for each size device as listed in manufacturer's current data.

- C. Ceiling Compatibility: Provide diffusers with border styles that are compatible with adjacent ceiling systems, and that are specifically manufactured to fit into ceiling module with accurate fit and adequate support. Refer to general construction drawings and specifications for types of ceiling systems which will contain each type of ceiling air diffuser.
- D. Types: Provide ceiling diffusers of type, capacity, and with accessories and finishes as listed on diffuser schedule. The following requirements shall apply to nomenclature indicated on schedule.

1. Diffuser Faces:

- a. Round (RD): Round housing, core of concentric rings, round duct connection.
- b. Square: Square housing, core of square concentric louvers, square or round duct connection.
- c. Rectangular: Rectangular housing, core of rectangular concentric louvers, square or round duct connection.
- d. Panel: Square or rectangular housing extended to form a panel to fit in ceiling system module, core of square or rectangular concentric louvers, square or round duct connection.
- e. Perforated: Round, square, or rectangular housing covered with removable perforated panel in frame. Conceal air pattern devices above panel.
- f. Linear: Extruded aluminum continuous slot, single or multiple.

2. Diffuser Mountings:

- a. Stepped-Down: Diffuser housing below ceiling with perimeter flange and gasket to seal against ceiling construction.
- b. Flush: Diffuser housing above ceiling surface with flush perimeter flange and gasket to seal against ceiling.
- c. Lay-In: Diffuser housing sized to fit between ceiling exposed suspension tee bars and rest on top surface of tee bar.

3. Diffuser Patterns:

- a. Fixed (FX): Fixed position core with concentric rings or louvers for radial air flow around entire perimeter of diffuser.

- b. 2 Position (2-P): Manual 2-position core with concentric rings or louvers, upper position for horizontal air flow, lower position for vertical air flow.
 - c. Adjustable (ADJ): Manual adjustable core with concentric rings or louvers, fully adjustable for horizontal to vertical air flow.
 - d. 1 Way (1-W): Fixed louver face for 1-direction air flow, direction indicated on drawings.
 - e. 2 Way (2-W): Fixed louver face for 2-direction air flow, directions indicated on drawings.
 - f. 3 Way (3-W): Fixed louver face for 3-direction air flow, directions indicated on drawings.
 - g. 4 Way (4-W): Fixed louver face for 4-direction air flow, directions indicated on drawings.
4. Diffuser Dampers:
- a. Opposed Blade (O-B): Adjustable opposed blade damper assembly, key operated from face of diffuser.
 - b. Butterfly (BTFY): Two semicircular flaps connected to linkage adjustable from face of diffuser with key, and with straightening grid.
 - c. Supply and Return (S & R): For supply and return diffusers, butterfly type damper in return neck, annular adjustable dampers in supply duct.
 - d. Fire Damper (F-D): Combination adjustable opposed blade damper and fusible link fire damper with UL approved link and assembly designed to meet requirements of NFPA 90A.
5. Diffuser Accessories:
- a. Equalizing Deflectors (E-D): Adjustable parallel blades in frame for straightening air flow.
 - b. Smudge Ring (S-R): Extension perimeter frame around diffuser, sized so induced air impinges on frame and not on ceiling.
 - c. Plaster Ring (P-R): Perimeter ring designed to act as a plaster stop and diffuser anchor.
 - d. Extractor (EXTR): Curved blades mounted on adjustable frame to produce air

scooping action in duct at diffuser take-off.

6. Diffuser Finishes:

- a. White Enamel (W-E): Semi-gloss white enamel prime finish.

2.2 WALL REGISTERS AND GRILLES

- A. General: Except as otherwise indicated, provide manufacturer's standard wall registers and grilles where shown; of size, shape, capacity and type indicated; constructed of materials and components as indicated, and as required for complete installation.
- B. Performance: Provide wall registers and grilles that have, as minimum, temperature and velocity traverses, throw and drop, and noise criteria ratings for each size device and listed in manufacturer's current data.
- C. Wall Compatibility: Provide registers and grilles with border styles that are compatible with adjacent wall systems, and that are specifically manufactured to fit into wall construction with accurate fit and adequate support. Refer to general construction drawings and specifications for types of wall construction which will contain each type of wall register and grille.
- D. Types: Provide wall registers and grilles of type, capacity, and with accessories and finishes as listed on register and grille schedule.

2.3 LOUVERS

- A. General: Except as otherwise indicated, provide manufacturer's standard louvers where shown; of size, shape, capacity and type indicated; constructed of materials and components as indicated, and as required for complete installation.
- B. Performance: Provide louvers that have minimum free area, and maximum pressure drop of each type as listed in manufacturer's current data, complying with louver schedule.
- C. Substrate Compatibility: Provide louvers with frame and sill styles that are compatible with adjacent substrate, and that are specifically manufactured to fit into construction openings with accurate fit and adequate support, for weatherproof installation. Refer to general construction drawings and specifications for types of substrate which will contain each type of louver.
- D. Materials: Construct of aluminum extrusions, ASTM B 221, Alloy 6063-T52. Weld units or use stainless steel fasteners.
- E. Louver Screens: On inside face of exterior louvers, provide 1/2" square mesh anodized

aluminum wire bird screens mounted in removable extruded aluminum frames.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSPECTION

- A. Examine areas and conditions under which air outlets and inlets are to be installed. Do not proceed with work until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install air outlets and inlets in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and in accordance with recognized industry practices to insure that products serve intended function.
- B. Coordinate with other work, including ductwork and duct accessories, as necessary to interface installation of air outlets and inlets with other work.
- C. Locate ceiling air diffusers, registers, and grilles, as indicated on general construction "Reflected Ceiling Plans". Unless otherwise indicated, locate units in center of acoustical ceiling module.

3.3 SPARE PARTS

- A. Furnish to Owner, with receipt, 3 operating keys for each type of air outlet and inlet that require them.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 235216 - CONDENSING BOILERS

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes gas-fired, fire-tube floor-mounted condensing boilers, trim, and accessories for generating hot water.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for boilers.
 - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
 - 1. Product data showing compliance with ASHRAE 90.1.
- C. Shop Drawings: For boilers, boiler trim, and accessories.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
 - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans and sections, drawn to scale and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved.
- B. Source quality-control reports.
- C. Field quality-control reports.
- D. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For boilers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of boilers that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period. Where "prorated" is indicated, the boiler manufacturer will cover the indicated percentage of cost of replacement parts. With "prorated" type, covered cost decreases as age of equipment increases.
 - 1. Warranty Period for Floor-Mounted Fire-Tube Condensing Boilers:
 - a. Heat Exchanger and Tank: Free from defects in material and workmanship.
 - b. Warranty Coverage: 1 year parts and labor; limited 25-year thermal shock warranty; limited 10-year primary heat exchanger warranty; limited 10-year secondary heat exchanger warranty

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. ASME Compliance: Fabricate and label boilers to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
- C. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Boilers shall have minimum efficiency in accordance with Table 6.8.1-6 and other requirements in Ch. 6 of ASHRAE/IES 90.1.
- D. DOE Compliance: Minimum efficiency shall comply with 10 CFR 431, Subpart E, Appendix N.
- E. Mounting Base: For securing boiler to concrete base.

2.2 FLOOR-MOUNTED, FORCED-DRAFT, FIRE-TUBE CONDENSING BOILERS

- A. Description: Factory-fabricated, -assembled, and -tested, fire-tube, forced-draft, condensing boiler with heat exchanger sealed pressure tight, built on a steel base, including insulated jacket; flue-gas vent; combustion-air intake connections; water

supply, return, and condensate drain connections; and controls. Units are to be for water-heating service only.

- B. Primary Heat Exchanger: Corrosion-resistant Type 316 stainless steel.
- C. Secondary Heat Exchanger: Corrosion-resistant Type 316 stainless steel.
- D. Combustion Chamber and Flue Pipes: Corrosion-resistant stainless steel.
- E. Pressure Vessel: Carbon steel with welded heads and tube connections.
- F. Burner: Natural gas, forced draft.
- G. Blower: Centrifugal fan to operate during each burner-firing sequence and to prepurge and postpurge the combustion chamber.
 - 1. Motors: Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
 - a. Motor Sizes: Large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
- H. Gas Train: Combination gas valve with manual shutoff and pressure regulator.
- I. Ignition: Direct-spark ignition or silicone carbide hot-surface ignition with 100 percent main-valve shutoff and electronic flame supervision.
- J. Casing:
 - 1. Jacket: Sheet metal, with snap-in or interlocking closures.
 - 2. Control Compartment Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1A.
 - 3. Finish: Powder-coated protective finish.
 - 4. Insulation: Minimum 2-inch-thick, mineral-fiber insulation surrounding the heat exchanger.
 - 5. Combustion-Air Connections: Inlet and vent duct collars.
- K. Capacities and Characteristics: Reference Plans

2.3 TRIM - FOR HOT-WATER BOILERS

- A. Aquastat Controllers: Operating, firing rate, and high limit with automatic reset.
- B. Safety Relief Valve: ASME rated.

- C. Pressure and Temperature Gauge: Minimum 3-1/2-inch-diameter, combination water-pressure and -temperature gauge. Gauges shall have operating-pressure and -temperature ranges, so normal operating range is about 50 percent of full range.
- D. High and low gas-pressure switches.
- E. Alarm bell with silence switch.
- F. Boiler Air Vent: Automatic.
- G. Drain Valve: Minimum NPS 3/4 hose-end gate valve.
- H. Circulation Pump: Nonoverloading, in-line pump with split-capacitor motor having thermal-overload protection and lubricated bearings; designed to operate at specified boiler pressures and temperatures.

2.4 CONTROLS

- A. Refer to Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC" and Section 230993.11 "Sequence of Operations for HVAC DDC."
- B. Burner Operating Controls: To maintain safe operating conditions, burner safety controls limit burner operation.
 - 1. High Cutoff: Automatic reset stops burner if operating conditions rise above maximum boiler design temperature.
 - 2. Low-Water Cutoff Switch: Electronic probe shall prevent burner operation on low water. Cutoff switch shall be automatic-reset type.
 - 3. Blocked Inlet Safety Switch: Manual-reset pressure switch factory mounted on boiler combustion-air inlet.
 - 4. Audible Alarm: Factory mounted on control panel with silence switch; shall sound alarm for above conditions.
- C. Building Automation System Interface: Factory install hardware and software to enable building automation system to monitor, control, and display boiler status and alarms.
 - 1. A BACnet communication interface with building automation system shall enable building automation system operator to remotely control and monitor the boiler from an operator workstation. All monitoring and control features, which are available at the local boiler control panel, shall also be available at the remote operator workstation through the building automation system.

2.5 ELECTRICAL POWER

- A. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Electrical devices and connections are shown on Drawings and specified in electrical Sections.

- B. Single-Point Field Power Connection: Factory-installed and -wired switches, motor controllers, transformers, and other electrical devices necessary shall provide a single-point field power connection to boiler.
 - 1. House in NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure.
 - 2. Wiring shall be numbered and color coded to match wiring diagram.
 - 3. Install factory wiring outside of an enclosure in a metal raceway.
 - 4. Provide branch power circuit to each motor and to controls with a disconnect switch or circuit breaker.
 - 5. Provide each motor with overcurrent protection.

2.6 VENTING KITS

- A. Kit: Complete system, ASTM A959, Type 29-4C stainless steel pipe, vent terminal, thimble, indoor plate, vent adapter, condensate trap and dilution tank, and sealant.
- B. Combustion-Air Intake: Complete system, stainless steel pipe, vent terminal with screen, inlet air coupling, and sealant.

2.7 CONDENSATE-NEUTRALIZATION UNITS

- A. Description: Factory-fabricated and -assembled condensate-neutralizing capsule assembly of corrosion-resistant plastic material with threaded or flanged inlet and outlet pipe connections. Device functions to prevent acidic condensate from damaging grain system. It is to be piped to receive acidic condensate discharged from condensing boiler and neutralize it by chemical reaction with replaceable neutralizing agent. Neutralized condensate is then piped to suitable drain.
- B. Capsule features:
 - 1. All corrosion-resistant material.
 - 2. Suitable for use on all natural gas and propane boilers.
 - 3. Includes initial charge of neutralizing agent.
 - 4. Neutralizing agent to be easily replaceable when exhausted.
 - 5. Inlet and outlet pipe connections.
- C. Capsule Configuration:
 - 1. Low-profile design for applications where boiler condensate drain is close to the floor.
 - 2. Easily removed and opened for neutralizing agent replacement.
 - 3. Multiple units may be used for larger capacity.

2.8 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. UL Compliance: Test gas-fired boilers having input of more than 400,000 Btu/h for compliance with UL 795. Boilers shall be listed and labeled by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. UL Compliance, Gas-Fired: Test gas-fired boilers for compliance with UL 2764. Boilers shall be listed and labeled by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Performance Testing: Test and label boilers for efficiency to comply with AHRI 1500.
- D. Burner and Hydrostatic Test: Factory adjust burner to eliminate excess oxygen, carbon dioxide, oxides of nitrogen emissions, and carbon monoxide in flue gas and to achieve combustion efficiency; perform hydrostatic test.
- E. Test and inspect factory-assembled boilers, before shipping, in accordance with 2017 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Factory test boilers for safety and functionality; fill boiler with water, and fire throughout firing range, to prove operation of all safety components.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for concrete equipment bases, anchor-bolt sizes and locations, and piping and electrical connections to verify actual locations, sizes, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Final boiler locations indicated on Drawings are approximate. Determine exact locations before roughing-in for piping and electrical connections.
- B. Examine mechanical spaces for suitable conditions where boilers will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 BOILER INSTALLATION

- A. Equipment Mounting:
 - 1. Install floor-mounted boilers on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s). Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
 - 2. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."

- B. Install gas-fired boilers according to NFPA 54.
- C. Assemble and install boiler trim.
- D. Install electrical devices furnished with boiler but not specified to be factory mounted.
- E. Install control wiring to field-mounted electrical devices.

3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for hydronic piping specified in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping."
- B. Connect piping to boilers, except safety relief valve connections, with flexible connectors of materials suitable for service. Flexible connectors and their installation are specified in Section 232116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties."
- C. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- D. When installing piping adjacent to boiler, allow space for service and maintenance of condensing boilers. Arrange piping for easy removal of condensing boilers.
- E. Install condensate drain piping to condensate-neutralization unit and from neutralization unit to nearest floor drain. Piping shall be at least full size of connection. Install piping with a minimum of 2 percent downward slope in direction of flow.
- F. Connect gas piping to boiler gas-train inlet with union. Piping shall be at least full size of gas-train connection. Provide a reducer if required.
- G. Connect hot-water piping to supply- and return-boiler tapplings with shutoff valve, and union or flange at each connection.
- H. Install piping from safety relief valves to nearest floor drain.

3.4 DUCT CONNECTIONS

- A. Boiler Venting:
 - 1. Install flue-venting kit and combustion-air intake.
 - 2. Comply with all boiler manufacturer's installation instructions.
 - 3. Utilize vent and intake duct material, size, and configuration as indicated in boiler manufacturer's instructions and to comply with UL 1738.
 - 4. Comply with all boiler manufacturer's installation instructions.
 - 5. Connect boiler vent full size to boiler connections.

3.5 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect wiring in accordance with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- C. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, according to NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
- D. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.
 - 1. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with a black background and engraved white letters at least 1/2 inch high.

3.6 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Connect control wiring in accordance with Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."
- C. Install nameplate for each control connection, indicating field control panel designation and I/O control designation feeding connection.
 - 1. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with a black background and engraved white letters at least 1/2 inch high.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Perform installation and startup checks in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. Leak Test: Hydrostatic test. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 3. Operational Test: Start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation. Adjust air-fuel ratio and combustion.
 - 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

- a. Check and adjust initial operating set points and high- and low-limit safety set points of fuel supply, water level, and water temperature.
 - b. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.
- C. Boiler will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- E. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

3.8 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain boilers. Refer to Section 017900 "Demonstration and Training." Video record the training sessions and provide electronic copy to Owner.
 - 1. Instructor shall be factory trained and certified.
 - 2. Provide not less than two hours of training.
 - 3. Train personnel in operation and maintenance and to obtain maximum efficiency in plant operation.
 - 4. Provide instructional videos showing general operation and maintenance that are coordinated with operation and maintenance manuals.
 - 5. Obtain Owner sign-off that training is complete.
 - 6. Owner training shall be held at Project site.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 237313.13 - INDOOR, BASIC AIR-HANDLING UNITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes factory-assembled, indoor air-handling units with limited features, including the following components and accessories:
 - 1. Casings.
 - 2. Fans, drives, and motors.
 - 3. Coils.
 - 4. Air filtration.
 - 5. Dampers.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each air-handling unit.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
 - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
 - 3. Include unit dimensions and weight.
 - 4. Include cabinet material, metal thickness, finishes, insulation, and accessories.
 - 5. Fans:
 - a. Include certified fan-performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
 - b. Include certified fan-sound power ratings.
 - c. Include fan construction and accessories.
 - d. Include motor ratings, electrical characteristics, and motor accessories.
 - 6. Include certified coil-performance ratings with system operating conditions indicated.
 - 7. Include filters with performance characteristics.
 - 8. Include dampers, including housings, linkages, and operators.

B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1. Product data showing compliance with ASHRAE 62.1.
2. Product Data: For air filtration performance.
3. Product Data: For adhesives, mastics, and sealants, indicating VOC content.
4. Laboratory Test Reports: For adhesives, mastics, and sealants, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.

C. Shop Drawings: For each type and configuration of indoor, basic, air-handling unit.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Detail fabrication and assembly of indoor, basic air-handling units, as well as procedures and diagrams.
4. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans and other details, or BIM model, drawn to scale, showing the items described in this Section, and coordinated with all building trades.
- B. Source quality-control reports.
- C. Startup service reports.
- D. Field quality-control reports.
- E. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air-handling units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 1. Filters: One set(s) for each air-handling unit.
 2. Gaskets: One set(s) for each access door.
 3. Fan Belts: One set(s) for each air-handling unit fan.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of indoor, basic, air-handling units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than one year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 90A for design, fabrication, and installation of air-handling units and components.
- C. ASHRAE 62.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."
- D. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."

2.2 CAPACITIES AND CHARACTERISTICS - Reference plans for additional information.

2.3 UNIT CASINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements for Casings;
 - 1. Forming: Form walls, roofs, and floors with at least two breaks at each joint.
 - 2. Joints: Sheet metal screws or pop rivets.
 - 3. Sealing: Seal all joints with water-resistant sealant. Hermetically seal at each corner and around entire perimeter.
 - 4. Base Rail:
 - a. Material: Galvanized steel.
 - b. Height: 8 inches
- B. Double-Wall Construction:

1. Outside Casing Wall: Galvanized steel, minimum 18 gauge thick, with manufacturer's standard finish.
 2. Inside Casing Wall: G90 galvanized steel,, minimum 18 gauge thick.
 3. Floor Plate: G90 galvanized steel, treadplate, minimum 18 gauge thick.
 4. Casing Insulation:
 - a. Materials: injected polyurethane foam insulation.
 - b. Casing Panel R-Value: Minimum R-13
 - c. Insulation Thickness: 1 inch.
 - d. Thermal Break: Provide continuity of insulation with no through-casing metal in casing walls, floors, or roofs of air-handling unit.
- C. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
- D. Static-Pressure Classifications: Reference drawings
- E. Panels and Doors:
1. Panels:
 - a. Fabrication: Formed and reinforced with same materials and insulation thickness as casing.
 - b. Fasteners: Two or more camlock type for panel lift-out operation. Arrangement shall allow panels to be opened against airflow.
 - c. Gasket: Neoprene, applied around entire perimeters of panel frames.
 - d. Size: Large enough to allow unobstructed access for inspection and maintenance of air-handling unit's internal components. At least 18 inches Insert dimension wide by full height of unit casing up to a maximum height of 72 inches.
 2. Doors:
 - a. Fabrication: Formed and reinforced with same materials and insulation thickness as casing.
 - b. Hinges: A minimum of two ball-bearing hinges or stainless-steel piano hinge and two wedge-lever-type latches, operable from inside and outside. Arrange doors to be opened against airflow. Provide safety latch retainers on doors so that doors do not open uncontrollably.
 - c. Gasket: Neoprene, applied around entire perimeters of frame.
 - d. Size: Large enough to allow for unobstructed access for inspection and maintenance of air-handling unit's internal components. At least 18 inches wide by full height of unit casing up to a maximum height of 60 inches.
 3. Locations and Applications:
 - a. Fan Section: Doors.

- b. Coil Section: Panels.
- c. Filter Section: Doors large enough to allow periodic removal and installation of filters.

F. Condensate Drain Pans:

- 1. Location: Each type of cooling coil.
- 2. Construction:
 - a. Double-wall, galvanized-steel or stainless-steel sheet.
- 3. Drain Connection:
 - a. Located at lowest point of pan and sized to prevent overflow. Terminate with threaded nipple on one end of pan.
 - b. Minimum Connection Size: NPS 1.5.
- 4. Slope: Minimum slope, to comply with ASHRAE 62.1, in at least two planes to collect condensate from cooling coils (including coil piping connections, coil headers, and return bends) and from humidifiers, and to direct water toward drain connection.
- 5. Length: Extend drain pan downstream from leaving face for distance to comply with ASHRAE 62.1.
- 6. Width: Entire width of water producing device.
- 7. Depth: A minimum of 2 inches deep.

2.4 FAN, DRIVE, AND MOTOR SECTION

- A. Fan and Drive Assemblies: Statically and dynamically balanced and designed for continuous operation at maximum-rated fan speed and motor horsepower.
- B. Fans: Centrifugal, galvanized steel; mounted on solid-steel shaft.
 - 1. Shafts: With field-adjustable alignment.
 - a. Turned, ground, and polished hot-rolled steel with keyway.
 - 2. Housings: Formed- and reinforced-steel panels to form curved scroll housings with shaped cutoff and spun-metal inlet bell.
 - a. Bracing: Steel angle or channel supports for mounting and supporting fan scroll, wheel, motor, and accessories.
 - 3. Housings, Plenum Fans: Steel frame and panel; fabricated without fan scroll and volute housing. Provide inlet screens for Type SWSI fans.
 - 4. Airfoil, Centrifugal Fan Wheels (Plenum Fan Wheels): Smooth-curved inlet flange, backplate, and hollow die-formed airfoil-shaped blades continuously

welded at tip flange and backplate; steel hub riveted to backplate and fastened to shaft with setscrews.

5. Mounting: For internal vibration isolation. Factory-mount fans with manufacturer's standard vibration isolation mounting devices having a minimum static deflection of 1 inch.
6. Shaft Lubrication Lines: Extended to a location outside the casing.
7. Flexible Connector: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip minimum 3-1/2 inches wide, attached to two strips of minimum 2-3/4-inch-wide by 0.028-inch-thick, galvanized-steel sheet.
 - a. Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric, double coated with neoprene. Fabrics, coatings, and adhesives shall comply with UL 181, Class 1.

C. Drive, Direct: Factory-mounted, direct drive.

D. Motors:

1. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
2. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
3. Enclosure Type: Totally enclosed, fan cooled.
4. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in electrical Sections.

E. Variable-Frequency Motor Controller: Serving each fan in fan array.

2.5 COIL SECTION

A. General Requirements for Coil Section:

1. Comply with AHRI 410.
2. Fabricate coil section to allow removal and replacement of coil for maintenance and to allow in-place access for service and maintenance of coil(s).
3. Coils shall not act as structural component of unit.

B. Cooling Coils:

1. Chilled-Water Coil: Self-draining Cleanable.
 - a. Tube Material: Copper.
 - b. Tube Thickness: 0.5 inches.
 - c. Fin Type: Plate.
 - d. Fin Material: Aluminum.
 - e. Fin Thickness: 0.0060 inches.
 - f. Headers:

- 1) Cast iron with drain and air vent tappings.
 - 2) Seamless copper tube with brazed joints, prime coated.
 - 3) Fabricated steel, with brazed joints, prime coated.
 - 4) Provide insulated cover to conceal exposed outside casings of headers.
- g. Frames: Channel frame, minimum 0.052-inch-thick galvanized steel.
- h. Coatings: None.
- i. Working-Pressure Ratings: 200 psig, 325 deg F.

2.6 AIR FILTRATION SECTION

A. Panel Filters:

1. Description: Pleated factory-fabricated, self-supported disposable air filters with holding frames.
2. Filter Unit Class: UL 900.
3. Media: Interlaced glass, synthetic, or cotton fibers coated with nonflammable adhesive and antimicrobial coating.
4. 4" pleated MERV 13 angle filter

B. Adhesive, Sustainability Projects: As recommended by air-filter manufacturer and with a VOC content of 80 g/L or less.

C. Side-Access Filter Mounting Frames:

1. Particulate Air Filter Frames: Match inner casing and outer casing material, and insulation thickness. Galvanized steel track.
 - a. Sealing: Incorporate positive-sealing device to ensure seal between gasketed material on channels to seal top and bottom of filter cartridge frames to prevent bypass of unfiltered air.

2.7 DAMPERS

A. Outdoor- and Return-Air Dampers: Low-leakage, double-skin, airfoil-blade, galvanized-steel dampers with compressible jamb seals and extruded-vinyl blade edge seals in opposed-blade arrangement with zinc-plated steel operating rods rotating in sintered bronze or nylon bearings mounted in a single frame, and with operating rods connected with a common linkage. Leakage rate shall not exceed 4 cfm/sq. ft. at 1-inch wg and 8 cfm/sq. ft. at 4-inch wg.

B. Electronic Damper Operators:

1. Direct-coupled type designed for minimum 60,000 full-stroke cycles at rated torque.

2. Electronic damper position indicator shall have visual scale indicating percent of travel and 2- to 10-V dc, feedback signal.
 3. Nonspring-Return Motors for Dampers Larger Than 25 Sq. Ft.: Size for running torque of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque of 300 in. x lbf.
 4. Spring-Return Motors for Dampers Larger Than 25 Sq. Ft.: Size for running and breakaway torque of 150 in. x lbf.
 5. Size dampers for running torque calculated as follows:
 - a. Parallel-Blade Damper with Edge Seals: 7 inch-lb/sq. ft. of damper.
 - b. Opposed-Blade Damper with Edge Seals: 5 inch-lb/sq. ft. of damper.
 - c. Parallel-Blade Damper without Edge Seals: 4 inch-lb/sq. ft. of damper.
 - d. Opposed-Blade Damper without Edge Seals: 3 inch-lb/sq. ft. of damper.
 - e. Dampers with 2- to 3-Inch wg of Pressure Drop or Face Velocities of 1000 to 2500 fpm: Increase running torque by 1.5.
 - f. Dampers with 3- to 4-Inch wg of Pressure Drop or Face Velocities of 2500 to 3000 fpm: Increase running torque by 2.0.
 6. Coupling: V-bolt and V-shaped, toothed cradle.
 7. Overload Protection: Electronic overload or digital rotation-sensing circuitry.
 8. Fail-Safe Operation: Mechanical, spring-return mechanism with external, manual gear release on nonspring-return actuators.
 9. Power Requirements (Two-Position Spring Return): 24 V dc.
 10. Power Requirements (Modulating): Maximum 10 VA at 24 V ac or 8 W at 24 V dc.
 11. Proportional Signal: 2 to 10 V dc or 4 to 20 mA, and 2- to 10-V dc position feedback signal.
 12. Temperature Rating: Minus 22 to plus 122 deg F.
- C. Mixing Section: Multiple-blade, air-mixer assembly located immediately downstream of mixing section.

2.8 MATERIALS

- A. Steel:
1. ASTM A36/A36M for carbon structural steel.
 2. ASTM A568/A568M for steel sheet.
- B. Stainless Steel:
1. Manufacturer's standard grade for casing.
 2. Manufacturer's standard type, ASTM A240/A240M for bare steel exposed to airstream or moisture.
- C. Galvanized Steel: ASTM A653/A653M.
- D. Aluminum: ASTM B209.

2.9 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. AHRI 430 Certification: Test, rate, and label air-handling units and their components in accordance with AHRI 430.
- B. AHRI 260 or AMCA 311 Sound Performance Rating Certification: Test, rate, and label in accordance with AHRI 260 or AMCA 311.
- C. Fan Energy Index (FEI): Test in accordance with AMCA 210 and rate in accordance with AMCA 99, AMCA 207, and AMCA 208.
- D. Fan Operating Limits: Classify fans in accordance with AMCA 99, Section 14.
- E. Water Coils: Factory tested to 300 psig according to AHRI 410 and ASHRAE 33.
- F. Steam Coils: Factory tested to 300 psig, and to 200 psig underwater, according to AHRI 410 and ASHRAE 33.
- G. Refrigerant Coils: Factory tested to minimum 450-psig internal pressure, and to minimum 300-psig internal pressure while underwater, according to AHRI 410 and ASHRAE 33.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine casing insulation materials and filter media before air-handling unit installation. Replace with new insulation materials and filter media that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- C. Examine roughing-in for steam, hydronic, and condensate drainage piping systems and electrical services to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Equipment Mounting:
 - 1. Install air-handling units on cast-in-place concrete equipment bases. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided. Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

2. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."
- B. Suspended Units: Suspend and brace units from structural-steel support frame using threaded steel rods and spring hangers. Coordinate sizes and locations of structural-steel support members with actual equipment provided. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."
- C. Arrange installation of units to provide access space around air-handling units for service and maintenance.
- D. Do not operate fan system until filters (temporary or permanent) are in place. Replace temporary filters used during construction and testing with new, clean filters.
- E. Connect duct to air-handling units with flexible connections. Comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."

3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where installing piping adjacent to air-handling unit, allow for service and maintenance.
- C. Connect piping to air-handling units mounted on vibration isolators with flexible connectors.
- D. Connect condensate drain pans using size indicated on drawings, ASTM B88, Type M copper tubing. Extend to nearest equipment or floor drain. Construct deep trap at connection to drain pan and install cleanouts at changes in direction.
- E. Hot- and Chilled-Water Piping: Comply with applicable requirements in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping" and Section 232116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties." Install shutoff valve and union or flange at each coil supply connection. Install balancing valve and union or flange at each coil return connection.
- F. Refrigerant Piping: Comply with applicable requirements in Section 232300 "Refrigerant Piping." Install shutoff valve and union or flange at each supply and return connection.

3.4 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

- B. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- C. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, according to NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
- D. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.
 - 1. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with a black background and engraved white letters at least 1/2 inch high.

3.5 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Connect control wiring according to Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."

3.6 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
 - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. Verify that shipping, blocking, and bracing are removed.
 - 3. Verify that unit is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections to piping, ducts, and electrical systems are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed in motors, controllers, and switches.
 - 4. Verify proper motor rotation direction, free fan wheel rotation, and smooth bearing operations. Reconnect fan drive system, align belts, and install belt guards.
 - 5. Verify that bearings, pulleys, belts, and other moving parts are lubricated with factory-recommended lubricants.
 - 6. Verify that outdoor- and return-air mixing dampers open and close, and maintain minimum outdoor-air setting.
 - 7. Comb coil fins for parallel orientation.
 - 8. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed for electric coils.
 - 9. Install new, clean filters.
 - 10. Verify that manual and automatic volume control and fire and smoke dampers in connected duct systems are in fully open position.
- B. Starting procedures for air-handling units include the following:

1. Energize motor; verify proper operation of motor, drive system, and fan wheel. Adjust fan to indicated rpm. Replace fan and motor pulleys as required to achieve design conditions.
2. Measure and record motor electrical values for voltage and amperage.
3. Manually operate dampers from fully closed to fully open position and record fan performance.

3.7 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
- B. Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for air-handling system testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- C. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

3.8 CLEANING

- A. After completing system installation and testing, adjusting, and balancing of air-handling unit and air-distribution systems, and after completing startup service, clean air-handling units internally to remove foreign material and construction dirt and dust. Clean fan wheels, cabinets, dampers, coils, and filter housings, and install new, clean filters.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
 1. Leak Test: After installation, fill water and steam coils with water, and test coils and connections for leaks.
 2. Charge refrigerant coils with refrigerant and test for leaks.
 3. Fan Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
 4. Air-handling unit and components will be considered defective if unit or components do not pass tests and inspections.
 5. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.10 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain air-handling units.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 238126 - SPLIT-SYSTEM AIR-CONDITIONERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes split-system air-conditioning and heat-pump units consisting of separate evaporator-fan and compressor-condenser components.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories. Include performance data in terms of capacities, outlet velocities, static pressures, sound power characteristics, motor requirements, and electrical characteristics.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied color finishes.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.
- B. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For split-system air-conditioning units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Filters: One set(s) for each air-handling unit.
 - 2. Gaskets: One set(s) for each access door.
 - 3. Fan Belts: One set(s) for each air-handling unit fan.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. ASHRAE Compliance:
 - 1. Fabricate and label refrigeration system to comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Standard for Refrigeration Systems."
 - 2. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 4 - "Outdoor Air Quality," Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment," Section 6 - "Procedures," and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-up."
- C. ASHRAE/IES Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1.

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- B. For units located on roof: Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations with actual equipment provided.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of split-system air-conditioning units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period:
 - a. For Compressor: Five year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.
 - b. For Parts: One year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.
 - c. For Labor: One year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INDOOR UNITS 5 TONS OR LESS

A. Concealed Evaporator-Fan Components:

1. Chassis: Galvanized steel with flanged edges, removable panels for servicing, and insulation on back of panel.
2. Insulation: Faced, glass-fiber duct liner.
3. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins and thermal-expansion valve. Comply with ARI 206/110.
4. Electric Coil: Helical, nickel-chrome, resistance-wire heating elements; with refractory ceramic support bushings, automatic-reset thermal cutout, built-in magnetic contactors, manual-reset thermal cutout, airflow proving device, and one-time fuses in terminal box for overcurrent protection.
5. Fan: Forward-curved, double-width wheel of galvanized steel; directly connected to motor.
6. Fan Motors:
 - a. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
 - b. Multitapped, multispeed with internal thermal protection and permanent lubrication.
 - c. Wiring Terminations: Connect motor to chassis wiring with plug connection.
7. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
8. Filters: Permanent, cleanable.
9. Condensate Drain Pans:
 - a. Fabricated with minimum one percent slope in at least two planes to collect condensate from cooling coils (including coil piping connections, coil headers, and return bends) and humidifiers, and to direct water toward drain connection.
 - 1) Length: Extend drain pan downstream from leaving face to comply with ASHRAE 62.1.
 - 2) Depth: A minimum of 2 inches deep.

B. Floor-Mounted, Evaporator-Fan Components:

1. Cabinet: Enameled steel with removable panels on front and ends in color selected by Architect.
 - a. Insulation: Faced, glass-fiber duct liner.

- b. Drain Pans: Galvanized steel, with connection for drain; insulated.
- 2. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins and thermal-expansion valve. Comply with ARI 206/110.
- 3. Electric Coil: Helical, nickel-chrome, resistance-wire heating elements; with refractory ceramic support bushings, automatic-reset thermal cutout, built-in magnetic contactors, manual-reset thermal cutout, airflow proving device, and one-time fuses in terminal box for overcurrent protection.
- 4. Fan: Direct drive, centrifugal.
- 5. Fan Motors:
 - a. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
 - b. Multitapped, multispeed with internal thermal protection and permanent lubrication.
- 6. Air Filtration Section:
 - a. General Requirements for Air Filtration Section:
 - 1) Comply with NFPA 90A.
 - 2) Minimum MERV according to ASHRAE 52.2.
 - 3) Filter-Holding Frames: Arranged for flat or angular orientation, with access doors on both sides of unit. Filters shall be removable from one side or lifted out from access plenum.
 - b. Filters: Reference plans for MERV requirements, filters, etc.

2.2 OUTDOOR UNITS 5 TONS OR LESS

A. Air-Cooled, Compressor-Condenser Components:

- 1. Casing: Steel, finished with baked enamel in color selected by Architect, with removable panels for access to controls, weep holes for water drainage, and mounting holes in base. Provide brass service valves, fittings, and gage ports on exterior of casing.
- 2. Compressor: Hermetically sealed with crankcase heater and mounted on vibration isolation device. Compressor motor shall have thermal- and current-sensitive overload devices, start capacitor, relay, and contactor.
 - a. Compressor Type: Scroll.
 - b. Two-speed compressor motor with manual-reset high-pressure switch and automatic-reset low-pressure switch.
 - c. Refrigerant: R-410A.
 - d. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins and liquid subcooler. Comply with ARI 206/110.

3. Heat-Pump Components: Reversing valve and low-temperature-air cutoff thermostat.
4. Fan: Aluminum-propeller type, directly connected to motor.
5. Motor: Permanently lubricated, with integral thermal-overload protection.
6. Low Ambient Kit: Permits operation down to 0 deg F.
7. Mounting Base: Polyethylene.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Control equipment and sequence of operation are specified in Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC" and Section 230993.11 "Sequence of Operations for HVAC DDC."
- B. Refrigerant Line Kits: Soft-annealed copper suction and liquid lines factory cleaned, dried, pressurized, and sealed; factory-insulated suction line with flared fittings at both ends.
- C. Drain Hose: For condensate.

2.4 CAPACITIES AND CHARACTERISTICS - REFERENCE PLANS

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install units level and plumb.
- B. Install evaporator-fan components using manufacturer's standard mounting devices securely fastened to building structure.
- C. Install roof-mounted, compressor-condenser components on equipment supports specified in Section 077200 "Roof Accessories." Anchor units to supports with removable, cadmium-plated fasteners.
- D. Equipment Mounting:
 1. Install ground-mounted, compressor-condenser components on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s). Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- E. Install refrigerant piping to allow access to unit.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where piping is installed adjacent to unit, allow space for service and maintenance of unit.
- C. Duct Connections: Duct installation requirements are specified in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts." Drawings indicate the general arrangement of ducts. Connect supply and return ducts to split-system air-conditioning units with flexible duct connectors. Flexible duct connectors are specified in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
 - 3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- C. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.4 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Perform startup service.
 - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain units. Provide video of owner training on DVD.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 238239.19 - WALL AND CEILING UNIT HEATERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes wall and ceiling heaters with propeller fans and electric-resistance heating coils.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details.
 - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 3. Include details of anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment.
 - 4. Include equipment schedules to indicate rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
 - 5. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For wall and ceiling unit heaters to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 DESCRIPTION

- A. Assembly including chassis, electric heating coil, fan, motor, and controls. Comply with UL 2021.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.2 CABINET

- A. Front Panel: Stamped-steel louver, with removable panels fastened with tamperproof fasteners.
- B. Finish: Baked enamel over baked-on primer with manufacturer's standard color selected by Architect, applied to factory-assembled and -tested wall and ceiling heaters before shipping.
- C. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
- D. Surface-Mounted Cabinet Enclosure: Steel with finish to match cabinet.

2.3 COIL

- A. Electric-Resistance Heating Coil: Nickel-chromium heating wire, free from expansion noise and 60-Hz hum, embedded in magnesium oxide refractory and sealed in corrosion-resistant metallic sheath. Terminate elements in stainless-steel, machine-staked terminals secured with stainless-steel hardware, and limit controls for high-temperature protection.

2.4 FAN AND MOTOR

- A. Fan: Aluminum propeller directly connected to motor.
- B. Motor: Permanently lubricated. Comply with requirements in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

2.5 CONTROLS

- A. Controls: Built-in tamper proof thermostat

2.6 CAPACITIES AND CHARACTERISTICS - Reference drawings

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas to receive wall and ceiling unit heaters for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for electrical connections to verify actual locations before unit-heater installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install wall and ceiling unit heaters to comply with NFPA 90A.
- B. Install wall and ceiling unit heaters level and plumb.
- C. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- D. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 26 0513 – MEDIUM VOLTAGE CABLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes cables and related splices, terminations and accessories for medium voltage electrical distribution systems.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. General: Submit the following:
 - 1. Product data for cables and cable accessories, including splices and terminations.
 - 2. Product certificate signed by manufacturer that its products comply with the specified requirements.
 - 3. Product Test Reports: Certified reports of manufacturers' design and production tests indicating compliance of cable and accessories with referenced standards.
 - 4. Field test reports indicating and interpreting test results relative to compliance with performance requirements specified. Include certified copies of field test reports.
 - 5. Maintenance data for cables and accessories to include in the "Operating and Maintenance Manual".
 - a. Include recommended periodic tests of cables in service.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Engage an experienced and certified splicer to install, splice and terminate medium-voltage cable.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Firm experienced in manufacturing medium-voltage cable and accessories similar to those indicated for this Project, with a record of successful in-service performance.
- C. Testing Firm Qualifications: In addition to the on-site testing requirements specified in Division 1 Section "Quality Control Services", an independent testing firm shall meet

OSHA criteria for accreditation of testing laboratories, Title 29, Part 1907, or shall be a full member company of the International Electrical Testing Association (NETA).

- D. Comply with NFPA 70 “National Electrical Code” for components and installation.
- E. Comply with IEEE C2 “National Electrical Safety Code” for components and installation.
- F. Listing and Labeling: Provide products specified in this Section that are listed and labeled.
 - 1. The Terms “Listed and Labeled”: As defined in the “National Electrical Code”, Article 100.
 - 2. Listing and Labeling Agency Qualifications: A “Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory” (NRTL) as defined in OSHA Regulation 1910. 7.
- G. Single-Source Responsibility: All medium-voltage cable shall be the product of a single manufacturer.
- H. NEMA/ CEA Compliance:

UL Std.	1072	Power Cables
NEMA Std.	WC-7 and	Cross-linked thermosetting polyethylene insulated wire cable
NEMA Std.	WC-8	Ethylene-Propylene rubber insulated wire and cable.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver medium-voltage cable on factory reels conforming to NEMA WC 26.
- B. Store cables on reels on elevated platforms in a dry location.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CABLES

- A. Type: MV-90.
- B. Conductor: Copper
- C. Conductor Stranding: Compressed concentric round for copper conductors.
- D. Conductor Stranding: Class B.

- E. Insulation: Ethylene propylene rubber (EPR) conforming to NEMA WC 8 (ICEA S-68-516)
- F. Voltage Rating: 15 kV.
- G. Insulation Thickness: 133 percent insulation level.
- H. Shielding: Copper tape, helically applied over semiconducting insulation shield.
- I. Jacket: Cross-linked Polyethylene, flame retardant

2.2 SPLICE KITS

- A. Connectors: IEEE 404, compression type, as recommend by cable or splicing kit manufacturer for the application.
- B. Splicing Products: As recommended in writing by the splicing kit manufacturer for the specific sizes, ratings and configurations of cable conductors and splices specified. Include all components required for complete splice, with detailed instructions.
 - 1. Combination tape and cold-shrink rubber sleeve kit with re-jacketing by cast-epoxy-resin encasement or other waterproof, abrasion-resistant material.
 - 2. Premolded ethylene propylene diene monomer (EDPM) splicing body kit with cable joint sealed by interference fit of mating parts cable.

2.3 SOLID TERMINATIONS

- A. Multi-conductor Cable Sheath Seals: Type recommended by the seal manufacturer for the type of cable and installation conditions, including orientation.
 - 1. Cold-shrink sheath seal kit with preformed sleeve openings sized for cable and insulated conductors.
 - 2. Heat-shrinkable sheath seal kit with phase and ground conductor re-jacketing tubes, cable end sealing boot, and sealing plugs for unused ground wire openings in boot.
 - 3. Cast-epoxy-resin sheath seal kit with wraparound mold and packaged 2-part epoxy resin casting material.
- B. Single Conductor Terminals: Comply with IEEE Standard 48, as indicated. Insulation class equivalent to that of the cable. Terminations for shielded cables include a shield grounding strap.
 - 1. Class 1 Termination for Shielded Cable: Modular type, furnished as a kit, with stress-relief tube, multiple molded silicone rubber insulator modules, shield ground strap and compression-type connector.

- C. Termination for Nonshielded Cable: Kit with compression-type connector. Include silicone rubber tape, cold-shrink rubber sleeve or heat-shrink plastic sleeve moisture seal for end of insulation whether or not supplied with kits.

2.4 ARC-PROOFING MATERIALS

- A. Tape for First Course on Metal Objects: 10-mil (250-micron) –thick, corrosion-protective, moisture-resistant PVC pipe-wrapping tape.
- B. Arc-Proofing Tape: NRTL-listed fireproofing tape, flexible, conformable, intumescent to 0.3 inch (8mm) thick and compatible with the cable jacket on which used.
- C. Glass Cloth Tape: Pressure-sensitive adhesive type, ½ inch (13mm) wide.

2.5 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Test and inspect cables according to NEMA WC 7 and NEMA WC 8 before shipping.
- B. Test strand-filled cables for water penetration resistance according to ICEA T-31-610, using a test pressure of 5 psig.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine raceway and pullbox system to receive medium-voltage cables for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the cable. Check bending radii of raceway ells and other fittings for compliance with NEC requirements. Inspect space availability in switchgear termination compartments for adequate dimensional conditions for proper installation of termination and connection devices. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install medium-voltage cable as indicated, according to manufacturer's written instructions and IEEE 576.
- B. Pull conductors simultaneously where more than one cable is indicated in same raceway. Use NRTL-listed and manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant where necessary. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values.

- C. Use pulling means including, fish tape, cable, rope and basket-weave wire/ cable grips that will not damage cables or raceways. Do not use rope hitches for pulling attachment to cable.
- D. Install exposed cable and perpendicular to surfaces of exposed structural members and follow surface contours where possible.
- E. Install direct buried cable on a leveled and tamped 3-inch (75mm) bed of clean sand at the bottom of trench. Install “buried cable” warning tape 12 inches (305mm) above cable. Separate cables crossing other cables or piping from those items by a minimum of 4 inches (100mm) of tamped earth. Install permanent markers at ends of cable runs, changes in direction and buried splices.
- F. In manholes, handholes, pull boxes, junction boxes and cable vaults, train cables around walls by the longest route from entry to exit and support cables at intervals adequate to prevent sag.
- G. Install splices at pull points and elsewhere as indicated using standard kit. Conform to kit manufacturer’s written instructions.
- H. Install terminations at ends of conductors and seal multi-conductor cable ends with stand kits. Conform to manufacturer’s written instructions. Comply with classes of terminations indicated.
- I. Arc-Proofing: Arc-proof medium-voltage cable at locations not protected by conduit, cable tray, direct burial or termination materials except where indicated. Apply as follows and as recommended by the manufacturer of the arc-proofing.
 - 1. Clean cable sheath.
 - 2. Wrap metallic cable components with 10-mil (250-icron) pipe wrapping tape.
 - 3. Smooth surface contours with electrical insulation putty.
 - 4. Apply arc-proofing tape with 1-inch (25mm) –wide bands of half-lapped adhesive glass-cloth tape 2 inches (50mm) on center.

3.3 GROUNDING

- A. Ground shields of shielded cable at terminations, splices and separable insulated connectors. Ground metal bodies of terminators, splices, cable and separable insulated connector fittings, and hardware according to manufacturer’s written instructions.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify cable in accordance with Division 26 Section “Basic Electrical Materials and Methods”.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing: Upon installation of medium-voltage cable and before electrical circuitry has been energized, demonstrate product capability and compliance with requirements.
 - 1. Procedures: Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Standard ATS, Section 7.3.2. Certify compliance with test parameters.
- B. Submit written reports of test results to engineer for review and approval.
- C. Correct non-complying materials and devices at site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, remove and replace with new materials/ devices and retest until acceptable results are obtained.

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to Manufacturer and Installer, to prevent entrance of moisture into the cable and ensure that medium-voltage cable is without damage or deterioration at Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 26 0513

SECTION 26 0518 - BASIC ELECTRICAL MATERIALS AND METHODS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Supporting devices for electrical components.
 - 2. Electrical identification.
 - 3. Electricity-metering components.
 - 4. Concrete equipment bases.
 - 5. Electrical demolition.
 - 6. Cutting and patching for electrical construction.
 - 7. Touchup painting.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate chases, slots, inserts, sleeves, and openings with general construction work and arrange in building structure during progress of construction to facilitate the electrical installations that follow.
 - 1. Set inserts and sleeves in poured-in-place concrete, masonry work, and other structural components as they are constructed.
- B. Sequence, coordinate, and integrate installing electrical materials and equipment for efficient flow of the Work. Coordinate installing large equipment requiring positioning before closing in the building.

- C. Coordinate electrical service connections to components furnished by utility companies.
 - 1. Coordinate installation and connection of exterior underground and overhead utilities and services, including provision for electricity-metering components.
 - 2. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction and of utility company providing electrical power and other services.
- D. Coordinate location of access panels and doors for electrical items that are concealed by finished surfaces. Access doors and panels are specified in Division 8 Section "Access Doors."
- E. Where electrical identification devices are applied to field-finished surfaces, coordinate installation of identification devices with completion of finished surface.
- F. Where electrical identification markings and devices will be concealed by acoustical ceilings and similar finishes, coordinate installation of these items before ceiling installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SUPPORTING DEVICES

- A. Material: Cold-formed steel, with corrosion-resistant coating acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Metal Items for Use Outdoors or in Damp Locations: Hot-dip galvanized steel.
- C. Slotted-Steel Channel Supports: Flange edges turned toward web, and 9/16-inch- (14-mm-) diameter slotted holes at a maximum of 2 inches (50 mm) o.c., in webs.
 - 1. Channel Thickness: Selected to suit structural loading.
 - 2. Fittings and Accessories: Products of the same manufacturer as channel supports.
- D. Raceway and Cable Supports: Manufactured clevis hangers, riser clamps, straps, threaded C-clamps with retainers, ceiling trapeze hangers, wall brackets, and spring-steel clamps or click-type hangers.
- E. Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53, Type E, Grade A, Schedule 40, galvanized steel, plain ends.
- F. Cable Supports for Vertical Conduit: Factory-fabricated assembly consisting of threaded body and insulating wedging plug for nonarmored electrical cables in riser conduits. Plugs have number and size of conductor gripping holes as required to suit individual risers. Body constructed of malleable-iron casting with hot-dip galvanized finish.
- G. Expansion Anchors: Carbon-steel wedge or sleeve type.

- H. Toggle Bolts: All-steel springhead type.
- I. Powder-Driven Threaded Studs: Heat-treated steel.

2.2 ELECTRICAL IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identification Devices: A single type of identification product for each application category. Use colors prescribed by ANSI A13.1, NFPA 70, and these Specifications.
- B. Underground Warning Tape: Permanent, bright-colored, continuous-printed, vinyl tape with the following features:
 - 1. Not less than 6 inches wide by 4 mils thick (150 mm wide by 0.102 mm thick).
 - 2. Compounded for permanent direct-burial service.
 - 3. Embedded continuous metallic strip or core.
 - 4. Printed legend that indicates type of underground line.
- C. Tape Markers for Wire: Vinyl or vinyl-cloth, self-adhesive, wraparound type with pre-printed numbers and letters.
- D. Color-Coding Cable Ties: Type 6/6 nylon, self-locking type. Colors to suit coding scheme.
- E. Engraved-Plastic Labels, Signs, and Instruction Plates: Engraving stock, melamine plastic laminate punched or drilled for mechanical fasteners 1/16-inch (1.6-mm) minimum thickness for signs up to 20 sq. in. (129 sq. cm) and 1/8-inch (3.2-mm) minimum thickness for larger sizes. Engraved legend in black letters on white background.
- F. Interior Warning and Caution Signs: Comply with 29 CFR, Chapter XVII, Part 1910.145. Preprinted, aluminum, baked-enamel-finish signs, punched or drilled for mechanical fasteners, with colors, legend, and size appropriate to the application.
- G. Exterior Warning and Caution Signs: Comply with 29 CFR, Chapter XVII, Part 1910.145. Weather-resistant, nonfading, preprinted, cellulose-acetate butyrate signs with 0.0396-inch (1-mm), galvanized-steel backing, with colors, legend, and size appropriate to the application. 1/4-inch (6-mm) grommets in corners for mounting.
- H. Fasteners for Nameplates and Signs: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or No. 10/32 stainless-steel machine screws with nuts and flat and lock washers.

2.3 EQUIPMENT FOR ELECTRICITY METERING

- A. Meter: Comply with base requirements. Meter shall have remote monitoring capabilities and shall be OPC compliant with pulse output.

2.4 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Concrete Forms and Reinforcement Materials: As specified in Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- B. Concrete: **3000-psi (20.7-MPa)**, 28-day compressive strength as specified in Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

2.5 TOUCHUP PAINT

- A. For Equipment: Equipment manufacturer's paint selected to match installed equipment finish.
- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Zinc-rich paint recommended by item manufacturer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION

- A. Headroom Maintenance: If mounting heights or other location criteria are not indicated, arrange and install components and equipment to provide the maximum possible headroom.
- B. Materials and Components: Install level, plumb, and parallel and perpendicular to other building systems and components, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Equipment: Install to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components. Connect for ease of disconnecting, with minimum interference with other installations.
- D. Right of Way: Give to raceways and piping systems installed at a required slope.

3.2 WIRING INSTALLATION

- A. Install splices and taps that are compatible with conductor material and that possess equivalent or better mechanical strength and insulation ratings than unspliced conductors.
- B. Install wiring at outlets with at least **12 inches (300 mm)** of slack conductor at each outlet.
- C. Connect outlet and component connections to wiring systems and to ground. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals, according to manufacturer's published torque-

tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A.

3.3 ELECTRICAL SUPPORTING DEVICE APPLICATION

- A. Damp Locations and Outdoors: Hot-dip galvanized materials or nonmetallic, U-channel system components.
- B. Dry Locations: Steel materials.
- C. Support Clamps for PVC Raceways: Click-type clamp system.
- D. Selection of Supports: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Strength of Supports: Adequate to carry present and future loads, times a safety factor of at least four; minimum of 200-lb (90-kg) design load.

3.4 SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Install support devices to securely and permanently fasten and support electrical components.
- B. Install individual and multiple raceway hangers and riser clamps to support raceways. Provide U-bolts, clamps, attachments, and other hardware necessary for hanger assemblies and for securing hanger rods and conduits.
- C. Support parallel runs of horizontal raceways together on trapeze- or bracket-type hangers.
- D. Size supports for multiple raceway installations so capacity can be increased by a 25 percent minimum in the future.
- E. Support individual horizontal raceways with separate, malleable-iron pipe hangers or clamps.
- F. Install 1/4-inch- (6-mm-) diameter or larger threaded steel hanger rods, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Spring-steel fasteners specifically designed for supporting single conduits or tubing may be used instead of malleable-iron hangers for 3/4-inch and smaller raceways serving lighting and receptacle branch circuits above suspended ceilings and for fastening raceways to slotted channel and angle supports.
- H. Arrange supports in vertical runs so the weight of raceways and enclosed conductors is carried entirely by raceway supports, with no weight load on raceway terminals.

- I. Simultaneously install vertical conductor supports with conductors.
- J. Separately support cast boxes that are threaded to raceways and used for fixture support. Support sheet-metal boxes directly from the building structure or by bar hangers. If bar hangers are used, attach bar to raceways on opposite sides of the box and support the raceway with an approved fastener not more than **24 inches (610 mm)** from the box.
- K. Install metal channel racks for mounting cabinets, panelboards, disconnect switches, control enclosures, pull and junction boxes, transformers, and other devices unless components are mounted directly to structural elements of adequate strength.
- L. Install sleeves for cable and raceway penetrations of concrete slabs and walls unless core-drilled holes are used. Install sleeves for cable and raceway penetrations of masonry and fire-rated gypsum walls and of all other fire-rated floor and wall assemblies. Install sleeves during erection of concrete and masonry walls.
- M. Securely fasten electrical items and their supports to the building structure, unless otherwise indicated. Perform fastening according to the following unless other fastening methods are indicated:
 - 1. Wood: Fasten with wood screws or screw-type nails.
 - 2. Masonry: Toggle bolts on hollow masonry units and expansion bolts on solid masonry units.
 - 3. New Concrete: Concrete inserts with machine screws and bolts.
 - 4. Existing Concrete: Expansion bolts.
 - 5. Instead of expansion bolts, threaded studs driven by a powder charge and provided with lock washers may be used in existing concrete.
 - 6. Steel: Welded threaded studs or spring-tension clamps on steel.
 - a. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1.
 - 7. Welding to steel structure may be used only for threaded studs, not for conduits, pipe straps, or other items.
 - 8. Light Steel: Sheet-metal screws.
 - 9. Fasteners: Select so the load applied to each fastener does not exceed 25 percent of its proof-test load.

3.5 IDENTIFICATION MATERIALS AND DEVICES

- A. Install at locations for most convenient viewing without interference with operation and maintenance of equipment.
- B. Coordinate names, abbreviations, colors, and other designations used for electrical identification with corresponding designations indicated in the Contract Documents or required by codes and standards. Use consistent designations throughout Project.
- C. Self-Adhesive Identification Products: Clean surfaces before applying.

- D. Tag and label circuits designated to be extended in the future. Identify source and circuit numbers in each cabinet, pull and junction box, and outlet box. Color-coding may be used for voltage and phase identification.
- E. Install continuous underground plastic markers during trench backfilling, for exterior underground power, control, signal, and communication lines located directly above power and communication lines. Locate **6 to 8 inches (150 to 200 mm)** below finished grade. If width of multiple lines installed in a common trench or concrete envelope does not exceed **16 inches (400 mm)**, overall, use a single line marker.
- F. Install warning, caution, and instruction signs where required to comply with 29 CFR, Chapter XVII, Part 1910.145, and where needed to ensure safe operation and maintenance of electrical systems and of items to which they connect. Install engraved plastic-laminated instruction signs with approved legend where instructions are needed for system or equipment operation. Install metal-backed butyrate signs for outdoor items.

3.6 ELECTRICITY-METERING EQUIPMENT

- A. Install equipment according to base requirements. Provide grounding and conduits as required by the base.

3.7 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Apply firestopping to cable and raceway penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to achieve fire-resistance rating of the assembly. The firestopping shall be made in accordance with a UL listed assembly.

3.8 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than **4 inches (100 mm)** larger, in both directions, than supported unit. Follow supported equipment manufacturer's anchorage recommendations and setting templates for anchor-bolt and tie locations, unless otherwise indicated. Use **3000-psi (20.7-MPa)**, 28-day compressive-strength concrete and reinforcement as specified in Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

3.9 DEMOLITION

- A. Protect existing electrical equipment and installations indicated to remain. If damaged or disturbed in the course of the Work, remove damaged portions and install new products of equal capacity, quality, and functionality.
- B. Accessible Work: Remove exposed electrical equipment and installations, indicated to be demolished, in their entirety.

- C. Abandoned Work: Cut and remove buried raceway and wiring, indicated to be abandoned in place, **2 inches (50 mm)** below the surface of adjacent construction. Cap raceways and patch surface to match existing finish.
- D. Remove demolished material from Project site.
- E. Remove, store, clean, reinstall, reconnect, and make operational components indicated for relocation.

3.10 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. Cut, channel, chase, and drill floors, walls, partitions, ceilings, and other surfaces required to permit electrical installations. Perform cutting by skilled mechanics of trades involved.
- B. Repair and refinish disturbed finish materials and other surfaces to match adjacent undisturbed surfaces. Install new fireproofing where existing firestopping has been disturbed. Repair and refinish materials and other surfaces by skilled mechanics of trades involved.

3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspect installed components for damage and faulty work, including the following:
 - 1. Supporting devices for electrical components.
 - 2. Electrical identification.
 - 3. Electricity-metering components.
 - 4. Concrete bases.
 - 5. Electrical demolition.
 - 6. Cutting and patching for electrical construction.
 - 7. Touchup painting.

3.12 REFINISHING AND TOUCHUP PAINTING

- A. Refinish and touch up paint.
 - 1. Clean damaged and disturbed areas and apply primer, intermediate, and finish coats to suit the degree of damage at each location.
 - 2. Follow paint manufacturer's written instructions for surface preparation and for timing and application of successive coats.
 - 3. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.
 - 4. Repair damage to PVC or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.

3.13 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. On completion of installation, including outlets, fittings, and devices, inspect exposed finish. Remove burrs, dirt, paint spots, and construction debris.
- B. Protect equipment and installations and maintain conditions to ensure that coatings, finishes, and cabinets are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 26 0518

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 26 0519 - CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes building wires and cables and associated connectors, splices, and terminations for wiring systems rated 600 V and less.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Field Test Reports: Indicate and interpret test results for compliance with performance requirements.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Listing and Labeling: Provide wires and cables specified in this Section that are listed and labeled.
 - 1. The Terms "Listed" and "Labeled": As defined in NFPA 70, Article 100.
 - 2. Listing and Labeling Agency Qualifications: A "Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory" as defined in OSHA Regulation 1910.7.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver wires and cables according to NEMA WC 26.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of cables with other installations.
- B. Revise locations and elevations from those indicated, as required to suit field conditions and as approved by Architect.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 BUILDING WIRES AND CABLES

- A. UL-listed building wires and cables with conductor material, insulation type, cable construction, and rating as specified in Part 3 "Wire and Insulation Applications" Article.
- B. Rubber Insulation Material: Comply with NEMA WC 3.
- C. Thermoplastic Insulation Material: Comply with NEMA WC 5.
- D. Cross-Linked Polyethylene Insulation Material: Comply with NEMA WC 7.
- E. Ethylene Propylene Rubber Insulation Material: Comply with NEMA WC 8.
- F. Conductor Material: Copper.
- G. Stranding: Solid conductor for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded conductor for larger than No. 10 AWG.

2.2 CONNECTORS AND SPLICES

- A. UL-listed, factory-fabricated wiring connectors of size, ampacity rating, material, type, and class for application and service indicated. Comply with Project's installation requirements and as specified in Part 3 "Wire and Insulation Applications" Article.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine raceways and building finishes to receive wires and cables for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of wires and cables. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 WIRE AND INSULATION APPLICATIONS

- A. Service Entrance: Type RHW or THWN, in raceway.
- B. Feeders: Type THHN/THWN, in raceway.
- C. Branch Circuits: Type THHN/THWN, in raceway.
- D. Fire Alarm Circuits: Type THHN/THWN, in raceway.

- E. Class 1 Control Circuits: Type THHN/THWN, in raceway.
- F. Class 2 Control Circuits: Type THHN/THWN, in raceway.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install wires and cables as indicated, according to manufacturer's written instructions and NECA's "Standard of Installation."
- B. Remove existing wires from raceway before pulling in new wires and cables.
- C. Pull Conductors: Use manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant where necessary; compound used must not deteriorate conductor or insulation. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values.
- D. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire/cable grips, that will not damage cables or raceway.
- E. Install exposed cables, parallel and perpendicular to surfaces of exposed structural members, and follow surface contours where possible.
- F. Support cables according to Division 26 Section "Basic Electrical Materials and Methods."
- G. Seal around cables penetrating fire-rated elements according to Division 7 Section "Firestopping."
- H. Identify wires and cables according to Division 26 Section "Basic Electrical Materials and Methods."

3.4 CONNECTIONS

- A. Conductor Splices: Keep to minimum.
- B. Install splices and tapes that possess equivalent or better mechanical strength and insulation ratings than conductors being spliced.
- C. Use splice and tap connectors compatible with conductor material.
- D. Wiring at Outlets: Install conductor at each outlet, with at least 12 inches (300 mm) of slack.
- E. Connect outlets and components to wiring and to ground as indicated and instructed by manufacturer.

- F. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing: On installation of wires and cables and before electrical circuitry has been energized, demonstrate product capability and compliance with requirements.
 - 1. Procedures: Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA ATS, Section 7.3.1. Certify compliance with test parameters.
- B. Correct malfunctioning conductors and cables at Project site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, remove and replace with new units and retest.

END OF SECTION 26 0519

SECTION 26 0526 - GROUNDING AND BONDING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes grounding of electrical systems and equipment. Grounding requirements specified in this Section may be supplemented by special requirements of systems described in other Sections.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
 - 1. Comply with UL 467.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GROUNDING CONDUCTORS

- A. For insulated conductors, comply with Division 26 Section "Conductors and Cables."
- B. Equipment Grounding Conductors: Insulated with green-colored insulation.
- C. Isolated Ground Conductors: Insulated with green-colored insulation with yellow stripe. On feeders with isolated ground, use colored tape, alternating bands of green and yellow tape to provide a minimum of three bands of green and two bands of yellow.
- D. Grounding Electrode Conductors: Stranded cable.
- E. Underground Conductors: Bare, tinned, stranded, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Bare Copper Conductors: Comply with the following:
 - 1. Solid Conductors: ASTM B 3.

2. Assembly of Stranded Conductors: ASTM B 8.
3. Tinned Conductors: ASTM B 33.

G. Copper Bonding Conductors: As follows:

1. Bonding Cable: 28 kcmil, 14 strands of No. 17 AWG copper conductor, 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) in diameter.
2. Bonding Conductor: No. 4 or No. 6 AWG, stranded copper conductor.
3. Bonding Jumper: Bare copper tape, braided bare copper conductors, terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches (42 mm) wide and 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) thick.
4. Tinned Bonding Jumper: Tinned-copper tape, braided copper conductors, terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches (42 mm) wide and 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) thick.

H. Grounding Bus: Bare, annealed copper bars of rectangular cross section, with insulators.

2.2 CONNECTOR PRODUCTS

- A. Comply with IEEE 837 and UL 467; listed for use for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and connected items.
- B. Bolted Connectors: Bolted-pressure-type connectors, or compression type.
- C. Welded Connectors: Exothermic-welded type, in kit form, and selected per manufacturer's written instructions.

2.3 GROUNDING ELECTRODES

- A. Ground Rods: Copper-clad steel.
 1. Size: 3/4 by 120 inches.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATION

- A. In raceways, use insulated equipment grounding conductors.
- B. Exothermic-Welded Connections: Use for connections to structural steel and for underground connections.
- C. Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Use bolted pressure clamps.

3.2 EQUIPMENT GROUNDING CONDUCTORS

- A. Comply with NFPA 70, Article 250, for types, sizes, and quantities of equipment grounding conductors, unless specific types, larger sizes, or more conductors than required by NFPA 70 are indicated.
- B. Install equipment grounding conductors in all feeders and circuits.
- C. Nonmetallic Raceways: Install an equipment grounding conductor in nonmetallic raceways unless they are designated for telephone or data cables.
- D. Air-Duct Equipment Circuits: Install an equipment grounding conductor to duct-mounted electrical devices operating at 120 V and more, including air cleaners and heaters. Bond conductor to each unit and to air duct.
- E. Water Heater, Heat-Tracing, and Antifrost Heating Cables: Install a separate equipment grounding conductor to each electric water heater, heat-tracing, and antifrost heating cable. Bond conductor to heater units, piping, connected equipment, and components.
- F. Signal and Communication Systems: For telephone, alarm, voice and data, and other communication systems, provide insulated grounding conductor in raceway from grounding electrode system to each service location, terminal cabinet, wiring closet, and central equipment location.
 - 1. Service and Central Equipment Locations and Wiring Closets: Terminate grounding conductor on a grounding bus.
 - 2. Terminal Cabinets: Terminate grounding conductor on cabinet grounding terminal.
- G. Metal Poles Supporting Outdoor Lighting Fixtures: Provide a grounding electrode in addition to installing a separate equipment grounding conductor with supply branch-circuit conductors.
- H. Fencing: Ground all fences and equipment attached to the fence. Ground fences on each side of all gates, at each corner, at the closest approach to each building located within 50 feet of the fence, and where the fence alignment changes more than 15 degrees. Grounding locations can not exceed 650 feet. Bond each gate panel with a flexible bond strap to its gate post. Ground fences crossed by powerlines of 600 volts or more at or near the point of crossing and at distances not exceeding 150 feet on each side of crossing. Provide ground conductor consisting of No. 8 AWG solid copper wire. Provide copper-clad steel rod grounding electrodes 3/4 inch by 10 foot long. Drive electrodes into the earth so that the top of the electrode is at least 6 inches below the grade. Where driving is impracticable, bury electrodes a minimum of 12 inches deep and radially from the fence, with top of the electrode not less than 2 feet or more than 8 feet from the fence. Clamp ground conductor to the fence and electrodes with bronze grounding clamps to create electrical continuity between fence posts, fence fabric, and ground rods. Total resistance of the fence to ground cannot exceed 25 ohms.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Ground Rods: Install at least three rods spaced at least one-rod length from each other and located at least the same distance from other grounding electrodes.
 - 1. Drive ground rods until tops are 2 inches (50 mm) below finished floor or final grade, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Interconnect ground rods with grounding electrode conductors. Use exothermic welds, except at test wells and as otherwise indicated. Make connections without exposing steel or damaging copper coating.
- B. Grounding Conductors: Route along shortest and straightest paths possible, unless otherwise indicated. Avoid obstructing access or placing conductors where they may be subjected to strain, impact, or damage.
- C. Bonding Straps and Jumpers: Install so vibration by equipment mounted on vibration isolation hangers and supports is not transmitted to rigidly mounted equipment. Use exothermic-welded connectors for outdoor locations, unless a disconnect-type connection is required; then, use a bolted clamp. Bond straps directly to the basic structure taking care not to penetrate any adjacent parts. Install straps only in locations accessible for maintenance.
- D. Metal Water Service Pipe: Provide insulated copper grounding conductors, in conduit, from building's main service equipment, or grounding bus, to main metal water service entrances to building. Connect grounding conductors to main metal water service pipes by grounding clamp connectors. Where a dielectric main water fitting is installed, connect grounding conductor to street side of fitting. Bond metal grounding conductor conduit or sleeve to conductor at each end.
- E. Water Meter Piping: Use braided-type bonding jumpers to electrically bypass water meters. Connect to pipe with grounding clamp connectors.
- F. Bond interior metal piping systems and metal air ducts to equipment grounding conductors of associated pumps, fans, blowers, electric heaters, and air cleaners. Use braided-type bonding straps.
- G. Bond each aboveground portion of gas piping system upstream from equipment shutoff valve.

3.4 CONNECTIONS

- A. General: Make connections so galvanic action or electrolysis possibility is minimized. Select connectors, connection hardware, conductors, and connection methods so metals in direct contact will be galvanically compatible.
 - 1. Use electroplated or hot-tin-coated materials to ensure high conductivity and to make contact points closer to order of galvanic series.
 - 2. Make connections with clean, bare metal at points of contact.

3. Coat and seal connections having dissimilar metals with inert material to prevent future penetration of moisture to contact surfaces.
- B. Exothermic-Welded Connections: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Welds that are puffed up or that show convex surfaces indicating improper cleaning are not acceptable.
- C. Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: For No. 8 AWG and larger, use pressure-type grounding lugs. No. 10 AWG and smaller grounding conductors may be terminated with winged pressure-type connectors.
- D. Noncontact Metal Raceway Terminations: If metallic raceways terminate at metal housings without mechanical and electrical connection to housing, terminate each conduit with a grounding bushing. Connect grounding bushings with a bare grounding conductor to grounding bus or terminal in housing. Bond electrically noncontinuous conduits at entrances and exits with grounding bushings and bare grounding conductors, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Tighten screws and bolts for grounding and bonding connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A.
- F. Compression-Type Connections: Use hydraulic compression tools to provide correct circumferential pressure for compression connectors. Use tools and dies recommended by connector manufacturer. Provide embossing die code or other standard method to make a visible indication that a connector has been adequately compressed on grounding conductor.
- G. Moisture Protection: If insulated grounding conductors are connected to ground rods or grounding buses, insulate entire area of connection and seal against moisture penetration of insulation and cable.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing: Perform the following field quality-control testing:
 1. After installing grounding system but before permanent electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
 - a. Equipment Rated 500 kVA and Less: 10 ohms.
 - b. Equipment Rated 500 to 1000 kVA: 5 ohms.
 - c. Equipment Rated More Than 1000 kVA: 3 ohms.
 2. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground exceeds specified values, notify Architect promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.

END OF SECTION 26 0526

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 26 0533 - RACEWAYS AND BOXES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes raceways, fittings, boxes, enclosures, and cabinets for electrical wiring.
 - 1. Raceways include the following:
 - a. RMC.
 - b. IMC.
 - c. EMT.
 - d. FMC.
 - e. LFMC.
 - f. LFNC.
 - g. RNC.
 - 2. Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets include the following:
 - a. Device boxes.
 - b. Outlet boxes.
 - c. Pull and junction boxes.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 7 Section "Firestopping."
 - 2. Division 26 Section "Basic Electrical Materials and Methods" for raceways and box supports.
 - 3. Division 26 Section "Wiring Devices" for devices installed in boxes and for floor-box service fittings.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. EMT: Electrical metallic tubing.
- B. ENT: Electrical nonmetallic tubing.

- C. FMC: Flexible metal conduit.
- D. IMC: Intermediate metal conduit.
- E. LFMC: Liquidtight flexible metal conduit.
- F. LFNC: Liquidtight flexible nonmetallic conduit.
- G. RMC: Rigid metal conduit.
- H. RNC: Rigid nonmetallic conduit.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Listing and Labeling: Provide raceways and boxes specified in this Section that are listed and labeled.
 - 1. The Terms "Listed" and "Labeled": As defined in NFPA 70, Article 100.
 - 2. Listing and Labeling Agency Qualifications: A "Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory" as defined in OSHA Regulation 1910.7.
- B. Comply with NECA's "Standard of Installation."
- C. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of raceways and boxes with other construction elements to ensure adequate headroom, working clearance, and access.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL CONDUIT AND TUBING

- A. Rigid Steel Conduit: ANSI C80.1.
- B. IMC: ANSI C80.6.
- C. Plastic-Coated Steel Conduit and Fittings: NEMA RN 1.
- D. Plastic-Coated IMC and Fittings: NEMA RN 1.
- E. EMT and Fittings: ANSI C80.3.
 - 1. Fittings: Compression type.

- F. FMC: Zinc-coated steel.
- G. LFMC: Flexible steel conduit with PVC jacket.
- H. Fittings: NEMA FB 1; compatible with conduit/tubing materials.

2.2 NONMETALLIC CONDUIT AND TUBING

- A. RNC: NEMA TC 2, Schedule 40 or 80 PVC.
- B. RNC Fittings: NEMA TC 3; match to conduit or conduit/tubing type and material.
- C. LFNC: UL 1660.

2.3 OUTLET AND DEVICE BOXES

- A. Sheet Metal Boxes: NEMA OS 1.
- B. Cast-Metal Boxes: NEMA FB 1, Type FD, cast box with gasketed cover.
- C. Nonmetallic Boxes: NEMA OS 2.

2.4 PULL AND JUNCTION BOXES

- A. Small Sheet Metal Boxes: NEMA OS 1.
- B. Cast-Metal Boxes: NEMA FB 1, cast aluminum with gasketed cover.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine surfaces to receive raceways, boxes, enclosures, and cabinets for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of raceway installation. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 WIRING METHODS

- A. Outdoors: Use the following wiring methods:
 - 1. Exposed: Rigid steel or IMC.
 - 2. Concealed: Rigid steel or IMC.

3. Underground, Single Run: RNC.
4. Underground, Grouped: RNC.
5. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): LFMC.
6. Boxes and Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 3R or Type 4.

B. Indoors: Use the following wiring methods:

1. Exposed: Rigid steel or IMC.
2. Concealed: EMT.
3. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): FMC; except in wet or damp locations, use LFMC.
4. Damp or Wet Locations: Rigid steel conduit.
5. Boxes and Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, except as follows:
 - a. Damp or Wet Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install raceways, boxes, enclosures, and cabinets as indicated, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Minimum Raceway Size: 3/4-inch trade size (DN16).
- C. Conceal conduit and EMT, unless otherwise indicated, within finished walls, ceilings, and floors.
- D. Keep raceways at least 6 inches (150 mm) away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes. Install horizontal raceway runs above water and steam piping.
- E. Install raceways level and square and at proper elevations. Provide adequate headroom.
- F. Complete raceway installation before starting conductor installation.
- G. Support raceways as specified in Division 26 Section "Basic Electrical Materials and Methods."
- H. Use temporary closures to prevent foreign matter from entering raceways.
- I. Protect stub-ups from damage where conduits rise through floor slabs. Arrange so curved portion of bends is not visible above the finished slab.
- J. Make bends and offsets so ID is not reduced. Keep legs of bends in the same plane and straight legs of offsets parallel, unless otherwise indicated.

- K. Use raceway fittings compatible with raceways and suitable for use and location. For intermediate steel conduit, use threaded rigid steel conduit fittings, unless otherwise indicated.
- L. Run concealed raceways, with a minimum of bends, in the shortest practical distance considering the type of building construction and obstructions, unless otherwise indicated.
- M. Raceways Embedded in Slabs: Install in middle third of slab thickness where practical, and leave at least **1-inch (25-mm)** concrete cover.
 - 1. Secure raceways to reinforcing rods to prevent sagging or shifting during concrete placement.
 - 2. Space raceways laterally to prevent voids in concrete.
 - 3. Run conduit larger than **1-inch trade size (DN27)** parallel to or at right angles to main reinforcement. Where at right angles to reinforcement, place conduit close to slab support.
 - 4. Transition from nonmetallic tubing to rigid steel conduit before rising above floor.
- N. Install exposed raceways parallel to or at right angles to nearby surfaces or structural members, and follow the surface contours as much as practical.
 - 1. Run parallel or banked raceways together, on common supports where practical.
 - 2. Make bends in parallel or banked runs from same centerline to make bends parallel. Use factory elbows only where elbows can be installed parallel; otherwise, provide field bends for parallel raceways.
- O. Join raceways with fittings designed and approved for the purpose and make joints tight.
 - 1. Make raceway terminations tight. Use bonding bushings or wedges at connections subject to vibration. Use bonding jumpers where joints cannot be made tight.
 - 2. Use insulating bushings to protect conductors.
- P. Terminations: Where raceways are terminated with locknuts and bushings, align raceways to enter squarely and install locknuts with dished part against the box. Where terminations are not secure with 1 locknut, use 2 locknuts: 1 inside and 1 outside the box.
- Q. Where raceways are terminated with threaded hubs, screw raceways or fittings tightly into the hub so the end bears against the wire protection shoulder. Where chase nipples are used, align raceways so the coupling is square to the box and tighten the chase nipple so no threads are exposed.

- R. Install pull wires in empty raceways. Use No. 14 AWG zinc-coated steel or monofilament plastic line with not less than **200-lb (90-kg)** tensile strength. Leave at least **12 inches (300 mm)** of slack at each end of the pull wire.
- S. Flexible Connections: Use maximum of **6 feet (1830 mm)** of flexible conduit for recessed and semirecessed lighting fixtures; for equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, or movement; and for all motors. Use liquidtight flexible conduit in wet or damp locations. Install separate ground conductor across flexible connections.
- T. Do not install aluminum conduits embedded in or in contact with concrete.
- U. Install hinged-cover enclosures and cabinets plumb. Support at each corner.
- V. All PVC conduit runs shall have rigid galvanized steel 90's and rigid stub ups.

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer, that ensure coatings, finishes, and cabinets are without damage or deterioration at the time of Substantial Completion.
 - 1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.
 - 2. Repair damage to PVC or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.

3.5 CLEANING

- A. On completion of installation, including outlet fittings and devices, inspect exposed finish. Remove burrs, dirt, and construction debris and repair damaged finish, including chips, scratches, and abrasions.

END OF SECTION 26 0533

SECTION 26 1219 - LIQUID-FILLED, MEDIUM-VOLTAGE TRANSFORMERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SCOPE

- A. This specification provides the technical requirements for the design, manufacture and test of liquid-type secondary unit substation transformers. Provide all accessories and equipment as described herein and shown on Project Drawings as necessary for a complete installation.

1.02 SUBMITTALS

- A. The manufacturer shall provide the following information for review and evaluation by the Engineer:
 - 1. Shop Drawings showing layout, dimensions, voltage, phasing and continuous current capacity.
- B. Manufacturer shall provide final, as- built drawings. Installation, Operation and Maintenance manuals shall also be supplied.

1.03 RELATED STANDARDS

- A. The liquid-filled type transformer and protection devices in this specification are designed and manufactured according to latest revision of the following standards.
 - 1. American National Standards Institute, Inc. (ANSI)
 - 2. Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers (IEEE)
 - 3. National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA)
 - 4. American Society of Testing and Materials (ASTM)
 - 5. National Electrical Code (NEC)
 - 6. Underwriter's Laboratories (UL)

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. The manufacturer shall have specialized in the design, manufacture and assembly of liquid filled secondary substation transformers for a minimum of 10 years.
- B. The manufacturer shall have a well documented quality assurance program, which includes procedures for all activities in order entry, design, material procurement, manufacturing processes, testing, shipping and post shipment product follow.
- C. The manufacturer's test floor shall have a documented calibration program. All equipment shall receive regular calibrations. Calibration standards shall be traceable to National Bureau of Standards. Records of all equipment calibration shall be made available to the Buyer upon request.
- D. The transformers shall be manufactured by a company, which is certified to ISO 9001, or ISO 9002 as a minimum, for design and manufacture of Power Liquid Filled Type Transformers.

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Handle and store equipment in accordance with manufacturer's Installation and Maintenance Manuals. One (1) copy of this document to be provided with the equipment at time of shipment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 TECHNICAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Winding Characteristics
 - 1. All windings and internal connections shall be copper.
 - 2. The windings shall be tightly wound utilizing tension devices to place the conductor into the coils.
 - 3. Sheet conductor shall be used in secondary winding to minimize vertical short circuit forces.
 - 4. Insulation between layers of the windings shall be Insuldur paper or equal.
 - 5. The transformer shall be designed and constructed to be completely self protected by its ability to withstand the external short-circuits, as defined by ANSI C57.12.00.
 - 6. Evidence of compliance to these short-circuit requirements as required in C57.12.00 and C57.12.90 shall be submitted to the Buyer at the time of quotation.
 - 7. The transformer design shall be capable of operating above rated voltage or below rated frequency in accordance with ANSI C57.12.00.
 - 8. The impedance shall be per ANSI tolerance.
- B. Sound Level
 - 1. The secondary unit substation transformer and auxiliary cooling equipment shall be designed and constructed to minimize the audible noise generated with the transformer energized at rated voltage and with all auxiliary cooling equipment in operation. The acceptable noise level shall be in accordance with NEMA standard TR 1. The measurement procedure shall be as specified in ANSI C57.12.90.
- C. Bushings
 - 1. High voltage and low voltage bushings shall be furnished with the ratings shown on the Transformer Data Sheet.
 - 2. The bushings shall be sidewall mounted and suitable for high and low voltage terminations as indicated on the Transformer Data Sheet.
- D. Core
 - 1. The core shall be clamped and braced to resist distortion caused by short-circuit stresses within rating or transportation handling and to prevent the shifting of core laminations.
 - 2. The core shall be constructed of high-grade, grain oriented, silicon steel laminations, with high magnetic permeability. Core construction shall include step-lap mitered joints to keep core losses, excitation current and noise level at a minimum.
- E. De-Energized Tap Changer

1. A manually operated de-energized tap changer shall be provided for changing the primary winding taps.
2. Full capacity taps shall be located in the high voltage windings and shall be in accordance with the Transformer Data Sheet.
3. The tap changer shall be capable of carrying the full transformer short-circuit current without damage or contact separation.
4. The sidewall mounted tap changer shall be gang operated from a single operating point and shall have a position indicator.
5. The tap changer operating mechanism shall include provisions for pad locking in each tap position.

F. Insulating Fluid And Preservation System

1. The fluid preservation system shall be a sealed tank type.
2. The insulating fluid shall be mineral oil.
3. The transformer insulating fluid shall be certified to contain no detectable PCB's at the time of shipment and the tank shall be so labeled. Certification shall also be provided that the transformer and components have not been contaminated with PCB's prior to shipment.
4. The transformer insulating fluid shall meet or exceed the requirements of the appropriate ANSI and ASTM fluid Standards. The transformer fluid shall be tested for dielectric breakdown and moisture content just prior at the time of shipment.

G. Tank Design

1. The transformer tank, cooling equipment and compartments subject to pressures shall be designed to withstand, without permanent deformation, pressures of at least twenty-five percent greater than maximum operating pressures. The maximum design withstand pressure shall be indicated on the nameplate.
2. Tank design shall include sufficient expansion volume to allow operation under specified load conditions.
3. The main cover shall be of welded onto the tank.
4. One or more handholds shall be provided in the tank cover for access to bushing connections and current transformers, when required. The opening shall be of sufficient size to allow removal of any CT.
5. The transformer base shall be suitable for rolling or skidding in the direction of either tank base centerline.
6. The base shall be designed so the center of gravity of the transformer as assembled for transport does not fall outside the base for a tilt of fifteen degrees.
7. Lifting lugs shall be provided at each corner of the tank. The lifting lugs shall be designed to provide a minimum safety factor of 5.
8. Jacking area, pads or bosses shall be provided.
9. Pulling provisions, for towing the transformer parallel to either centerline, shall be provided.

H. Gaskets

1. The gaskets shall be compatible for the insulating fluid in the transformer tank.
 2. Gaskets in contact with Silicone fluid or vapors shall be Viton material.
 3. Metal surfaces to which gaskets are applied shall be smooth, and shall have sufficient rigidity to assure proper compression of the gaskets.
- I. Cooling System
1. The transformer shall be self-cooled.
 2. Cooling tubes or radiators shall be rigidly supported to the tank wall, either through pipes or brackets.
- J. Grounding Provisions
1. All non-energized metallic components of the transformer shall be grounded.
 2. Tank grounding provisions shall consist of two ground pads, welded to the base or to the tank wall near the base on diagonal corners.
 3. A copper-faced or stainless steel ground pad with two holes spaced horizontally at 1.75-inch centers and tapped for 0.5 inch 13-UNC tread shall be provided.
- K. Wiring
1. All devices mounted on the transformer, including current transformer secondary circuits, shall be wired to the control cabinet.
 2. All control wiring shall be a minimum of #14 AWG type SIS and #12 AWG for current transformers.
 3. Wiring shall be terminated with a ring-type insulated compression lug.
 4. Each wire shall be identified with a wire marker.
 5. All symbols and wiring identification systems shall be in accordance with the applicable ANSI standard.
- L. Nameplates
1. Transformer shall be furnished with a non-corrosive diagrammatic nameplate, permanently attached with non-corrosive hardware. The diagrammatic nameplate shall include the name of the manufacturer of the equipment as well as the location where the transformer was manufactured and tested. In addition, the transformer manufacturer and location of manufacture is to be supplied at the time of quotation.
 2. The nameplate shall contain all connection and rating information in accordance with ANSI C57.12.00 nameplate C, plus the approximate weight of parts to be lifted for un-tanking, type and quantity of oil, and the date of manufacture.
 3. A non-corrosive nameplate located next to the operating handle of the de-energized tap changer shall be provided which states the following: "Warning - Do not operate this tap changer unless the transformer is de-energized."
- M. Exterior Finish
1. The transformer painting system shall be the Seller's standard. The transformer shall be thoroughly cleaned and phosphortized, paint with at least one corrosion inhibiting primer and one finish coat to provide a minimum total dry-film thickness of not less than 3 mils.

2. The finish shall be ANSI 61.
3. Supply one quart of touch up paint.

2.02 ACCESSORIES

- A. The transformer shall be equipped with a complete set of standard accessories.
 1. Magnetic liquid level gauge.
 2. Dial type thermometer.
 3. Pressure-vacuum.
 4. A 1-inch upper filter press connection with pipe cap.
 5. A 1-inch drain valve and bottom filter press connection with drain valve plug

2.03 ENGINEERING DATA REQUIREMENTS

A. OUTLINE DRAWINGS

1. The outline drawings shall be completely dimensioned and, as a minimum, show the following:
 - a. Plan, and all elevations, including clearance for bushing and core and coil removal.
 - b. High voltage and low voltage bushing details.
 - c. Location of all hand-holes.
 - d. Location and identification of all accessories.
 - e. Size and location of all conduit entrances for Buyers connections.
 - f. Anchoring details.
 - g. Ground pad locations.
 - h. Weight of core and coil, transformer tank and fittings, weight and gallons of fluid, and total shipping weight.

B. WIRING DIAGRAMS

1. Interconnecting wiring of all components of the forced cooling equipment.
2. Wiring of all devices with switches and relays, or electrical connections, including current transformers.
3. Identification of all terminal blocks and all connections to be made by Buyer.

C. NAMEPLATE DRAWING

1. A nameplate drawing showing required ANSI information shall be provided

D. INSTALLATION, OPERATING, AND MAINTENANCE INSTRUCTIONS

1. The seller shall provide an instruction, operating and maintenance manual covering all equipment furnished.

E. PARTS

1. The Seller shall provide a renewal parts list to the Buyer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

- A. Install transformer as shown on Project Drawings and in accordance with manufacturer's Instruction/Installation Manual.

- B. Provide concrete pad with sufficient structural support and in accordance with local codes and standards. Concrete pad requirements should be coordinated with transformer manufacturer.
- C. Grounding should be per Project Drawings and in accordance with local codes and standards and in compliance with the NEC.

3.02 ADJUSTMENTS AND CLEANING

- A. Remove debris from jobsite and wipe dust and dirt from all components.
- B. Repaint marred and scratched surfaces with touch up paint to match original finish.

3.03 TESTING

- A. Field-testing will be conducted at the expense of the Owner, if required for final acceptance.
- B. Each transformer shall receive all standard routine tests as required by ANSI C57.12.00 and performed as specified by ANSI C57.12.90.
- C. Short Circuit withstand capability shall be verified by full short circuit tests on similar or larger units in accordance with the latest revision of ANSI C57.12.00 and ANSI C57.12.90. Short Circuit withstand verification shall be submitted to the purchaser, upon request, prior to shipment of the transformers.
- D. Device functionality test shall be performed.
- E. The test facility used to perform loss tests shall utilize test equipment with calibration traceable to NIST or an approved equal 3rd party laboratory.
- F. A certified test report shall be submitted and shall contain the test data for each transformer serial number manufactured. The certified test report shall as a minimum contain the data as specified in ANSI C57.12.90.

3.04 WARRANTY

- A. Equipment manufacturer warrants that all goods supplied are free of non-conformities in workmanship and materials for one year from date of initial operation, but not more than eighteen months from date of shipment.

END OF SECTION 26 1219

SECTION 26 2200 - DRY-TYPE TRANSFORMERS (1000 V AND LESS)

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes dry-type distribution and specialty transformers rated 1000 V and less.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include data on features, components, ratings, and performance for each type of transformer specified. Include dimensioned plans, sections, and elevation views. Show minimum clearances and installed devices and features.
- B. Wiring Diagrams: Detail wiring and identify terminals for tap changing and connecting field-installed wiring.
- C. Product Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of transformers certifying that the products furnished comply with requirements.
- D. Qualification Data: For firms and persons specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.
- E. Field Test Reports: Indicate and interpret test results for tests specified in Part 3.
- F. Maintenance Data: For transformers to include in the maintenance manuals specified in Division 1.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Listing and Labeling: Provide transformers specified in this Section that are listed and labeled.
 - 1. The Terms "Listed" and "Labeled": As defined in NFPA 70, Article 100.
 - 2. Listing and Labeling Agency Qualifications: A "Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory" as defined in OSHA Regulation 1910.7.
- B. Comply with IEEE C2.

- C. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Temporary Heating: Apply temporary heat according to manufacturer's written instructions within the enclosure of each ventilated-type unit throughout periods during which equipment is not energized and is not in a space that is continuously under normal control of temperature and humidity.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 TRANSFORMERS, GENERAL

- A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, air-cooled units of types specified, designed for 60-Hz service.
- B. Cores: Grain-oriented, nonaging silicon steel.
- C. Coils: Continuous windings without splices, except for taps.
- D. Internal Coil Connections: Brazed or pressure type.
- E. Enclosure: Class complies with NEMA 250 for the environment in which installed.

2.2 GENERAL-PURPOSE DISTRIBUTION AND POWER TRANSFORMERS

- A. Comply with NEMA ST 20 and list and label as complying with UL 1561.
- B. Cores: One leg per phase.
- C. Windings: One coil per phase in primary and secondary.
- D. Enclosure: Indoor, ventilated.
- E. Insulation Class: 185 or 220 deg C class for transformers 15 kVA or smaller; 220 deg C class for transformers larger than 15 kVA.
 - 1. Rated Temperature Rise: 150 deg C maximum rise above 40 deg C, for 220 deg C class insulation; 115 deg C maximum rise for 185 deg C class insulation.
- F. Taps: For transformers 3 kVA and larger, full-capacity taps in high-voltage windings are as follows:
 - 1. Taps, 15 through 500 kVA: Six 2.5-percent taps, 2 above and 4 below rated high voltage.

2.3 CONTROL AND SIGNAL TRANSFORMERS

- A. Units comply with NEMA ST 1 and are listed and labeled as complying with UL 506.
- B. Ratings: Continuous duty. If rating is not indicated, provide capacity exceeding peak load by 50 percent minimum.
- C. Description: Self-cooled, 2 windings.

2.4 FINISHES

- A. Indoor Units: Manufacturer's standard paint over corrosion-resistant pretreatment and primer.
- B. Outdoor Units: Comply with ANSI C57.12.28.

2.5 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Factory Tests: Design and routine tests comply with referenced standards.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with safety requirements of IEEE C2.
- B. Arrange equipment to provide adequate spacing for access and for circulation of cooling air.
- C. Identify transformers and install warning signs according to Division 16 Section "Basic Electrical Materials and Methods."
- D. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.

3.2 GROUNDING

- A. Separately Derived Systems: Comply with NFPA 70 requirements for connecting to grounding electrodes and for bonding to metallic piping near the transformer.
- B. Comply with Division 26 Section "Grounding" for materials and installation requirements.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Test Objectives: To ensure transformer is operational within industry and manufacturer's tolerances, is installed according to the Contract Documents, and is suitable for energizing.
- B. Test Labeling: On satisfactory completion of tests for each transformer, attach a dated and signed "Satisfactory Test" label to tested component.
- C. Schedule tests and provide notification at least 7 days in advance of test commencement.
- D. Report: Submit a written report of observations and tests. Report defective materials and installation.
- E. Tests: Include the following minimum inspections and tests according to manufacturer's written instructions. Comply with IEEE C57.12.91 for test methods and data correction factors.
 - 1. Inspect accessible components for cleanliness, mechanical and electrical integrity, and damage or deterioration. Verify that temporary shipping bracing has been removed. Include internal inspection through access panels and covers.
 - 2. Inspect bolted electrical connections for tightness according to manufacturer's published torque values or, if not available, those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.
 - 3. Insulation Resistance: Perform megohmmeter tests of primary and secondary winding to winding and winding to ground.
 - a. Minimum Test Voltage: 1000 V, dc.
 - b. Minimum Insulation Resistance: 500 megohms.
 - c. Duration of Each Test: 10 minutes.
 - d. Temperature Correction: Correct results for test temperature deviation from 20 deg C standard.
- F. Test Failures: Compare test results with specified performance or manufacturer's data. Correct deficiencies identified by tests and retest. Verify that transformers meet specified requirements.

3.4 CLEANING

- A. On completion of installation, inspect components. Remove paint splatters and other spots, dirt, and debris. Repair scratches and mars on finish to match original finish. Clean components internally using methods and materials recommended by manufacturer.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. After installing and cleaning, touch up scratches and mars on finish to match original finish.
- B. Adjust transformer taps to provide optimum voltage conditions at utilization equipment throughout normal operating cycle of facility. Record primary and secondary voltages and tap settings and submit with test results.

END OF SECTION 26 2200

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 26 2416 - PANELBOARDS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes panelboards, overcurrent protective devices, and associated auxiliary equipment rated 600 V and less for the following types:
 - 1. Lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboards.
 - 2. Distribution panelboards.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
- B. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.
- C. RFI: Radio-frequency interference.
- D. RMS: Root mean square.
- E. SPDT: Single pole, double throw.
- F. TVSS: Transient voltage surge suppressor.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of panelboard, overcurrent protective device, TVSS device, accessory, and component indicated. Include dimensions and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each panelboard and related equipment.
 - 1. Dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details. Show tabulations of installed devices, equipment features, and ratings. Include the following:
 - a. Enclosure types and details for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.

- b. Bus configuration, current, and voltage ratings.
- c. Short-circuit current rating of panelboards and overcurrent protective devices.
- d. Features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- B. Comply with NEMA PB 1.
- C. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of panelboards and components with other construction that penetrates walls or is supported by them, including electrical and other types of equipment, raceways, piping, and encumbrances to workspace clearance requirements.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FABRICATION AND FEATURES

- A. Enclosures: Flush or surface mounted cabinets as indicated on drawings. NEMA PB 1, Type 1, to meet environmental conditions at installed location.
 - 1. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
- B. Hinged Front Cover: Entire front trim hinged to box and with standard door within hinged trim cover.
- C. Finish: Manufacturer's standard enamel finish over corrosion-resistant treatment or primer coat.
- D. Directory Card: With transparent protective cover, mounted inside metal frame, inside panelboard door.
- E. Bus: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
- F. Main and Neutral Lugs: Mechanical type suitable for use with conductor material.

- G. Equipment Ground Bus: Adequate for feeder and branch-circuit equipment ground conductors; bonded to box.
- H. Service Equipment Label: UL labeled for use as service equipment for panelboards with main service disconnect switches.
- I. Future Devices: Mounting brackets, bus connections, and necessary appurtenances required for future installation of devices.
- J. Isolated Equipment Ground Bus: When noted on drawings, install isolated equipment ground bus adequate for branch-circuit equipment ground conductors; insulated from box.
- K. Feed-through Lugs: Mechanical type suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at opposite end of bus from incoming lugs or main device. Provide only when necessary or when noted on the drawings.

2.2 PANELBOARD SHORT-CIRCUIT RATING

- A. Fully rated to interrupt symmetrical short-circuit current available at terminals.

2.3 LIGHTING AND APPLIANCE BRANCH-CIRCUIT PANELBOARDS

- A. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Bolt-on circuit breakers, replaceable without disturbing adjacent units.
- B. Doors: Front mounted with concealed hinges; secured with flush latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.

2.4 DISTRIBUTION PANELBOARDS

- A. Doors: Front mounted, except omit in fused-switch panelboards; secured with vault-type latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.
- B. Main Overcurrent Protective Devices: Circuit breaker.
- C. Branch overcurrent protective devices shall be one of the following:
 - 1. For Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes 125 A and Smaller: Bolt-on circuit breakers.
 - 2. For Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes Larger Than 125 A: Bolt-on circuit breakers; plug-in circuit breakers where individual positive-locking device requires mechanical release for removal.
 - 3. Fused switches.

2.5 OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

- A. Molded-Case Circuit Breaker: NEMA AB 1, with interrupting capacity to meet available fault currents.
 - 1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads, and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
 - 2. Adjustable Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
 - 3. Electronic Trip Unit Circuit Breakers: RMS sensing; field-replaceable rating plug; with the following field-adjustable settings:
 - a. Instantaneous trip.
 - b. Long- and short-time pickup levels.
 - c. Long- and short-time time adjustments.
 - d. Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I^2t response.
 - 4. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller; let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
 - 5. Integrally Fused Circuit Breakers: Thermal-magnetic trip element with integral limiter-style fuse listed for use with circuit breaker; trip activation on fuse opening or on opening of fuse compartment door.
 - 6. GFCI Circuit Breakers: Single- and two-pole configurations with 5-mA trip sensitivity.
- B. Molded-Case Circuit-Breaker Features and Accessories. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
 - 1. Lugs: Mechanical style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and material of conductors.
 - 2. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HACR for heating, air-conditioning, and refrigerating equipment.
 - 3. Ground-Fault Protection: Integrally mounted relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.
 - 4. Shunt Trip: 120-V trip coil energized from separate circuit, set to trip at 55 percent of rated voltage.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install panelboards and accessories according to NEMA PB 1.1.
- B. Mounting Heights: Top of trim **74 inches (1880 mm)** above finished floor, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Mounting: Plumb and rigid without distortion of box. Mount recessed panelboards with fronts uniformly flush with wall finish.
- D. Circuit Directory: Create a directory to indicate installed circuit loads. Use a computer or typewriter to create directory; handwritten directories are not acceptable.
- E. Install filler plates in unused spaces.
- F. Wiring in Panelboard Gutters: Arrange conductors into groups and bundle and wrap with wire ties.

3.2 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs as specified in Division 16 Section "Basic Electrical Materials and Methods".
- B. Panelboard Nameplates: Label each panelboard with engraved metal or laminated-plastic nameplate mounted with corrosion-resistant screws.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing: After installing panelboards and after electrical circuitry has been energized, demonstrate product capability and compliance with requirements.
 - 1. Procedures: Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test indicated in NETA ATS, Section 7.5 for switches and Section 7.6 for molded-case circuit breakers. Certify compliance with test parameters.
 - 2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges.

3.6 CLEANING

- A. On completion of installation, inspect interior and exterior of panelboards. Remove paint splatters and other spots. Vacuum dirt and debris; do not use compressed air to assist in cleaning. Repair exposed surfaces to match original finish.

END OF SECTION 26 2416

SECTION 26 2726 - WIRING DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes receptacles, connectors, switches, and finish plates.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.
- B. TVSS: Transient voltage surge suppressor.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each product specified.
- B. Maintenance Data: For materials and products to include in maintenance manuals specified in Division 1.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Comply with NEMA WD 1.
- C. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Receptacles for Owner-Furnished Equipment: Match plug configurations.
 - 1. Cord and Plug Sets: Match equipment requirements.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 RECEPTACLES

- A. Straight-Blade and Locking Receptacles: Heavy-Duty grade, 20A.
- B. GFCI Receptacles: Termination type, with integral NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R duplex receptacle. Design units for installation in a **2-3/4-inch-** (70-mm-) deep outlet box without an adapter.
- C. Hazardous (Classified) Location Receptacles: Comply with NEMA FB 11.

2.2 CORD AND PLUG SETS

- A. Description: Match voltage and current ratings and number of conductors to requirements of equipment being connected.
 - 1. Cord: Rubber-insulated, stranded-copper conductors, with type SOW-A jacket. Green-insulated grounding conductor, and equipment-rating ampacity plus a minimum of 30 percent.
 - 2. Plug: Nylon body and integral cable-clamping jaws. Match cord and receptacle type for connection.

2.3 SWITCHES

- A. Snap Switches: Heavy-duty, quiet type.
- B. Dimmer Switches: Modular, full-wave, solid-state units with integral, quiet on/off switches and audible and electromagnetic noise filters.
 - 1. Control: Continuously adjustable slide. Single-pole or three-way switch to suit connections.
 - 2. Incandescent Lamp Dimmers: Modular, 120 V, 60 Hz with continuously adjustable slide; single pole with soft tap or other quiet switch; electromagnetic filter to eliminate noise, RF, and TV interference; and **5-inch** (130-mm) wire connecting leads.
 - 3. Fluorescent Lamp Dimmers: Modular; compatible with dimmer ballasts; trim potentiometer to adjust low-end dimming; dimmer-ballast combination capable of consistent dimming to a maximum of 1 percent of full brightness.

2.4 WALL PLATES

- A. Single and combination types match corresponding wiring devices.

1. Plate-Securing Screws: Metal with head color to match plate finish.
2. Material for Finished Spaces: ~~0.04-inch~~ (1-mm) thick, Type 302, satin-finished stainless steel.
3. Material for Unfinished Spaces: Galvanized steel.

2.5 FLOOR SERVICE FITTINGS

- A. Type: Modular, flush-type, dual-service units suitable for wiring method used.
- B. Compartmentation: Barrier separates power and signal compartments.
- C. Housing Material: Die-cast aluminum, satin finished.
- D. Power Receptacle: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R, gray finish, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Signal Outlet: Blank cover with bushed cable opening, unless otherwise indicated.

2.6 POKE-THROUGH ASSEMBLIES

- A. Description: Factory-fabricated and -wired assembly of below-floor junction box unit with multichanneled, through-floor raceway/firestop unit and detachable matching floor service-outlet assembly.
 1. Size: Selected to fit nominal ~~3-inch~~ (75-mm) cored holes in floor and matched to floor thickness.
 2. Fire Rating: Unit is listed and labeled for fire rating of floor-ceiling assembly.
 3. Closure Plug: Arranged to close unused ~~3-inch~~ (75-mm) cored openings and reestablish fire rating of floor.

2.7 MULTIOUTLET ASSEMBLIES

- A. Components of Assemblies: Products from a single manufacturer designed for use as a complete, matching assembly of raceways and receptacles.
- B. Raceway Material: Metal, with manufacturer's standard finish.

2.8 FINISHES

- A. Color: Gray, unless otherwise indicated or required by Code.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install devices and assemblies plumb and secure.
- B. Install wall plates when painting is complete.
- C. Install wall dimmers to achieve indicated rating after derating for ganging as instructed by manufacturer.
- D. Do not share neutral conductor on load side of dimmers.
- E. Arrangement of Devices: Unless otherwise indicated, mount flush, with long dimension vertical, and grounding terminal of receptacles on top. Group adjacent switches under single, multigang wall plates.
- F. Protect devices and assemblies during painting.
- G. Adjust locations at which floor service outlets and telephone/power service poles are installed to suit arrangement of partitions and furnishings.

3.2 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with Division 26 Section "Basic Electrical Materials and Methods."
 - 1. Switches: Where three or more switches are ganged, and elsewhere as indicated, identify each switch with approved legend engraved on wall plate.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect wiring device grounding terminal to outlet box with bonding jumper.
- B. Isolated-Ground Receptacles: Connect to isolated-ground conductor routed to designated isolated equipment ground terminal of electrical system.
- C. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturers published torque-tightening values. If manufacturers torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Test wiring devices for proper polarity and ground continuity. Operate each device at least six times.
- B. Test GFCI operation with both local and remote fault simulations according to manufacturer's written instructions.

- C. Replace damaged or defective components.

3.5 CLEANING

- A. Internally clean devices, device outlet boxes, and enclosures. Replace stained or improperly painted wall plates or devices.

END OF SECTION 26 2726

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 26 2813 - FUSES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:

- 1. Fuses.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain fuses from one source and by a single manufacturer.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70 for components and installation.
- C. Listing and Labeling: Provide fuses specified in this Section that are listed and labeled.
 - 1. The Terms "Listed" and "Labeled": As defined in the National Electrical Code, Article 100.
 - 2. Listing and Labeling Agency Qualifications: A "Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory" (NRTL) as defined in OSHA Regulation 1910.7.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CARTRIDGE FUSES

- A. Characteristics: NEMA FU 1, nonrenewable cartridge fuse; class as specified or indicated; current rating as indicated; voltage rating consistent with circuit voltage.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine utilization equipment nameplates and installation instructions to verify proper fuse locations, sizes, and characteristics.
- B. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 FUSE APPLICATIONS

- A. Main Service: Class L, fast acting.
- B. Main Feeders: Class J, time delay.
- C. Motor Branch Circuits: Class RK1, time delay.
- D. Other Branch Circuits: Class RK5, non-time delay.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install fuses in fusible devices as indicated. Arrange fuses so fuse ratings are readable without removing fuse.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install typewritten labels on inside door of each fused switch to indicate fuse replacement information.

END OF SECTION 26 2813

SECTION 26 2816 - DISCONNECT SWITCHES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes individually mounted switches used for the following:
 - 1. Feeder and equipment disconnect switches.
 - 2. Motor disconnect switches.
- B. Related Sections: The following Sections contain requirements that relate to this Section:
 - 1. Division 26 Section "Fuses" for fuses in fusible disconnect switches.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. General: Submit each item in this Article according to the Conditions of the Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.
- B. Product Data for disconnect switches and accessories specified in this Section.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain disconnect switches from one source and by a single manufacturer.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70 for components and installation.
- C. Listing and Labeling: Provide disconnect switches specified in this Section that are listed and labeled.
 - 1. The Terms "Listed" and "Labeled": As defined in the National Electrical Code, Article 100.
 - 2. Listing and Labeling Agency Qualifications: A "Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory" (NRTL) as defined in OSHA Regulation 1910.7.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 DISCONNECT SWITCHES

- A. Enclosed, Nonfusible Switch: NEMA KS 1, Type HD, with lockable handle.
- B. Enclosed, Fusible Switch, 800 A and Smaller: NEMA KS 1, Type HD, clips to accommodate specified fuses, enclosure consistent with environment where located, handle lockable with 2 padlocks, and interlocked with cover in CLOSED position.
- C. Enclosure: NEMA KS 1, Type 1, unless otherwise specified or required to meet environmental conditions of installed location.
 - 1. Outdoor Locations: Type 3R.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install disconnect switches in locations as indicated, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Install disconnect switches level and plumb.
- C. Connect disconnect switches and components to wiring system and to ground as indicated and instructed by manufacturer.
 - 1. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. Where manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.
- D. Identify each disconnect switch according to requirements specified in Division 16 Section "Basic Electrical Materials and Methods."

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing: After installing disconnect switches and after electrical circuitry has been energized, demonstrate product capability and compliance with requirements.
 - 1. Procedures: Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA ATS, Section 7.5 for disconnect switches. Certify compliance with test parameters.
- B. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, remove and replace with new units and retest.

3.3 CLEANING

- A. After completing system installation, including outlet fittings and devices, inspect exposed finish. Remove burrs, dirt, and construction debris and repair damaged finish including chips, scratches, and abrasions.

END OF SECTION 26 2816

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 26 5100 - INTERIOR LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes interior lighting fixtures, lighting fixtures mounted on exterior building surfaces, lamps, ballasts, emergency lighting units, and accessories.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of lighting fixture indicated, arranged in order of fixture designation. Include data on features, accessories, and the following:
 - 1. Dimensions of fixtures.
 - 2. Certified results of laboratory tests for fixtures and lamps for photometric performance.
 - 3. Emergency lighting unit battery and charger.
 - 4. Fluorescent and high-intensity-discharge ballasts.
 - 5. Types of lamps.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fixtures, Emergency Lighting Units, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.
- C. NFPA 101 Compliance: Comply with visibility and luminance requirements for exit signs.

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Fixtures, Mounting Hardware, and Trim: Coordinate layout and installation of lighting fixtures with ceiling system and other construction.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. General Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Article shall not deprive Owner of other rights Owner may have under other provisions of the Contract Documents and shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties made by Contractor under requirements of the Contract Documents.
- B. Special Warranty for Batteries: Written warranty, executed by manufacturer agreeing to replace rechargeable batteries that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Special Warranty Period for Batteries: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than 5 years from date of Substantial Completion. Full warranty shall apply for first year, and prorated warranty for last four years.
- C. Special Warranties for Fluorescent Ballasts: Written warranty, executed by manufacturer agreeing to replace fluorescent ballasts that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Special Warranty Period for Electronic Ballasts: Five years from date of manufacture, but not less than four years from date of Substantial Completion.
 - 2. Special Warranty Period for Electromagnetic Ballasts: Manufacturers' standard warranty, but not less than two years from date of manufacture.
- D. Warranties for LED fixtures: All LED fixtures shall have a 10 year warranty that includes on-site replacement and covers the luminaires finish, power unit and LED's. On-site replacement shall include transportation, removal, and installation of new products.
 - 1. The LED manufacturer shall provide a written ten-year on-site replacement "finish" warranty for luminaires. Finish warranty shall include warranty against failure or substantial deterioration such as blistering, cracking, peeling, chalking, or fading
 - 2. The LED manufacturer shall provide a written ten-year on-site replacement warranty for defective or non-starting power supply units and LED source assemblies, which include, but are not limited to, LED packages, LED arrays, LED modules, LED dies, encapsulates, and phosphors.
 - 3. The LED manufacturer shall provide a written ten-year on-site replacement warranty for any LED source assembly, package, array, or module, which does not include the power supply, against 10% or more of the individual LEDs in that assembly, package, array, or module failing to illuminate.

4. The LED manufacturer warranty period shall begin on the date of final acceptance, as executed by a DD Form 1354. The contractor will provide the contracting officer with the signed warranty certificates prior to final payment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the products indicated in the Lighting Fixture Schedule on the drawings.

2.2 FIXTURES AND FIXTURE COMPONENTS, GENERAL

- A. Metal Parts: Free from burrs, sharp corners, and edges.
- B. Sheet Metal Components: Steel, unless otherwise indicated. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.
- C. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free from light leakage under operating conditions, and arranged to permit relamping without use of tools. Arrange doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other pieces to prevent accidental falling during relamping and when secured in operating position.
- D. Reflecting Surfaces: Minimum reflectance as follows, unless otherwise indicated:
 1. White Surfaces: 85 percent.
 2. Specular Surfaces: 83 percent.
 3. Diffusing Specular Surfaces: 75 percent.
 4. Laminated Silver Metallized Film: 90 percent.
- E. Lenses, Diffusers, Covers, and Globes: 100 percent virgin acrylic plastic or annealed crystal glass, unless otherwise indicated.
 1. Plastic: High resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and ultraviolet radiation.
 2. Lens Thickness: **0.15 inch** minimum, unless greater thickness is indicated.

2.3 FLUORESCENT LAMP BALLASTS

- A. General Requirements: Unless otherwise indicated, features include the following:

1. Designed for type and quantity of lamps indicated at full light output.
 2. Total Harmonic Distortion Rating: Less than 20 percent.
 3. Sound Rating: A.
- B. Electronic Ballasts for Linear Lamps: Unless otherwise indicated, features include the following, besides those in "General Requirements" Paragraph above:
1. Certified Ballast Manufacturer Certification: Indicated by label.
 2. Encapsulation: Without voids in potting compound.
 3. Parallel Lamp Circuits: Multiple lamp ballasts connected to maintain full light output on surviving lamps if one or more lamps fail.
- C. Ballasts for Compact Lamps in Recessed Fixtures: Unless otherwise indicated, additional features include the following:
1. Type: Electronic, fully encapsulated in potting compound.
 2. Power Factor: 90 percent, minimum.
 3. Operating Frequency: 20 kHz or higher.
 4. Flicker: Less than 5 percent.
 5. Lamp Current Crest Factor: Less than 1.7.
 6. Transient Protection: Comply with IEEE C62.41 for Category A1 locations.
 7. Interference: Comply with 47 CFR, Chapter 1, Part 18, Subpart C for limitations on electromagnetic and radio-frequency interference for nonconsumer equipment.
- D. Ballasts for Compact Lamps in Nonrecessed Fixtures: Unless otherwise indicated, additional features include the following:
1. Power Factor: 90 percent, minimum.
 2. Ballast Coil Temperature: 65 deg C, maximum.
 3. Transient Protection: Comply with IEEE C62.41 for Category A1 locations.
 4. Interference: Comply with 47 CFR, Chapter 1, Part 18, Subpart C for limitations on electromagnetic and radio-frequency interference for nonconsumer equipment.
- E. Ballasts for Low-Temperature Environments: As follows:

1. Temperatures **0 Deg F (Minus 17 Deg C)** and Above: Electronic type rated for **0 deg F (minus 17 deg C)** starting temperature.
 2. Temperatures **Minus 20 Deg F (Minus 29 Deg C)** and Above: Electromagnetic type designed for use with high-output lamps.
- F. Ballasts for Low Electromagnetic Interference Environments: Comply with 47 CFR, Chapter 1, Part 18, Subpart C for limitations on electromagnetic and radio-frequency interference for consumer equipment.

2.4 HIGH-INTENSITY-DISCHARGE LAMP BALLASTS

- A. General: Comply with ANSI C82.4. Unless otherwise indicated, features include the following:
1. Type: Constant wattage autotransformer or regulating high-power-factor type, unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Operating Voltage: Match system voltage.
 3. Minimum Starting Temperature: **Minus 22 deg F (Minus 30 deg C)** for single lamp ballasts.
 4. Normal Ambient Operating Temperature: **104 deg F (40 deg C)**.
 5. Open-circuit operation that will not reduce average life.
 6. Auxiliary, Instant-on, Quartz System: Automatically switches quartz lamp on when fixture is initially energized and when momentary power outages occur. Automatically turns quartz lamp off when high-intensity-discharge lamp reaches approximately 60 percent light output.
- B. Encapsulation: Manufacturer's standard epoxy-encapsulated model designed to minimize audible fixture noise.

2.5 EXIT SIGNS

- A. General Requirements: Comply with UL 924 and the following:
1. Sign Colors and Lettering Size: Comply with authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Internally Lighted Signs: As follows:
1. Lamps for AC Operation: Light-emitting diodes, 70,000 hours minimum rated lamp life.

- C. Self-Powered Exit Signs (Battery Type): Integral automatic charger in a self-contained power pack.
 - 1. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, nickel-cadmium type with special warranty.
 - 2. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state type with sealed transfer relay.
 - 3. Operation: Relay automatically energizes lamp from unit when circuit voltage drops to 80 percent of nominal or below. When normal voltage is restored, relay disconnects lamps, and battery is automatically recharged and floated on charger.

2.6 EMERGENCY LIGHTING UNITS

- A. General Requirements: Self-contained units. Comply with UL 924. Units include the following features:
 - 1. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, lead-acid type with minimum 10-year nominal life and special warranty.
 - 2. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state type with sealed transfer relay.
 - 3. Operation: Relay automatically turns lamp on when supply circuit voltage drops to 80 percent of nominal voltage or below. Lamp automatically disconnects from battery when voltage approaches deep-discharge level. When normal voltage is restored, relay disconnects lamps, and battery is automatically recharged and floated on charger.
 - 4. Wire Guard: Where indicated, heavy-chrome-plated wire guard arranged to protect lamp heads or fixtures.
 - 5. Integral Time-Delay Relay: Arranged to hold unit on for fixed interval after restoring power after an outage. Provides adequate time delay to permit high-intensity-discharge lamps to restrike and develop adequate output.

2.7 EMERGENCY FLUORESCENT POWER SUPPLY UNIT

- A. Internal Type: Self-contained, modular, battery-inverter unit factory mounted within fixture body. Comply with UL 924.
 - 1. Test Switch and Light-Emitting Diode Indicator Light: Visible and accessible without opening fixture or entering ceiling space.
 - 2. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, nickel-cadmium type with minimum 10-year nominal life.
 - 3. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state, constant-current type.

4. Operation: Relay automatically energizes lamp from unit when normal supply circuit voltage drops to 80 percent of nominal voltage or below. When normal voltage is restored, relay disconnects lamp, and battery is automatically recharged and floated on charger.

2.8 LAMPS

- A. Fluorescent Color Temperature and Minimum Color-Rendering Index: 3500 K and 85 CRI, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Noncompact Fluorescent Lamp Life: Rated average is 20,000 hours at 3 hours per start when used on rapid-start circuits.
- C. Metal-Halide Color Temperature and Minimum Color-Rendering Index: 3600 K and 70 CRI, unless otherwise indicated.

2.9 FIXTURE SUPPORT COMPONENTS

- A. Comply with Division 26 Section "Basic Electrical Materials and Methods," for channel- and angle-iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.
- B. Single-Stem Hangers: **1/2-inch (12-mm)** steel tubing with swivel ball fitting and ceiling canopy. Finish same as fixture.
- C. Twin-Stem Hangers: Two, **1/2-inch (12-mm)** steel tubes with single canopy arranged to mount a single fixture. Finish same as fixture.
- D. Rod Hangers: **3/16-inch- (5-mm-)** minimum diameter, cadmium-plated, threaded steel rod.
- E. Hook Hangers: Integrated assembly matched to fixture and line voltage and equipped with threaded attachment, cord, and locking-type plug.
- F. Aircraft Cable Support: Use cable, anchorages, and intermediate supports recommended by fixture manufacturer.

2.10 FINISHES

- A. Fixtures: Manufacturer's standard, unless otherwise indicated.
 1. Paint Finish: Applied over corrosion-resistant treatment or primer, free of defects.
 2. Metallic Finish: Corrosion resistant.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Fixtures: Set level, plumb, and square with ceiling and walls, and secure according to manufacturer's written instructions and approved submittal materials. Install lamps in each fixture.
- B. Support for Fixtures in or on Grid-Type Suspended Ceilings: Use grid for support.
 - 1. Install a minimum of four ceiling support system rods or wires for each fixture. Locate not more than 6 inches (150 mm) from fixture corners.
 - 2. Support Clips: Fasten to fixtures and to ceiling grid members at or near each fixture corner.
 - 3. Fixtures of Sizes Less Than Ceiling Grid: Arrange as indicated on reflected ceiling plans or center in acoustical panel, and support fixtures independently with at least two 3/4-inch (20-mm) metal channels spanning and secured to ceiling tees.
- C. Suspended Fixture Support: As follows:
 - 1. Pendants and Rods: Where longer than 48 inches (1200 mm), brace to limit swinging.
 - 2. Stem-Mounted, Single-Unit Fixtures: Suspend with twin-stem hangers.
 - 3. Continuous Rows: Suspend from cable installed according to fixture manufacturer's written instructions and details on Drawings.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Ground equipment.
 - 1. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspect each installed fixture for damage. Replace damaged fixtures and components.
- B. Tests: As follows:
 - 1. Verify normal operation of each fixture after installation.
 - 2. Emergency Lighting: Interrupt electrical supply to demonstrate proper operation.
 - 3. Verify normal transfer to battery source and retransfer to normal.

- C. Malfunctioning Fixtures and Components: Replace or repair, then retest. Repeat procedure until units operate properly.
- D. Corrosive Fixtures: Replace during warranty period.

3.4 CLEANING AND ADJUSTING

- A. Clean fixtures internally and externally after installation. Use methods and materials recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Adjust aimable fixtures to provide required light intensities.

END OF SECTION 26 5100

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 25 5600 - EXTERIOR LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes exterior lighting units with luminaires, lamps, ballasts, poles/support structures, and accessories.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 26 Section "Interior Lighting" for interior fixtures, lamps, ballasts, emergency lighting units, and accessories; and for exterior luminaires normally mounted on buildings.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Lighting Unit: A luminaire or an assembly of luminaires complete with a common support, including pole, post, or other structure, and mounting and support accessories.
- B. Luminaire (Light Fixture): A complete lighting device consisting of lamp(s) and ballast(s), when applicable, together with parts designed to distribute light, to position and protect lamps, and to connect lamps to power supply.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of lighting unit indicated, arranged in order of lighting unit designation. Include data on features, accessories, finishes, and the following:
 - 1. Materials and dimensions of luminaires and poles.
 - 2. Certified results of laboratory tests for fixtures and lamps for photometric performance.
 - 3. High-intensity-discharge luminaire ballasts.
- B. Shop Drawings: Anchor-bolt templates keyed to specific poles and certified by manufacturer.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Luminaires and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, for their indicated use, location, and installation conditions by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction
- B. Comply with ANSI C2.
- C. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING OF POLES

- A. Package aluminum poles for shipping according to ASTM B 660.
- B. Store poles on decay-resistant treated skids at least 12 inches (300 mm) above grade and vegetation. Support poles to prevent distortion and arrange to provide free air circulation.
- C. Retain factory-applied pole wrappings on metal poles until just before pole installation. For poles with nonmetallic finishes, handle with web fabric straps.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Warranties for LED fixtures: All LED fixtures shall have a 10 year warranty that includes on-site replacement and covers the luminaires finish, power unit and LED's. On-site replacement shall include transportation, removal, and installation of new products.
 - 1. The LED manufacturer shall provide a written ten-year on-site replacement "finish" warranty for luminaires. Finish warranty shall include warranty against failure or substantial deterioration such as blistering, cracking, peeling, chalking, or fading
 - 2. The LED manufacturer shall provide a written ten-year on-site replacement warranty for defective or non-starting power supply units and LED source assemblies, which include, but are not limited to, LED packages, LED arrays, LED modules, LED dies, encapsulates, and phosphors.
 - 3. The LED manufacturer shall provide a written ten-year on-site replacement warranty for any LED source assembly, package, array, or module, which does not include the power supply, against 10% or more of the individual LEDs in that assembly, package, array, or module failing to illuminate.
 - 4. The LED manufacturer warranty period shall begin on the date of final acceptance, as executed by a DD Form 1354. The contractor will provide the contracting officer with the signed warranty certificates prior to final payment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the products indicated in the Lighting Fixture Schedule on the drawings.

2.2 LUMINAIRES

- A. Comply with IESNA RP-8 for parameters of lateral light distribution patterns indicated for luminaires.
- B. Metal Parts: Free from burrs, sharp corners, and edges.
- C. Sheet Metal Components: Corrosion-resistant aluminum, unless otherwise indicated. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.
- D. Housings: Rigidly formed, weather- and light-tight enclosures that will not warp, sag, or deform in use. Provide filter/breather for enclosed luminaires.
- E. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free from light leakage under operating conditions, and arranged to permit relamping without use of tools. Arrange doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other pieces to prevent accidental falling during relamping and when secured in operating position. Provide for door removal for cleaning or replacing lens. Arrange to disconnect ballast when door opens.
- F. Exposed Hardware Material: Stainless steel.
- G. Plastic Parts: High resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and ultraviolet radiation.
- H. Reflecting Surfaces: Minimum reflectance as follows, unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. White Surfaces: 85 percent.
 - 2. Specular Surfaces: 83 percent.
 - 3. Diffusing Specular Surfaces: 75 percent.
- I. Lenses and Refractors: Materials as indicated. Use heat- and aging-resistant, resilient gaskets to seal and cushion lens and refractor in luminaire doors.
- J. Photoelectric Relays: As follows:

1. Contact Relays: Single throw, arranged to fail in the on position and factory set to turn light unit on at 1.5 to 3 fc (16 to 32 lx) and off at 4.5 to 10 fc (48 to 108 lx) with 15-second minimum time delay.
 2. Relay Mounting: In luminaire housing.
- K. High-Intensity-Discharge Ballasts: Comply with ANSI C82.4. Constant wattage auto-transformer or regulating high-power-factor type, unless otherwise indicated.
1. Ballast Fuses: One in each ungrounded supply conductor. Voltage and current ratings as recommended by ballast manufacturer.
 2. Single-Lamp Ballasts: Minimum starting temperature of minus 40 deg C.
 3. Open-circuit operation will not reduce average life.
 4. Noise: Uniformly quiet operation, with a noise rating of B or better.
- L. Lamps: Comply with the standard of the ANSI C78 series that is applicable to each type of lamp. Provide luminaires with indicated lamps of designated type, characteristics, and wattage. Where a lamp is not indicated for a luminaire, provide medium wattage lamp recommended by manufacturer for luminaire.
1. Metal-Halide Color Temperature and Minimum Color-Rendering Index: 3600 K and 70 CRI, unless otherwise indicated.

2.3 LUMINAIRE SUPPORT COMPONENTS

- A. Description: Comply with AASHTO LTS-3 for pole or other support structures, brackets, arms, appurtenances, base, and anchorage and foundation.
- B. Wind-Load Strength of Total Support Assembly: Adequate to carry support assembly plus luminaires at indicated heights above grade without failure, permanent deflection, or whipping in steady winds of 100 mph (160 km/h) with a gust factor of 1.3. Support assembly includes pole or other support structures, brackets, arms, appurtenances, base, and anchorage and foundation.
1. Strength Analysis: For each pole type and luminaire combination, multiply the actual equivalent projected area of luminaires and brackets by a factor of 1.1 to obtain the equivalent projected area to be used in pole selection strength analysis.
- C. Finish: Match finish of pole/support structure for arm, bracket, and tenon mount materials.
- D. Mountings, Fasteners, and Appurtenances: Corrosion-resistant items compatible with support components.

1. Materials: Will not cause galvanic action at contact points.
 2. Mountings: Correctly position luminaire to provide indicated light distribution.
 3. Anchor Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication unless stainless-steel items are indicated.
 4. Anchor-Bolt Template: Plywood or steel.
- E. Pole/Support Structure Bases: Anchor type with hold-down or anchor bolts, leveling nuts, and bolt covers.
- F. Steel Poles: Tubing complying with ASTM A 500, Grade B, carbon steel with a minimum yield of **46,000 psig (317 MPa)**; one-piece construction up to **40 feet (12 m)** in length with access handhole in pole wall.
- G. Steel Mast Arms: Fabricated from **NPS 2 (DN50)** black steel pipe, continuously welded to pole attachment plate with span and rise as indicated.
- H. Metal Pole Brackets: Match pole metal. Provide cantilever brackets without under-brace, in sizes and styles indicated, with straight tubular end section to accommodate luminaire.
- I. Pole-Top Tenons: Fabricated to support luminaire or luminaires and brackets indicated, and securely fastened to pole top.
- J. Concrete for Pole Foundations: Comply with Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
1. Design Strength: **3000-psig (20.7-MPa)**, 28-day compressive strength.

2.4 FINISHES

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Steel: Grind welds and polish surfaces to a smooth, even finish.
1. Galvanized Finish: Hot-dip galvanize after fabrication to comply with ASTM A 123.
 2. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 1, "Solvent Cleaning," to remove dirt, oil, grease, and other contaminants that could impair paint bond. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel, complying with SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1, "White Metal Blast Cleaning," or SSPC-SP 8, "Pickling."

3. Interior: Apply one coat of bituminous paint on interior of pole, or otherwise treat to prevent corrosion.
4. Polyurethane Enamel: Manufacturer's standard finish consisting of one or more coats of primer and two finish coats of high-gloss, high-build polyurethane enamel.
 - a. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Concrete Foundations: Construct according to Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
 1. Comply with details for reinforcement and for anchor bolts, nuts, and washers. Verify anchor-bolt templates by comparing with actual pole bases furnished.
 2. Finish for Parts Exposed to View: Trowel and rub smooth. Comply with Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for exposed finish.
- B. Install poles as follows:
 1. Use web fabric slings (not chain or cable) to raise and set poles.
 2. Mount pole to foundation with leveling nuts, and tighten top nuts to torque level recommended by pole manufacturer.
 3. Secure poles level, plumb, and square.
 4. Grout void between pole base and foundation. Use nonshrinking or expanding concrete grout firmly packed in entire void space.
 5. Use a short piece of **1/2-inch- (13-mm-)** diameter pipe to make a drain hole through grout. Arrange to drain condensation from interior of pole.
- C. Luminaire Attachment: Fasten to indicated structural supports.
- D. Luminaire Attachment with Adjustable Features or Aiming: Attach luminaires and supports to allow aiming for indicated light distribution.
- E. Lamp luminaires with indicated lamps according to manufacturer's written instructions. Replace malfunctioning lamps.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Ground equipment.
 - 1. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.
- B. Ground metal poles/support structures according to Division 26 Section "Grounding."
 - 1. Nonmetallic Poles: Ground metallic components of lighting units and foundations. Connect luminaires to grounding system with No. 6 AWG conductor.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspect each installed unit for damage. Replace damaged units.
- B. Tests and Observations: Verify normal operation of lighting units after installing luminaires and energizing circuits with normal power source, and as follows:
 - 1. Check intensity and uniformity of illumination.
 - 2. Check excessively noisy ballasts.
- C. Malfunctioning Fixtures and Components: Replace or repair, then retest. Repeat procedure until units operate properly.

3.4 CLEANING AND ADJUSTING

- A. Clean units after installation. Use methods and materials recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Adjust amiable luminaires and luminaires with adjustable lamp position to provide required light distributions and intensities.

END OF SECTION 26 5600

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 27 0525 - COMMUNICATION AND DATA-PROCESSING EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes wire, cable, connecting devices, installation, and testing for wiring systems to be used as signal pathways for voice and high-speed data transmission.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
- B. IDC: Insulation displacement connector.
- C. LAN: Local area network.
- D. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride.
- E. STP: Shielded twisted pair.
- F. UTP: Unshielded twisted pair.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include data on features, ratings, and performance for each component specified.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include dimensioned plan and elevation views of components.
 - 1. System labeling schedules, including electronic copy of labeling schedules, as specified in Part 3, in software and format selected by Owner.
- C. Product Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of cables, connectors, and terminal equipment certifying that products furnished comply with requirements.
- D. Qualification Data: For firms and persons specified in "Quality Assurance" Article. Provide evidence of applicable registration or certification.

- E. Field Test Reports: Indicate and interpret test results for compliance with performance requirements.
- F. Maintenance Data: For products to include in maintenance manuals specified in Division 1.
- G. The project package will include installation requirements to perform full 100% QA/QC testing of all circuits proposed and provide hard copy test results. All materials proposed to be utilized by the contracted engineer shall be approved for use by the 117th Communications Flight, Communication System Office (CSO).
- H. As-Built Package: Upon completion of the project, the installation activity will provide an as-built package to the District that will contain the following items:
 - 1. Updated floor plans; Hard and Electronic copy size and type to be determined by base CSO.
 - 2. Wire/cable routing schematic
 - 3. Facility assignment records
 - 4. All cable test results
 - 5. Photographs/videotape as appropriate
 - 6. Warranty as applicable; the project will be warranted for a period of fifteen (15) years from completion of installation or as agreed upon by the CSO.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: To be qualified to bid on this project, the contractor shall have successfully completed a minimum of five (5) projects for installation of fiber optic cable and a minimum of ten (10) projects for installation of Category 6 unshielded twisted pair cable.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- D. The installations contractor shall employ, directly or through a subcontract, qualified communications engineers who are certified as Registered Communications Design and Distribution (RCDD) engineers by the Building Industry Consulting Services International (BICSI). The contractor shall employ qualified installers to properly place, terminate and test all related communication cabling. The contractor shall obtain the communications services requirements for the building from the contracting officer or his designated representative during the initial survey.
- E. The installation activity shall accompany base CSO or designated representative on an inspection of the communications cabling and distribution system. The system shall be visually inspected for workmanship, damage, construction flaws, and defects and to in-

sure all components are properly marked and identified. The Installer shall correct all deficiencies noted during the inspection in accordance with the terms of the contract.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate Work of this Section with Owner's telephone switch and LAN equipment suppliers. Coordinate service entrance arrangement with local exchange carrier.
 - 1. Meet jointly with representatives of above organizations and Owner's representatives to exchange information and agree on details of equipment arrangements and installation interfaces.
 - 2. Record agreements reached in meetings and distribute record to other participants.
 - 3. Adjust arrangements and locations of distribution frames and patch panels in equipment rooms and wiring closets to accommodate and optimize arrangement and space requirements of telephone switch and LAN equipment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Coordinate the features of materials and equipment so they form an integrated system. Match components and interconnections for optimum future performance.
- B. Expansion Capability: Unless otherwise indicated, provide spare positions in patch panels and space in backbone cable trays and wireways to accommodate 25 percent future increase in active workstations.
- C. The cabling system shall allow the owner to transmit up to speeds of 100 Mbps plus.
- D. The voice cabling system shall consist of the following:
 - 1. Category 6 plenum rated cable routed between each voice outlet and the patch panels and terminated at each end.
- E. Fiber Backbone Cable. Contractor to place fiber riser from Building 190 to new Communications Rooms as indicated on the site plan, terminating with LC type connectors on each end. Riser should be compatible with OSP Fiber which is 48 strand single mode/48 strand 50 micron laser optimized multi mode hybrid cable. Make terminations with rack mounted FODP in new Communications Room.
- F. Copper Backbone Cable. Contractor to place 200 pair copper house cable riser from the existing building 190 to the new Communications Room, terminated on 110 blocks on Telecommunications Back Board (TBB), location as approved by 117th Communications Flight. This will allow for extension of copper circuits.

2.2 MOUNTING ELEMENTS

- A. Cable Trays: Provide 12" wide ladder style tray with 1-½" side rails and 9" rung spacing in the MDF and IDF rooms.
- B. Raceways and Boxes: Comply with Division 26 Section "Raceways and Boxes."
- C. Vertical Cable Management Rails: Rails shall be 6' high, 6" wide with rungs on front and rear.
- D. Rack Mounted Plugmold: Plugmold shall be 6' long with 12 outlets, each on 5.25" centers, and a 15' cord.
- E. Distribution Racks: Freestanding aluminum units designed for telecommunications terminal support and coordinated with dimensions of units to be supported. The contractor will install a minimum of 2 ADC, 19 inch wide, 2-post racks, 7 feet tall in Communications Room. This will ensure future growth in racks after initial occupation. The racks will be equipped with ADC, vertical and horizontal wire management systems and 2U Blank Panels; to ensure orderly installation of patch cords between various components on the equipment rack. Each rack will be grounded to the contractor provided telecommunications main grounding bus bar (TMGB) or telecommunications grounding bus bar (TGB) with a 6 AWG [4.1 mm (0.16 in)], stranded, green insulated wire. A Cooper B-Line SBTMGB12K is what the base standard is and would request that as the choice for TMGB. A ladder tray will be used to cascade cabling from the Cable Tray. The 117th Communications Flight will advise where to mount all equipment items in the rack system.
 - 1. Approximate Module Dimensions: 84 inches high by 19 inches wide.
 - 2. Finish: Baked-polyester powder coat.
 - 3. Securely bolt to floor.
 - 4. Uninterruptable Power Supply: Contractor shall install and supply a UPS that will provide 1 hour of run time. The UPS shall be mounted in rack located in each Communications Room.
- F. Telecommunications Back Board (TBB): The contractor will provide ¾" Plywood Back Board painted with flame retardant paint on all walls in the Communications Rooms. The 117th Communications Flight will choose color. The Equipment Racks will come off of TBB.

2.3 TWISTED-PAIR CABLES, CONNECTORS, AND TERMINAL EQUIPMENT

- A. Copper Horizontal Cable: The distribution cable, from Telecommunications Room (TR) to Telecommunications Boxes, to be used on this project provided by the contractor is ADC, Category 6, 4 pair, 23 AWG [0.51 mm (0.020 in)], twisted-pair, Communications Plenum Cable rated (CMP-rated). All cable must meet or exceed the ANSI/TIA/EIA-568-B1 requirements. Four per box will be in accordance with ANG ETL 01-1 section

16.5 (Attachment 2). Any deviations to can only be approved by the 117th Communications Flight.

- B. Data Patch Cords: ADC category 6 data patch cords shall be provided by contractor for Communication Room equipment interconnection and office end equipment connection. The color of these cords shall be Blue. These data line cords will be provided to the 117th Communication Flight prior to installation completion.
- C. Listed as complying with Categories 6 of EIA/TIA-568-A.
- D. Conductors: Solid copper.
- E. UTP Cable: Comply with EIA/TIA-568-A. Four thermoplastic-insulated, individually twisted pairs of conductors; No. 24 AWG, color-coded; data cables enclosed in orange PVC jacket and voice cables in a blue PVC jacket.
- F. UTP Cable Connecting Hardware: Comply with EIA/TIA-568-A. IDC type, using modules designed for punch-down caps or tools.
 - 1. IDC Terminal Block Modules: Integral with connector bodies, including plugs and jacks where indicated.
 - 2. IDC Connecting Hardware: Consistent throughout Project.
- G. Patch Panel: Modular panels housing multiple, numbered jack units with IDC-type connectors at each jack for permanent termination of pair groups of installed cables. Contractor will install quantity necessary of ADC, 48-port, RJ45 patch panels in the racks for Distribution and Voice Layer cables. The one for Voice Layer will accept termination of 100 pair house cable (2 pair per port) to a 110 Block on the TBB next to the cable extension. Proper wire management spools will be required to route jumper wire from one to the other. This will allow the phone service to be routed over the 100 pair cable and patched out to the remaining Distribution Patch Panels.
 - 1. Number of Jacks per Field: One for each four-pair conductor group of indicated cables, plus spares and blank positions adequate to satisfy specified expansion criteria.
 - 2. Mounting: Rack.
- H. Jacks and Jack Assemblies for UTP Cable: Modular, color-coded, RJ-45 receptacle units with integral IDC-type terminals. Use keyed jacks for data service. Modular jacks shall be provided per Air National Guard Engineering Technical Letter section 16.5. The modular jack will be category 6, T568A pin out. The color of jacks to be determined by the 117th Communication Flight.
- I. Workstation Outlets: Dual jack-connector assemblies mounted in single or multigang faceplate. Faceplates shall be four-port equipped with four modular category 6 jacks. Angled face plates are preferred. They will be ivory in color if not otherwise indicated by customer

1. Mounting: Flush, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Legend: Factory label by silk-screening or engraving.

2.4 FIBER-OPTIC CABLES, CONNECTORS, AND TERMINAL EQUIPMENT

- A. Cables: Factory fabricated, jacketed, low loss, glass type, fiber optic, multimode and single mode as indicated on the plans.
 1. Backbone, Strands per Cable: See drawings.
- B. Optical Fiber Patch Cords: These cords shall be provided by the contractor as necessary: Aqua in color, Angled Polished Connectors.
- C. Cable Connectors: LC connectors.
- D. Patch Panel: Modular panels housing multiple-numbered duplex cable connectors. As manufactured by ADC.
 1. Permanent Connection: Permanently connect one end of each connector module to installed cable fiber.
 2. Number of Connectors per Field: One for each fiber of cable or cables assigned to field, plus spares and blank positions adequate to satisfy specified expansion criteria.
 3. Mounting: Rack.

2.5 IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

- A. Comply with Division 26 Section "Basic Electrical Materials and Methods" and the following:
 1. Cable Labels: Self-adhesive vinyl wraparound tape markers, machine printed with alphanumeric cable designations.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL

- A. All fiber optic and Category 6 cable, data jacks and faceplates, patch panels, MDF frames, outlet boxes, conduit, cable support hardware, sleeves, etc. as required to complete the installation described in these specifications and the drawings shall be supplied and installed by this contractor.
- B. All work will be completed to conform to the:
 1. Air National Guard Engineering Technical Letter 01-1 Section 16.5
 2. Manufacturers' specifications.

3. Latest edition of the National Electrical Code®.
4. Latest edition of the National Electrical Safety Code®.
5. ANSI/TIA/EIA-568-B.1, Commercial Building Telecommunications Cabling Standard, Part 1: General Requirements.
6. TIA/EIA-569-B, Commercial Building Standards for Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces.
7. ANSI/TIA/EIA-606-A, Administration Standard for Commercial Telecommunications Infrastructure.
8. ANSI-J-STD-607-A Commercial Building Grounding (Earthing) and Bonding Requirements for Telecommunications.
9. Latest edition of the BICSI Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual.
10. Latest edition of the BICSI Network Design Reference Manual.
11. Latest edition of the BICSI Information Transport Systems Installation Manual.
12. All local codes and ordinances.
13. Where a conflict exists, this SOW, ANG ETL, local codes and ordinances will supersede all other requirements in the preceding order.

3.2 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine pathway elements intended for cable. Check raceways, cable trays, and other elements for compliance with space allocations, installation tolerances, hazards to cable installation, and other conditions affecting installation. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.3 APPLICATION OF MEDIA

- A. Backbone Cable for Data Service: Use fiber-optic cable for runs between equipment rooms and wiring closets and for runs between wiring closets.
- B. Horizontal Cables for Data Service: Use UTP cable complying with Category 6 of EIA/TIA-568-A for runs between the MDF and workstation outlets.
- C. Horizontal Cables for Voice Service: Use UTP cable complying with Category 6 of EIA/TIA-568-A for runs between the MDF and outlets.

3.4 CATEGORY 6 CABLE INSTALLATION

- A. Wiring Method: Install wiring in raceway and cable tray except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters and except in accessible ceiling spaces where cable wiring method may be used. Use UL-listed plenum cable in environmental air spaces, including plenum ceilings. Conceal raceway and wiring except in unfinished spaces. Raceway for outlets shall be routed to the cable tray and bonded to the cable tray.

- B. Install cable using techniques, practices, and methods that are consistent with Category 6 rating of components and that ensure Category 6 performance of completed and linked signal paths, end to end.
- C. Install cable without damaging conductors, shield, or jacket.
- D. Do not bend cable in handling or in installing to smaller radii than minimums recommended by manufacturer.
- E. Pull cables without exceeding cable manufacturer's recommended pulling tensions.
 - 1. Pull cables simultaneously if more than one is being installed in the same raceway.
 - 2. Use pulling compound or lubricant if necessary. Use compounds that will not damage conductor or insulation.
 - 3. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire/cable grips, that will not damage media or raceway.
- F. Install exposed cable parallel and perpendicular to surfaces or exposed structural members, and follow surface contours where possible.
- G. Secure and support cable at intervals not exceeding 48 inches with J-hooks or cable tray and not more than 6 inches from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
- H. Wiring within Wiring Closets and Enclosures: Provide adequate length of conductors. Train conductors to terminal points with no excess. Use lacing bars to restrain cables, to prevent straining connections, and to prevent bending cables to smaller radii than minimums recommended by manufacturer.
- I. Separation of Wires: Comply with EIA/TIA-569 rules for separating unshielded copper communication and data-processing equipment cables from potential EMI sources, including electrical power lines and equipment.
- J. Cables shall be routed in groups of similar types. (i.e. data outlet cables grouped together, fiber optic cables grouped together, etc.)
- K. Horizontal cabling routed above ceilings shall be supported using the following methods.
 - 1. Cables supported on J-hooks designed specifically for this purpose. Support J-hooks from structure with threaded rod. Hang J-hooks approximately two feet above the lay-in ceiling.
 - 2. Cables independently supported using cabling clips attached to the ceiling structure or slab.
- L. All cable shall be neatly routed above the lay-in ceiling along one side of the corridor. Branch out across the corridors as necessary to serve the rooms. Cabling shall be routed

in a manner which will allow the owner to maintain access to the cables, electrical systems and HVAC equipment above the ceiling. Maintainability of all systems above the ceiling is critical.

- M. All cables shall be bundled and tie wrapped together. Tie wrapping shall occur on four foot intervals throughout the space. Tie wraps should not bite into the cable, but should form loosely around the cables as not to depress the cable.
- N. Cables above the corridor ceiling shall be supported using cable tray and wall mounted J-hooks equal to Caddy CAT32 with any necessary attachment hardware.
- O. Cables shall be routed into conduits stubbed up above the ceiling from each outlet (bushing on end of conduit). Cabling shall be routed in conduit above non-accessible ceilings.
- P. All cables shall pass acceptable test requirements and levels as detailed in the "Field Quality Control" section of these specifications. Contractor to remedy any cabling problems or defects in order to pass or comply with testing. This includes terminations and the re-pull on new cable as required at no additional cost to the owner.
- Q. Cables shall not be spliced.
- R. Ends of cables shall be terminated by the contractor on both ends unless otherwise noted.
- S. Provide proper temporary protection of cable after pulling is complete before final dressing and terminations are complete. Do not leave cable laying on floor. Bundle and tie wrap up off of the floor.
- T. Contractor shall insure that cabling is a minimum of 5" away from all light fixtures.
- U. Contractor shall install sleeves with bushings as necessary in walls for routing cables to the outlets. Install a minimum of five (5) 3" sleeves with bushings for the MDF. Fire-stop all firewall penetrations.
- V. When cables turn down below ceiling at the MDF, contractor shall install sleeves through the lay-in ceiling (bushing on each end). Cutting a hole in the ceiling tile is not acceptable.
- W. Install a J-hook directly above the drop to every outlet. Bundle and tie wrap up 5' of slack cable prior to entering the wall.
- X. Cable Terminations
 - 1. Terminations shall be made in accordance with EIA TIA 568B standard.
 - 2. Terminations shall be RJ45 type.
 - 3. Route individual four pair category 6 cable to the backside of each patch panel and punch down onto a port. Label each port on the front and rear of each panel.

4. Maintain twists of each pair to the punch down point. Do not strip more than one-half inch of insulation from the cable at termination points.

Y. Outlets

1. Install outlets per manufacturer's instructions and recommendations.
2. Install and terminate all UTP cabling at each outlet as per manufacturer's instructions and recommendations.
3. Provide an outlet label on each cover plate and inside each wall box.
4. Leave at least 12" of slack cable at each outlet.

3.5 FIBER OPTIC INSTALLATION

A. Fiber optic cable shall be installed inside buildings using the same methods as twisted pair; however, the following guidelines should be observed:

1. Do not exceed maximum pulling tension.
2. Do not exceed minimum installed and long term bend radius.
3. Avoid sharp bends and corners.
4. Provide additional crush/mechanical protection in high risk environments.
5. Do not exceed maximum vertical rise specification unless intermediate tension relief is used.
6. Observe all governing building and fire codes (either by using a properly listed cable or suitable raceway).
7. Do not deform the cable jacket, specifically when using cable fasteners or ties.
8. All fiber optic cabling shall be routed in conduit. Install an extra pull string in all conduit.

B. When installing fiber optic cable in vertical runs, the following special guidelines should be observed:

1. Work from the top down, when possible.
2. Install intermediate split wire mesh grip(s) wherever the maximum vertical rise is exceeded.
3. Secure the cable in the riser wiring closets with cable ties or straps as needed to prevent accidental damage to cable.

C. When installing fiber optic cable, the following guidelines should be observed at termination and splice points:

1. The amount of cable slack at termination points should allow the cable to be routed to the termination location with enough additional cable to reach a convenient location for the polishing, plus an additional ten feet.
2. Fiber optic warning signs should be placed on all conduits containing fiber optic cable. Warning signs can help prevent damage resulting from the cable being mistaken for something else. Install signs at each end of the cable and every 20 feet in between.

- D. When pulling fiber optic cable, the following guidelines should be observed:
 - 1. Yellow pulling compound should be used if making long or difficult pulls to reduce cable drag.
 - 2. When pulling fiber optic cable by any mechanical device (winch, etc.) A dynameter must be used to ensure the maximum tensile strength is not exceeded.
 - 3. The mechanical pulling device will be equipped with clutches or shear pins to ensure this.
 - 4. The fiber cable will be attached to the pull line via the strength member or mesh grip.
- E. Provide labeling of each cable indicating 'TO' and 'FROM' information.
- F. Bring fiber optic cables into patch panels or cabinets at one location. Innerduct around cables shall extend to patch panel or cabinet entrance. Secure cables inside patch panel or cabinet at entrance point by tying the fiber jacket and/or strength members. Break out individual fiber cables inside of panel or cabinet. Coil up approximately 6 feet of spare cable before applying LC connector.
- G. Cable Terminations
 - 1. Terminations shall be LC type and shall be installed per the manufacturer's instructions onto each individual strand of fiber optic cable and shall be terminated on the backside of the fiber optic patch panel.

3.6 GROUNDING

- A. Comply with Division 26 Section "Grounding."
- B. Ground cable shields, drain conductors, and equipment to eliminate shock hazard and to minimize ground loops, common-mode returns, noise pickup, cross talk, and other impairments.
- C. Bond shields and drain conductors to ground at only one point in each circuit.
- D. Signal Ground Terminal: Locate in each equipment room and wiring closet. Isolate from power system and equipment grounding.
- E. Signal Ground Bus: Mount on wall of main equipment room with standoff insulators.
- F. Signal Ground Backbone Cable: Extend from signal ground bus to signal ground terminal in each wiring closet and equipment room.

3.7 INSTALLATION IN EQUIPMENT ROOMS AND WIRING CLOSETS

- A. Mount patch panels and other connecting hardware on racks, unless otherwise indicated.

- B. Group connecting hardware for cables into separate logical fields.
- C. Use patch panels to terminate cables entering the space, unless otherwise indicated.

3.8 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components complying with applicable requirements in Division 26 Section "Basic Electrical Materials and Methods" and the following Specifications.
- B. General
 - 1. All labels shall have an adhesive backing for permanent attachment.
 - 2. All labels shall be of sufficient size. Minimum size shall be 1½" W x 3/16" H for outlets, outlet cables and patch panels.
 - 3. The contractor will label all Racks, Patch Fields, Communications Boxes, Wiring, and Cabling determined by the 117th Communications Flight.
- C. Installation
 - 1. Install labels straight.
 - 2. Install labels at locations previously specified and as follows:
 - a. Outlet faceplates.
 - b. Inside of outlet box.
 - c. Outlet cable inside box.
 - d. Outlet cable in ceiling above outlet.
 - e. Outlet cable at rear of patch panel.
 - f. Front and rear of patch panels.
 - g. Fiber optic cable at patch panels.
- D. Text Size and Information
 - 1. Text shall be as large and bold as possible.
 - 2. All outlets and outlet cables shall contain the outlet number, room number, MDF/IDF number, patch panel number and port number.
- E. Within Connector Fields, in Wiring Closets and Equipment Rooms: Label each connector and each discrete unit of cable-terminating and connecting hardware. Where similar jacks and plugs are used for both communication and data-processing equipment, use a different color for jacks and plugs of each service.
- F. Cables, General: Label each cable within 4 inches (100 mm) of each termination and tap, where it is accessible in a cabinet or junction or outlet box, and elsewhere as indicated.
- G. Exposed Cables and Cables in Cable Trays and Wire Troughs: Label each cable at intervals not exceeding 15 feet (4.5 m).

- H. Cable Schedule: Post in prominent location in each wiring closet and equipment room. List incoming and outgoing cables and their designations, origins, and destinations. Protect with rigid frame and clear plastic cover. Provide electronic copy of final comprehensive schedules for Project, in software and format selected by Owner.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. General

1. The following cabling systems shall be tested after installation is fully completed.
 - a. Data and voice outlet cabling from each outlet to the patch panel port, including test patch cables.
 - b. Fiber optic cabling from the IDF's to the MDF. All strands shall be tested.
2. Testing shall follow EIA TIA 568, TSB 36 and TSB 40 standards.

- B. Testing: On installation of cable and connectors, demonstrate product capability and compliance with requirements. Test each signal path for end-to-end performance from each end of all pairs installed. Remove temporary connections when tests have been satisfactorily completed. All cable installed shall be tested per BICSI Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual Chapter 11 (Field Testing). Any deviation must be approved by the Base CSO. A hard copy and an electronic media of choice as selected by the owner (e.g., compact disc [CD] or flash card) containing the test results will be provided to the Communications Flight Base Plans Office. Each strand of the optical fiber cable shall be tested.

1. Copper Cable Procedures: Inspect for physical damage and test each conductor signal path for continuity and shorts. Use Class 2 bidirectional Category 6 tester. Test for faulty connectors, splices, and terminations. Test according to EIA/TIA-TSB 67, "Transmission Performance Specifications for Field Testing of Unshielded Twisted-Pair Cabling Systems." Link performance for UTP cables must meet minimum criteria of EIA/TIA-568-A.
2. Fiber-Optic Cable Procedures: Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test, including optional procedures, stated in NETA ATS, Section 7.25. Certify compliance with test parameters and manufacturer's written recommendations. Test optical performance with optical power meter capable of generating light at all appropriate wavelengths.

C. Category 6 Cable Testing

1. Cable testing shall be performed with a Micro-Test Pentascanner Plus or equivalent test unit. Test unit shall be capable of providing a Level 2 accuracy test and have a category 6 printout.
2. Each outlet/cable shall be tested and certified. Each pair of the end to end system shall be tested. End to end is from the outlet RJ45 port through the RJ45 port at the Category 6 data patch panel. A 10' patch cable shall be used at the patch panel end and a 3' patch cable shall be used at the outlet end so that the outlet, outlet

- termination, cable, patch panel termination, patch cables and patch panel port can be seen in the test.
3. Test results shall be positive and favorable. End to end attenuation loss and near end cross talk shall meet or exceed category 6, EIA/TIA 568, TSB 36 requirements.
 4. If a problem or failed test occurs, the contractor shall evaluate and remedy the problem. After a problem has been remedied, the contractor shall re-test the circuit and analyze test results. The contractor shall continue this process until the cable passes all tests.
 5. Each outlet/cable test shall include:
 - a. Overall cable length
 - b. System continuity
 - c. Proper connectivity
 - d. Open pairs
 - e. Short circuits
 - f. Reversed pairs
 - g. EMI noise induction
 - h. Damaged cable
 - i. Stretched, chinked or crimped cable
 - j. Attenuation loss in dB
 - k. Near end cross talk in dB
 6. Provide the owner with three (3) copies of the test units results for all cables.
- D. Fiber Optic Cable Testing
1. The fiber cables shall be tested in both directions.
 2. All test results shall be in writing giving all readings, date, tested by, and totals.
 3. All testing shall be performed by using an Optical Power Meter (Wilcom Model T339 or approved equivalent).
 4. Each strand shall be tested and the following information be turned over to the owner in chart form:
 - a. From Point to Point
 - b. Fiber I.D. Label No.
 - c. RX Level
 - d. Attenuation Total
 - e. Wave Length
 - f. Reference Level
 5. Each strand shall not exceed a level of 3.0db of attenuation.
- E. Correct malfunctioning units at Project site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, remove and replace with new units and retest.

3.10 CLEANING

- A. After completing system installation, including outlet fittings and devices, inspect exposed finish. Remove burrs, dirt, and construction debris and repair damaged finish, including chips, scratches, and abrasions.

3.11 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain systems.
 - 1. Train Owner's maintenance personnel on procedures and schedules for starting and stopping, troubleshooting, servicing, and maintaining equipment and schedules.
 - 2. Train designated personnel in cable-plant management operations, including changing signal pathways for different workstations, rerouting signals in failed cables, and extending wiring to establish new workstation outlets.
 - 3. Review data in maintenance manuals. Refer to Division 1 Section "Contract Closeout."
 - 4. Schedule training with Owner, through Architect, with at least seven days' advance notice.

END OF SECTION 27 0525

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 28 3111 - FIRE ALARM AND MASS NOTIFICATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes fire alarm systems and mass notification systems with manual stations, detectors, signal equipment, controls, and devices.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. FACP: Fire alarm control panel.
- B. LED: Light-emitting diode.
- C. Definitions in NFPA 72 apply to fire alarm terms used in this Section.

1.4 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. This section of the specification includes the furnishing, installation, and connection of an intelligent reporting, microprocessor controlled, addressable, fire detection and emergency voice alarm communication system. It shall include, but not be limited to, alarm initiating devices, alarm notification appliances, control panels, auxiliary control devices, annunciators, power supplies, and wiring as shown on the drawings and specified herein.
- B. The fire alarm system shall comply with requirements of NFPA Standard 72 for Protected Premises Signaling Systems except as modified and supplemented by this specification. The system shall be electrically supervised and monitor the integrity of all conductors.
- C. The system shall be an active/interrogative type system where each addressable device is repetitively scanned, causing a signal to be transmitted to the main fire alarm control panel (FACP) indicating that the device and its associated circuit wiring is functional. Loss of this signal at the main FACP shall result in a trouble indication as specified hereinafter for the particular input.

- D. The facility shall have an emergency voice alarm communication system. Digitally stored message sequences shall notify the building occupants that a fire or life safety condition has been reported. Message generator(s) shall be capable of automatically distributing up to eight (8) simultaneous, unique messages to appropriate audio zones within the facility based on the type and location of the initiating event. The Fire Command Center (FCC) shall also support Emergency manual voice announcement capability for both system wide or selected audio zones, and shall include provisions for the system operator to override automatic messages system wide or in selected zones.
- E. The system shall be support additional, alternate Fire Command Centers, which shall be capable of simultaneous monitoring of all system events. Alternate Fire Command Centers shall also support an approved method of transferring the control functions to an alternate Fire Command Center when necessary. All Fire Command Centers shall be individually capable of assuming Audio Command functions such as Emergency Paging, audio zone control functions, and Firefighter's Telephone communication functions.
- F. Each designated zone shall transmit separate and different alarm, supervisory and trouble signals to the Fire Command Center (FCC) and designated personnel in other buildings at the site via a multiplex communication network.
- G. The fire alarm system shall be manufactured by an ISO 9001 certified company and meet the requirements of BS EN9001: ANSI/ASQC Q9001-1994.
- H. The system and its components shall be Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. listed under the appropriate UL testing standard as listed herein for fire alarm applications and the installation shall be in compliance with the UL listing.
- I. The installing company shall employ NICET (minimum Level II Fire Alarm Technology) technicians on site to guide the final check-out and to ensure the systems integrity.
- J. Ensure system meets all requirements in UFC 3-600-01 and UFC 4-021-01.

1.5 SCOPE

- A. A new intelligent reporting, microprocessor controlled fire detection system shall be installed in accordance with the specifications and drawings.
- B. The system shall be designed such that each signaling line circuit (SLC) is limited to only 80% of its total capacity at initial installation.
- C. Basic Performance:
 - 1. Alarm, trouble and supervisory signals from all intelligent reporting devices shall be encoded on NFPA Style 6 (Class A) Signaling Line Circuits (SLC).

2. Initiation Device Circuits (IDC) shall be wired Class A (NFPA Style D) as part of an addressable device connected by the SLC Circuit.
3. Notification Appliance Circuits (NAC) shall be wired Class A (NFPA Style Z) as part of an addressable device connected by the SLC Circuit.
4. On Style 6 or 7 (Class A) configurations a single ground fault or open circuit on the system Signaling Line Circuit shall not cause system malfunction, loss of operating power or the ability to report an alarm.
5. Alarm signals arriving at the FACP shall not be lost following a primary power failure (or outage) until the alarm signal is processed and recorded.
6. Speaker circuits may be controlled by NAC outputs built into the amplifiers, which shall function as addressable points on the Digital Audio Loop.
7. Notification Appliance Circuits (NAC) speaker circuits shall be arranged such that there is a minimum of one speaker circuit per floor of the building or smoke zone which ever is greater.
8. Audio amplifiers and tone generating equipment shall be electrically supervised for normal and abnormal conditions.
9. Notification Appliance Circuits (NAC) speaker circuits and control equipment shall be arranged such that loss of any one (1) speaker circuit will not cause the loss of any other speaker circuit in the system.
10. Two-way emergency telephone communication circuits shall be supervised for open and short circuit conditions.
11. Speaker circuits shall be arranged such that there is a minimum of one speaker circuit per smoke zone.
12. Speaker circuits shall be electrically supervised for open and short circuit conditions. If a short circuit exists on a speaker circuit, it shall not be possible to activate that circuit.
13. Audio amplifiers and tone generating equipment shall be electrically supervised for abnormal conditions. Digital amplifiers shall provide built-in speaker circuits, field configurable as four Class B (Style Y), or two Class A (Style Z) circuits.
14. Digital amplifiers shall be capable of storing up to two minutes of digitally recorded audio messages and tones. The digital amplifiers shall also be capable of supervising the connection to the associated digital message generator, and upon loss of that connection shall be capable of one of the following system responses:
 - a. The digital amplifier shall automatically broadcast the stored audio message.
 - b. The digital amplifier shall switch to a mode where a local bus input on the digital amplifier will accept an input to initiate a broadcast of the stored message. This bus input shall be connected to a NAC on a local FACP for the purpose of providing an alternate means of initiating an emergency message during a communication fault condition.
 - c. Speaker circuits shall be either 25 VRMS or 70VRMS. Speaker circuits shall have 20% space capacity for future expansion or increased power output requirements.
 - d. Two-way emergency telephone (Fire Fighter Telephone) communication shall be supported between the Audio Command Center and up to seven (7)

remote Fire Fighter's Telephone locations simultaneously on a telephone riser.

- e. Means shall be provided to connect FFT voice communications to the speaker circuits in order to allow voice paging over the speaker circuit from a telephone handset.
- f. The digital audio message generator shall be of reliable, non-moving parts, and support the digital storage of at least 16 or 32 minutes of tones and emergency messages, shall support programming options to string audio segments together to create up to 1000 messages, or to loop messages and parts of messages to repeat for pre-determined cycles or indefinitely.

D. Basic System Functional Operation

- 1. When a fire alarm condition is detected and reported by one of the system initiating devices, the following functions shall immediately occur:
 - a. The System Alarm LED shall flash.
 - b. A local piezo electric signal in the control panel shall sound.
 - c. The 640-character LCD display shall indicate all information associated with the fire alarm condition, including the type of alarm point and its location within the protected premises.
 - d. Printing and history storage equipment shall log the information associated each new fire alarm control panel condition, along with time and date of occurrence.
 - e. All system output programs assigned via control-by-event interlock programming to be activated by the particular point in alarm shall be executed, and the associated system outputs (notification appliances and/or relays) shall be activated.
 - f. The audio portion of the system shall sound the proper audio signal (consisting of tone, voice, or tone and voice) to the appropriate zones.

1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Wiring Diagrams: Detail wiring and differentiate between manufacturer-installed and field-installed wiring. Include diagrams for equipment and for system with all terminals and interconnections identified.
 - 2. Battery.
- C. Product Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of system components certifying that products furnished comply with requirements.

- D. Installer Certificates: Signed by manufacturer certifying that installers comply with requirements.
- E. Submissions to Authorities Having Jurisdiction: In addition to distribution requirements for Submittals specified in Division 1 Section "Submittals," make an identical submission to authorities having jurisdiction. Include copies of annotated Contract Drawings as needed to depict component locations to facilitate review. Resubmit if required to make clarifications or revisions to obtain approval. On receipt of comments from authorities having jurisdiction, submit them to Architect for review.
- F. Certificate of Completion: Comply with NFPA 72.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who is an authorized representative of the FACP manufacturer for both installation and maintenance of units required for this Project.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing systems similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance.
- C. Source Limitations: Obtain fire alarm system components through one source from a single manufacturer.
- D. Compliance with Local Requirements: Comply with applicable building code, local ordinances and regulations, and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- E. Comply with NFPA 72.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MAIN FIRE ALARM CONTROL PANEL OR NETWORK NODE:

- A. The main FACP Central Console shall contain a microprocessor based Central Processing Unit (CPU). The CPU shall communicate with and control the following types of equipment used to make up the system: intelligent addressable smoke and thermal (heat) detectors, addressable modules, control circuits, and notification appliance circuits, local and remote operator terminals, printers, annunciators, and other system controlled devices. The contractor shall provide and install a new Monaco transceiver with an antenna in order to communicate with the existing base central station. Coordinate the Monaco transceiver model with the base to ensure proper communication with the existing central station. Install the antenna as required by Monaco and install conduit from the transceiver to the antenna location for antenna cabling.

- B. In conjunction with intelligent Loop Control Modules and Loop Expander Modules, the main FACP shall perform the following functions:
1. Supervise and monitor all intelligent addressable detectors and monitor modules connected to the system for normal, trouble and alarm conditions.
 2. Supervise all initiating signaling and notification circuits throughout the facility by way of connection to addressable monitor and control modules.
 3. Detect the activation of any initiating device and the location of the alarm condition. Operate all notification appliances and auxiliary devices as programmed. In the event of CPU failure, all SLC loop modules shall fallback to degrade mode. Such degrade mode shall treat the corresponding SLC loop control modules and associated detection devices as conventional two-wire operation. Any activation of a detector in this mode shall automatically activate associated Notification Appliance Circuits.
 4. Visually and audibly annunciate any trouble, supervisory, security or alarm condition on operator's terminals, panel display, and annunciators.
 5. When a fire alarm condition is detected and reported by one of the system initiating devices or appliances, the following functions shall immediately occur:
 - a. The system alarm LED shall flash.
 - b. A local piezo-electric audible device in the control panel shall sound a distinctive signal.
 - c. The 640-character backlit LCD display shall indicate all information associated with the fire alarm condition, including the type of alarm point and its location within the protected premises.
 - d. Printing and history storage equipment shall log and print the event information along with a time and date stamp.
 - e. All system outputs assigned via preprogrammed equations for a particular point in alarm shall be executed, and the associated system outputs (alarm notification appliances and/or relays) shall be activated.
 - f. When a trouble condition is detected and reported by one of the system initiating devices or appliances, the following functions shall immediately occur:
 - g. The system trouble LED shall flash.
 - h. A local piezo-electric audible device in the control panel shall sound a distinctive signal.
 - i. The 640-character backlit LCD display shall indicate all information associated with the trouble condition, including the type of trouble point and its location within the protected premises.
 - j. Printing and history storage equipment shall log and print the event information along with a time and date stamp.
 - k. All system outputs assigned via preprogrammed equations for a particular point in trouble shall be executed, and the associated system outputs (trouble notification appliances and/or relays) shall be activated.

6. When a supervisory condition is detected and reported by one of the system initiating devices or appliances, the following functions shall immediately occur:
 - a. The system trouble LED shall flash.
 - b. A local piezo-electric audible device in the control panel shall sound a distinctive signal.
 - c. The 640-character backlit LCD display shall indicate all information associated with the supervisory condition, including the type of trouble point and its location within the protected premises.
 - d. Printing and history storage equipment shall log and print the event information along with a time and date stamp.
 - e. All system outputs assigned via preprogrammed equations for a particular point in trouble shall be executed, and the associated system outputs (notification appliances and/or relays) shall be activated.
7. When a security alarm condition is detected and reported by one of the system initiating devices or appliances, the following functions shall immediately occur:
 - a. The system security LED shall flash.
 - b. A local piezo-electric audible device in the control panel shall sound a distinctive signal.
 - c. The 640-character backlit LCD display shall indicate all information associated with the fire alarm condition, including the type of alarm point and its location within the protected premises.
 - d. Printing and history storage equipment shall log and print the event information along with a time and date stamp.
 - e. All system outputs assigned via preprogrammed equations for a particular point in alarm shall be executed, and the associated system outputs (alarm notification appliances and/or relays) shall be activated.
8. When a pre-alarm condition is detected and reported by one of the system initiating devices or appliances, the following functions shall immediately occur:
 - a. The system pre-alarm LED shall flash.
 - b. A local piezo-electric audible device in the control panel shall sound a distinctive signal.
 - c. The 640-character backlit LCD display shall indicate all information associated with the fire alarm condition, including the type of alarm point and its location within the protected premises.
 - d. Printing and history storage equipment shall log and print the event information along with a time and date stamp.
 - e. All system outputs assigned via preprogrammed equations for a particular point in alarm shall be executed, and the associated system outputs (alarm notification appliances and/or relays) shall be activated.

C. Operator Control

1. Acknowledge Switch:
 - a. Activation of the control panel acknowledge switch in response to new alarms and/or troubles shall silence the local panel piezo electric signal and change the alarm and trouble LEDs from flashing mode to steady-ON mode. If multiple alarm or trouble conditions exist, depression of this switch shall advance the LCD display to the next alarm or trouble condition. In addition, the FACP shall support Block Acknowledge to allow multiple trouble conditions to be acknowledged with a single depression of this switch.
 - b. Depression of the Acknowledge switch shall also silence all remote annunciator piezo sounders.
2. Signal Silence Switch:
 - a. Depression of the Signal Silence switch shall cause all programmed alarm notification appliances and relays to return to the normal condition. The selection of notification circuits and relays that are silence able by this switch shall be fully field programmable within the confines of all applicable standards. The FACP software shall include silence inhibit and auto-silence timers.
3. Drill Switch:
 - a. Depression of the Drill switch shall activate all programmed notification appliance circuits. The drill function shall latch until the panel is silenced or reset.
4. System Reset Switch:
 - a. Depression of the System Reset switch shall cause all electronically latched initiating devices to return to their normal condition. Initiating devices shall re-report if active. Active notification appliance circuits shall not silence upon Reset. Systems that de-activate and subsequently re-activate notification appliance circuits shall not be considered equal. All programmed Control-By-Event equations shall be re-evaluated after the reset sequence is complete if the initiating condition has cleared. Non-latching trouble conditions shall not clear and re-report upon reset.
5. Lamp Test:
 - a. The Lamp Test switch shall activate all local system LEDs, light each segment of the liquid crystal display and display the panel software revision for service personal.
6. Scroll Display Keys:
 - a. There shall be Scroll Display keys for FIRE ALARM, SECURITY, SUPERVISORY, TROUBLE, and OTHER EVENTS. Depression of the Scroll Display key shall display the next event in the selected queue allowing the operator to view events by type.
7. Print Screen:
 - a. Depression of the PRINT SCREEN switch shall send the information currently displayed on the 640-character display to the printer.

D. System Capacity and General Operation

1. The control panel shall be capable of expansion via up to 10 SLC modules. Each module shall support a maximum of 318 analog/addressable devices for a maximum system capacity of 3180 points. The system shall be capable of 3072 annunciation points per system regardless of the number of addressable devices.
2. The Fire Alarm Control Panel shall include a full featured operator interface control and annunciation panel that shall include a backlit 640-character liquid crystal display, individual, color coded system status LEDs, and a QWERTY style alpha-numeric keypad for the field programming and control of the fire alarm system. Said LCD shall also support graphic bit maps capable of displaying the company name and logo of either the owner or installing company.
3. All programming or editing of the existing program in the system shall be achieved without special equipment and without interrupting the alarm monitoring functions of the fire alarm control panel.
4. The FACP shall be able to provide the following software and hardware features:
 - a. Pre-signal and Positive Alarm Sequence: The system shall provide means to cause alarm signals to only sound in specific areas with a delay of the alarm from 60 to up to 180 seconds after start of alarm processing. In addition, a Positive Alarm Sequence selection shall be available that allows a 15-second time period for acknowledging an alarm signal from a fire detection/initiating device. If the alarm is not acknowledged within 15 seconds, all local and remote outputs shall automatically activate immediately.
 - b. Smoke Detector Pre-alarm Indication at Control Panel: To obtain early warning of incipient or potential fire conditions, the system shall support a programmable option to determine system response to real-time detector sensing values above the programmed setting. Two levels of Pre-alarm indication shall be available at the control panel: alert and action.
 - c. Alert: It shall be possible to set individual smoke detectors for pre-programmed pre-alarm thresholds. If the individual threshold is reached, the pre-alarm condition shall be activated.
 - d. Action: If programmed for Action and the detector reaches a level exceeding the pre-programmed level, the control panel shall indicate an action condition. Sounder bases installed with either heat or smoke detectors shall automatically activate on action Pre-Alarm level, with general evacuation on Alarm level.
 - e. The system shall support a detector response time to meet world annunciation requirements of less than 3 seconds.
 - f. Device Blink Control: Means shall be provided to turn off detector/module LED strobes for special areas.
 - g. NFPA 72 Smoke Detector Sensitivity Test: The system shall provide an automatic smoke detector test function that meet the requirements of NFPA 72.
 - h. Programmable Trouble Reminder: The system shall provide means to automatically initiate a reminder that troubles exist in the system. The remind-

- er will appear on the system display and (if enabled) will sound a piezo alarm.
- i. On-line or Off-line programming: The system shall provide means to allow panel programming either through an off-line software utility program away from the panel or while connected and on-line. The system shall also support upload and download of programmed database and panel executive system program to a Personal Computer/laptop.
 - j. History Events: The panel shall maintain a history file of the last 4000 events, each with a time and date stamp. History events shall include all alarms, troubles, operator actions, and programming entries. The control panels shall also maintain a 1000 event Alarm History buffer, which consists of the 1000 most recent alarm events from the 4000 event history file.
 - k. Smoke Control Modes: The system shall provide means to perform FSCS mode Smoke Control to meet NFPA-92A and 90B and HVAC mode to meet NFPA 90A.
 - l. The system shall provide means for all SLC devices on any SLC loop to be auto programmed into the system by specific address. The system shall recognize specific device type ID's and associate that ID with the corresponding address of the device.
 - m. Drill: The system shall support means to activate all silenceable fire output circuits in the event of a practice evacuation or "drill". If enabled for local control, the front panel switch shall be held for a minimum of 2 seconds prior to activating the drill function.
 - n. Passwords and Users: The system shall support two password levels, master and user. Up to 9 user passwords shall be available, each of which may be assigned access to the programming change menus, the alter status menus, or both. Only the master password shall allow access to password change screens.
 - o. Two Wire Detection: The system shall support standard two wire detection devices specifically all models of System Sensor devices, Fenwal PDS-7125/7126 and CPD-7021, Hochiki model SLK-24F/24FH, Edwards 6250B/6270B and 6264B and Simplex models 2098-9201/9202 and 9576.
 - p. Block Acknowledge: The system shall support a block Acknowledge for Trouble Conditions
 - q. Sensitivity Adjust: The system shall provide Automatic Detector Sensitivity Adjust based on Occupancy schedules including a Holiday list of up to 15 days.
 - r. Environmental Drift Control: The system shall provide means for setting Environmental Drift Compensation by device. When a detector accumulates dust in the chamber and reaches an unacceptable level but yet still below the allowed limit, the control panel shall indicate a maintenance alert warning. When the detector accumulates dust in the chamber above the allowed limit, the control panel shall indicate a maintenance urgent warning.
 - s. Custom Action Messages: The system shall provide means to enter up to 100 custom action messages of up to 160 characters each. It shall be possible to assign any of the 100 messages to any point.

- t. **Print Functions:** The system shall provide means to obtain a variety of reports listing all event, alarm, trouble, supervisory, or security history. Additional reports shall be available for point activation for the last Walk Test performed, detector maintenance report containing the detector maintenance status of each installed addressable detector, all network parameters, all panel settings including broad cast time, event ordering, and block acknowledge, panel timer values for Auto Silence, Silence Inhibit, AC Fail Delay time and if enabled, Proprietary Reminder, and Remote Reminder timers, supervision settings for power supply and printers, all programmed logic equations, all custom action messages, all non-fire and output activations (if pre-programmed for logging) all active points filtered by alarms only, troubles only, supervisory alarms, prealarms, disabled points and activated points, all installed points filtered by SLC points, logic zones, annunciators, releasing zones, special zones, and trouble zones.
- u. **Local Mode:** If communication is lost to the central processor the system shall provide added survivability through the intelligent loop control modules. Inputs from devices connected to the SLC and loop control modules shall activate outputs on the same loop when the inputs and outputs have been set with point programming to participate in local mode or when the type codes are of the same type: that is, an input with a fire alarm type code shall activate an output with a fire alarm type code.
- v. **Resound based on type for security or supervisory:** The system shall indicate a Security alarm when a monitor module point programmed with a security Type Code activates. If silenced alarms exist, a Security alarm will Resound the panel sounder. The system shall indicate a Supervisory alarm when a monitor module point programmed with a supervisory Type Code activates. If there are silenced alarms, a Supervisory alarm will Resound the panel sounder.
- w. **Read status preview - enabled and disabled points:** Prior to re-enabling points, the system shall inform the user that a disabled device is in the alarm state. This shall provide notice that the device must be reset before the device is enabled thereby avoiding activation of the notification circuits.
- x. **Custom Graphics:** When fitted with an LCD display, the panel shall permit uploading of a custom bit-mapped graphic to the display screen.
- y. **Multi-Detector and Cooperating Detectors:** The system shall provide means to link one detector to up to two detectors at other addresses on the same loop in cooperative multi-detector sensing. There shall be no requirement for sequential addresses on the detectors and the alarm event shall be a result or product of all cooperating detectors chamber readings.
- z. **Tracking/Latching Duct (ion and photo):** The system shall support both tracking and latching duct detectors either ion or photo types.
- aa. **ACTIVE EVENT:** The system shall provide a Type ID called FIRE CONTROL for purposes of air-handling shutdown, which shall be intended to override normal operating automatic functions. Activation of a FIRE CONTROL point shall cause the control panel to (1) initiate the monitor module Control-by-Event, (2) send a message to the panel display, history

- buffer, installed printer and annunciators, (3) shall not light an indicator at the control panel, (4) Shall display ACTIVE on the LCD as well a display a FIRE CONTROL Type Code and other information specific to the device.
- bb. NON-FIRE Alarm Module Reporting: A point with a type ID of NON-FIRE shall be available for use for energy management or other non-fire situations. NON-FIRE point operation shall not affect control panel operation nor shall it display a message at the panel LDC. Activation of a NON-FIRE point shall activate control by event logic but shall not cause any indication on the control panel.
 - cc. Security Monitor Points: The system shall provide means to monitor any point as a type security.
 - dd. One-Man Walk Test: The system shall provide both a basic and advanced walk test for testing the entire fire alarm system. The basic walk test shall allow a single operator to run audible tests on the panel. All logic equation automation shall be suspended during the test and while annunciators can be enabled for the test, all shall default to the disabled state. During an advanced walk test, field-supplied output point programming will react to input stimuli such as CBE and logic equations. When points are activated in advanced test mode, each initiating event shall latch the input. The advanced test shall be audible and shall be used for pull station verification, magnet activated tests on input devices, input and output device and wiring operation/verification.
 - ee. Control By Event Functions: CBE software functions shall provide means to program a variety of output responses based on various initiating events. The control panel shall operate CBE through lists of zones. A zone shall become listed when it is added to a point's zone map through point programming. Each input point such as detector, monitor module or panel circuit module shall support listing of up to 10 zones into its programmed zone map.
 - ff. Permitted zone types shall be general zone, releasing zone and special zone. Each output point (control module, panel circuit module) can support a list of up to 10 zones including general zone, logic zone, releasing zone and trouble zone. It shall be possible for output points to be assigned to list general alarm. Non-Alarm or Supervisory points shall not activate the general alarm zone.
 - gg. 1000 General Zones: The system shall support up to 1000 general purpose software zones for linking inputs to outputs. When an input device activates, any general zone programmed into that device's zone map will be active and any output device that has an active general zone in its map will be active. It shall also be possible to use general zone as arguments in logic equations.
 - hh. 1000 Logic Equations: The system shall support up to 1000 logic equations for AND, OR, NOT, ONLY1, ANYX, XZONE or RANGE operators that allow conditional I/O linking. When any logic equation becomes true, all output points mapped to the logic zone shall activate.

- ii. 10 trouble equations per device: The system shall provide support for up to 10 trouble equations for each device, which shall permit programming parameters to be altered, based on specific fault conditions. If the trouble equation becomes true, all output points mapped to the trouble zone shall activate.
- jj. Control-By-Time: A time based logic function shall be available to delay an action for a specific period of time based upon a logic input with tracking feature. A latched version shall also be available. Another version of this shall permit activation on specific days of the week or year with ability to set and restore based on a 24 hour time schedule on any day of the week or year.
- kk. Multiple agent releasing zones: The system shall support up to 10 releasing zones to protect against 10 independent hazards. Releasing zones shall provide up to three cross-zone and four abort options to satisfy any local jurisdiction requirements.
- ll. Alarm Verification, by device, with timer and tally: The system shall provide a user-defined global software timer function that can be set for a specific detector or indicating panel module input. The timer function shall delay an alarm signal for a user-specified time period and the control panel shall ignore the alarm verification timer if another alarm is detected during the verification period. It shall also be possible to set a maximum verification count between 0 and 20 with the "0" setting producing no alarm verification. When the counter exceeds the threshold value entered, a trouble shall be generated to the panel.

E. Central Processing Unit

- 1. The Central Processing Unit shall communicate with, monitor, and control all other modules within the control panel. Removal, disconnection or failure of any control panel module shall be detected and reported to the system display by the Central Processing Unit.
- 2. The Central Processing Unit shall contain and execute all control-by-event (including Boolean functions including but not limited to AND, OR, NOT, ANYx, and CROSSZONE) programs for specific action to be taken if an alarm condition is detected by the system. Such control-by-event programs shall be held in non-volatile programmable memory, and shall not be lost with system primary and secondary power failure.
- 3. The Central Processing Unit shall also provide a real-time clock for time annotation, to the second, of all system events. The time-of-day and date shall not be lost if system primary and secondary power supplies fail.
- 4. The CPU shall be capable of being programmed on site without requiring the use of any external programming equipment. Systems that require the use of external programmers or change of EPROMs are not acceptable.
- 5. Consistent with UL864 standards, the CPU and associated equipment are to be protected so that voltage surges or line transients will not affect them.

6. Each peripheral device connected to the CPU shall be continuously scanned for proper operation. Data transmissions between the CPU and peripheral devices shall be reliable and error free. The transmission scheme used shall employ dual transmission or other equivalent error checking techniques.
7. The CPU shall provide an EIA-232 interface between the fire alarm control panel and the UL Listed Electronic Data Processing (EDP) peripherals.
8. The CPU shall provide two EIA-485 ports for the serial connection to annunciation and control subsystem components.
9. The EIA-232 serial output circuit shall be optically isolated to assure protection from earth ground.
10. The CPU shall provide one high-speed serial connection for support of network communication modules.
11. The CPU shall provide double pole relays for FIRE ALARM, SYSTEM TROUBLE, SUPERVISORY, and SECURITY. The SUPERVISORY and SECURITY relays shall provide selection for additional FIRE ALARM contacts.

F. Display

1. The system display shall provide all the controls and indicators used by the system operator and may also be used to program all system operational parameters.
2. The display assembly shall contain, and display as required, custom alphanumeric labels for all intelligent detectors, addressable modules, and software zones.
3. The system display shall provide a 640-character backlit alphanumeric Liquid Crystal Display (LCD). It shall also provide ten Light-Emitting-Diodes (LEDs), that indicate the status of the following system parameters: AC POWER, FIRE ALARM, PREALARM, SECURITY, SUPERVISORY, SYSTEM TROUBLE, OTHER EVENT, SIGNALS SILENCED, POINT DISABLED, and CPU FAILURE.
4. The system display shall provide a QWERTY style keypad with control capability to command all system functions, entry of any alphabetic or numeric information, and field programming. Two different password levels with up to ten (one Master and nine User) passwords shall be accessible through the display interface assembly to prevent unauthorized system control or programming.
5. The system display shall include the following operator control switches: ACKNOWLEDGE, SIGNAL SILENCE, RESET, DRILL, and LAMP TEST. Additionally, the display interface shall allow scrolling of events by event type including, FIRE ALARM, SECURITY, SUPERVISORY, TROUBLE, and OTHER EVENTS. A PRINT SCREEN button shall be provided for printing the event currently displayed on the 640-character LCD.

G. Loop (Signaling Line Circuit) Control Module:

1. The Loop Control Module shall monitor and control a minimum of 318 intelligent addressable devices. This includes 159 intelligent detectors (Ionization, Photoelectric, or Thermal) and 159 monitor or control modules.

2. The Loop Control Module shall contain its own microprocessor and shall be capable of operating in a local/degrade mode (any addressable device input shall be capable of activating any or all addressable device outputs) in the unlikely event of a failure in the main CPU.
3. The Loop Control Module shall provide power and communicate with all intelligent addressable detectors and modules on a single pair of wires. This SLC Loop shall be capable of operating as a NFPA Style 6 (Class B) circuit.
4. The SLC interface board shall be able to drive an NFPA Style 6 twisted unshielded circuit up to 12,500 feet in length. The SLC Interface shall also be capable of driving an NFPA Style 6, no twist, no shield circuit for limited distances determined by the manufacturer. In addition, SLC wiring shall meet the listing requirements for it to exit the building or structure. "T"-tapping shall be allowed in either case.
5. The SLC interface board shall receive analog or digital information from all intelligent detectors and shall process this information to determine whether normal, alarm, or trouble conditions exist for that particular device. Each SLC Loop shall be isolated and equipped to annunciate an Earth Fault condition. The SLC interface board software shall include software to automatically maintain the detector's desired sensitivity level by adjusting for the effects of environmental factors, including the accumulation of dust in each detector. The analog information may also be used for automatic detector testing and the automatic determination of detector maintenance requirements.

H. Enclosures:

1. The control panel shall be housed in a UL-listed cabinet suitable for surface or semi-flush mounting. The cabinet and front shall be corrosion protected, given a rust-resistant prime coat, and manufacturer's standard finish.
2. The back box and door shall be constructed of 0.060 steel with provisions for electrical conduit connections into the sides and top.
3. The door shall provide a key lock and include a transparent opening for viewing all indicators. For convenience, the door shall have the ability to be hinged on either the right or left-hand side.
4. The control unit shall be modular in structure for ease of installation, maintenance, and future expansion.

I. Digital Voice Command Center (LOC – Local Operating Console)

1. The Digital Voice Command Center shall contain all equipment required for all audio control, emergency telephone system control, signaling and supervisory functions. This shall include speaker zone indication and control, telephone circuit indication and control, digital voice units, microphone and main telephone handset.
2. Function: The Voice Command Center equipment shall perform the following functions:

- a. Operate as a supervised multi-channel emergency voice communication system.
- b. Operate as a two-way emergency telephone system control center.
- c. Audibly and visually annunciate the active or trouble condition of every speaker circuit and emergency telephone circuit.
- d. Audibly and visually annunciate any trouble condition for digital tone and voice units required for normal operation of the system.
- e. Provide all-call Emergency Paging activities through activation of a single control switch.
- f. As required, provide vectored paging control to specific audio zones via dedicated control switches.
- g. Provide a factory recorded "library" of voice messages and tones in standard WAV. File format, which may be edited and saved on a PC running a current Windows® operating system.
- h. Provide a software utility capable of off-line programming for the VCC operation and the audio message files. This utility shall support the creation of new programs as well as editing and saving existing program files. Uploading or downloading the VCC shall not inhibit the emergency operation of other nodes on the fire alarm network.
- i. Support an optional mode of operation with four analog audio outputs capable of being used with UL 864 fire-listed analog audio amplifiers and SCL controlled switching.
- j. The Digital Voice Command shall be modular in construction, and shall be capable of being field programmable without requiring the return of any components to the manufacturer and without requiring use of any external computers or other programming equipment.
- k. The Digital Voice Command and associated equipment shall be protected against unusually high voltage surges or line transients.

J. Power Supply:

1. The Addressable Main Power Supply shall operate on 120/240 VAC, 50/60 Hz, and shall provide all necessary power for the FACP.
2. The Addressable Main Power Supply shall provide the required power to the CPU using a switching 24 VDC regulator and shall incorporate a battery charger for 24 hours of standby power using dual-rate charging techniques for fast battery recharge.
3. The Addressable Main Power Supply shall provide a battery charger for 24 hours of standby using dual-rate charging techniques for fast battery recharge. The supply shall be capable of charging batteries ranging in capacity from 25-200 amp-hours within a 48-hour period.
4. The Addressable Main Power Supply shall provide a very low frequency sweep earth detect circuit, capable of detecting earth faults.
5. The Addressable Main Power Supply shall be power-limited per UL864 requirements.

K. System Circuit Supervision

1. The FACP shall supervise all circuits to intelligent devices, transponders, annunciators and peripheral equipment and annunciate loss of communication with these devices. The CPU shall continuously scan above devices for proper system operation and upon loss of response from a device shall sound an audible trouble, indicate which device or devices are not responding and print the information in the history buffer and on the printer.
2. Transponders that lose communication with the CPU shall sound an audible trouble and light an LED indicating loss of communications.
3. Sprinkler system valves, standpipe control valves, PIV, and main gate valves shall be supervised for off-normal position.
4. All speaker and emergency phone circuits shall be supervised for opens and shorts. Each transponder speaker and emergency phone circuit shall have an individual ON/OFF indication (green LED).

L. Field Wiring Terminal Blocks

1. All wiring terminal blocks shall be the plug-in/removable type and shall be capable of terminating up to 12 AWG wire. Terminal blocks that are permanently fixed to the PC board are not acceptable.

M. Audio Amplifiers

1. The Audio Amplifiers will provide Audio Power (@25 Volts RMS) for distribution to speaker circuits.
2. Multiple audio amplifiers may be mounted in a single enclosure, either to supply incremental audio power, or to function as an automatically switched backup amplifier(s).
3. The audio amplifier shall include an integral power supply, and shall provide built-in LED indicators for the following conditions:
 - a. Earth Fault on DAP A (Digital Audio Port A)
 - b. Earth Fault on DAP B (Digital Audio Port B)
 - c. Audio Amplifier Failure Detected Trouble
 - d. Active Alarm Bus input
 - e. Audio Detected on Aux Input A
 - f. Audio Detected on Aux Input B
 - g. Audio Detected on Firefighter's Telephone Riser
 - h. Receiving Audio from digital audio riser
 - i. Short circuit on speaker circuit 1
 - j. Short circuit on speaker circuit 2
 - k. Short circuit on speaker circuit 3
 - l. Short circuit on speaker circuit 4
 - m. Data Transmitted on DAP A
 - n. Data Received on DAP A

- o. Data Transmitted on DAP B
 - p. Data Received on DAP B
 - q. Board failure
 - r. Active fiber optic media connection on port A (fiber optic media applications)
 - s. Active fiber optic media connection on port B (fiber optic media applications)
 - t. Power supply Earth Fault
 - u. Power supply 5V present
 - v. Power supply conditions – Brownout, High Battery, Low Battery, Charger Trouble
 - 4. The audio amplifier shall provide the following built-in controls:
 - a. Amplifier Address Selection Switches
 - b. Signal Silence of communication loss annunciation Reset
 - c. Level adjustment for background music
 - d. Enable/Disable for Earth Fault detection on DAP A
 - e. Enable/Disable for Earth Fault detection on DAP A
 - f. Switch for 2-wire/4-wire FFT riser
 - 5. Adjustment of the correct audio level for the amplifier shall not require any special tools or test equipment.
 - 6. Includes audio input and amplified output supervision, back up input, and automatic switch over function, (if primary amplifier should fail).
 - 7. System shall be capable of backing up digital amplifiers.
- N. Audio Message Generator (Prerecorded Voice)/Speaker Control:
- 1. Each initiating zone or intelligent device shall interface with an emergency voice communication system capable of transmitting a prerecorded voice message to all speakers in the building.
 - 2. Actuation of any alarm initiating device shall cause a prerecorded message to sound over the speakers. The message shall be repeated four (4) times. Pre- and post-message tones shall be supported.
 - 3. A built-in microphone shall be provided to allow paging through speaker circuits.
 - 4. System paging from emergency telephone circuits shall be supported.
 - 5. The audio message generator shall have the following indicators and controls to allow for proper operator understanding and control:
 - a. LED Indicators:
 - 1) Lamp Test
 - 2) Trouble
 - 3) Off-Line Trouble
 - 4) Microphone Trouble
 - 5) Phone Trouble
 - 6) Busy/Wait
 - 7) Page Inhibited
 - 8) Pre/Post Announcement Tone

- O. Controls with associated LED Indicators:
 - 1. Speaker Switches/Indicators
 - a. The speaker circuit control switches/indicators shall include visual indication of active and trouble status for each speaker circuit in the system.
 - b. The speaker circuit control panel shall include switches to manually activate or deactivate each speaker circuit in the system.
 - 2. Emergency Two-Way Telephone Control Switches/Indicators
 - a. The emergency telephone circuit control panel shall include visual indication of active and trouble status for each telephone circuit in the system.
 - b. The telephone circuit control panel shall include switches to manually activate or deactivate each telephone circuit in the system.
- P. Remote Transmissions:
 - 1. Provide local energy or polarity reversal or trip circuits as required.
 - 2. The system shall be capable of operating a polarity reversal or local energy or fire alarm transmitter for automatically transmitting fire information to the fire department.
 - 3. Provide capability and equipment for transmission of zone alarm and trouble signals to remote operator's terminals, system printers and annunciators.
 - 4. Transmitters shall be compatible with the systems and equipment they are connected to such as timing, operation and other required features.
- Q. System Expansion:
 - 1. Design the main FACP and required components so that the system can be expanded in the future (to include the addition of twenty percent more circuits or zones) without disruption or replacement of the existing control panel. This shall include hardware capacity, software capacity and cabinet space.
- R. Field Programming
 - 1. The system shall be programmable, configurable and expandable in the field without the need for special tools, laptop computers, or other electronic interface equipment. There shall be no firmware changes required to field modify the system time, point information, equations, or annunciator programming/information.
 - 2. It shall be possible to program through the standard FACP keyboard all system functions.
 - 3. All field defined programs shall be stored in non-volatile memory.
 - 4. Two levels of password protection shall be provided in addition to a key-lock cabinet. One level shall be used for status level changes such as point/zone disable or manual on/off commands (Building Manager). A second (higher-level) shall be used for actual change of the life safety program (installer). These passwords shall be five (5) digits at a minimum. Upon entry of an invalid password for the third time within a one minute time period an encrypted number shall be displayed. This number can be used as a reference for determining a forgotten password.

5. The system programming shall be "backed" up via an upload/download program, and stored on compatible removable media. A system back-up disk shall be completed and given in duplicate to the building owner and/or operator upon completion of the final inspection. The program that performs this function shall be "non-proprietary", in that, it shall be possible to forward it to the building owner/operator upon his or her request.
6. The installer's field programming and hardware shall be functionally tested on a computer against known parameters/norms which are established by the FACP manufacturer. A software program shall test Input-to-Output correlations, device Type ID associations, point associations, time equations, etc. This test shall be performed on an IBM-compatible PC with a verification software package. A report shall be generated of the test results and two copies turned in to the engineer(s) on record.

S. Specific System Operations

1. Smoke Detector Sensitivity Adjust: Means shall be provided for adjusting the sensitivity of any or all analog intelligent smoke detectors in the system from the system keypad or from the keyboard of the video terminal. Sensitivity range shall be within the allowed UL window.
2. Alarm Verification: Each of the Intelligent Addressable Smoke Detectors in the system may be independently selected and enabled to be an alarm verified detector. The alarm verification function shall be programmable from 5 to 50 seconds and each detector shall be able to be selected for verification during the field programming of the system or anytime after system turn-on. Alarm verification shall not require any additional hardware to be added to the control panel. The FACP shall keep a count of the number of times that each detector has entered the verification cycle. These counters may be displayed and reset by the proper operator commands.

T. System Point Operations:

1. Any addressable device in the system shall have the capability to be enabled or disabled through the system keypad or video terminal.
2. System output points shall be capable of being turned on or off from the system keypad or the video terminal.
3. Point Read: The system shall be able to display the following point status diagnostic functions without the need for peripheral equipment. Each point shall be annunciated for the parameters listed:
 - a. Device Status.
 - b. Device Type.
 - c. Custom Device Label.
 - d. Software Zone Label.
 - e. Device Zone Assignments.
 - f. Analog Detector Sensitivity.

- g. All Program Parameters.
- 4. System Status Reports: Upon command from an operator of the system, a status report will be generated and printed, listing all system statuses:
- 5. System History Recording and Reporting: The fire alarm control panel shall contain a history buffer that will be capable of storing up to 4000 system events. Each of these events will be stored, with time and date stamp, until an operator requests that the contents be either displayed or printed. The contents of the history buffer may be manually reviewed; one event at a time, and the actual number of activations may also be displayed and or printed. History events shall include all alarms, troubles, operator actions, and programming entries.
- 6. The history buffer shall use non-volatile memory. Systems which use volatile memory for history storage are not acceptable.
- 7. Automatic Detector Maintenance Alert: The fire alarm control panel shall automatically interrogate each intelligent system detector and shall analyze the detector responses over a period of time.
- 8. If any intelligent detector in the system responds with a reading that is below or above normal limits, then the system will enter the trouble mode, and the particular Intelligent Detector will be annunciated on the system display, and printed on the optional system printer. This feature shall in no way inhibit the receipt of alarm conditions in the system, nor shall it require any special hardware, special tools or computer expertise to perform.
- 9. The system shall include the ability (programmable) to indicate a "pre-alarm" condition. This will be used to alert maintenance personal when a detector is at 80% of its alarm threshold in a 60 second period.
- U. Transient Voltage Surge Suppression: Provide transient voltage surge suppression at the FACP for the incoming power supply and the outgoing connection to the remote station receiving unit.

2.2 SYSTEM COMPONENTS

A. Programmable Electronic Sounders:

- 1. Electronic sounders shall operate on 24 VDC nominal.
- 2. Electronic sounders shall be field programmable without the use of special tools, at a sound level of at least 90 dBA measured at 10 feet from the device.
- 3. Shall be flush or surface mounted as shown on plans.

B. Speakers:

- 1. All speakers shall operate on 25 VRMS or with field selectable output taps from 0.5 to 2.0 Watts.
- 2. Speakers in corridors and public spaces shall produce a nominal sound output of 84 dBA at 10 feet (3m).
- 3. Frequency response shall be a minimum of 400 HZ to 4000 HZ.

4. The back of each speaker shall be sealed to protect the speaker cone from damage and dust.
- C. Strobe lights shall meet the requirements of the ADA, UL Standard 1971, be fully synchronized, and shall meet the following criteria:
1. The maximum pulse duration shall be 2/10 of one second.
 2. Strobe intensity shall meet the requirements of UL 1971.
 3. The flash rate shall meet the requirements of UL 1971.
 4. Mass notification strobe shall be blue and the fire alarm strobe shall be clear.
- D. Waterflow Indicator:
1. Waterflow Switches shall be an integral, mechanical, non-coded, non-accumulative retard type.
 2. Waterflow Switches shall have an alarm transmission delay time which is conveniently adjustable from 0 to 60 seconds. Initial settings shall be 30-45 seconds.
 3. All waterflow switches shall come from a single manufacturer and series.
 4. Waterflow switches shall be provided and connected under this section but installed by the mechanical contractor.
 5. Where possible, locate waterflow switches a minimum of one (1) foot from a fitting which changes the direction of the flow and a minimum of three (3) feet from a valve.
- E. Sprinkler and Standpipe Valve Supervisory Switches:
1. Each sprinkler system water supply control valve riser, zone control valve, and standpipe system riser control valve shall be equipped with a supervisory switch. Standpipe hose valves, and test and drain valves shall not be equipped with supervisory switches.
 2. PIV (post indicator valve) or main gate valves shall be equipped with a supervisory switch.
 3. The switch shall be mounted so as not to interfere with the normal operation of the valve and adjusted to operate within two revolutions toward the closed position of the valve control, or when the stem has moved no more than one-fifth of the distance from its normal position.
 4. The supervisory switch shall be contained in a weatherproof aluminum housing, which shall provide a 3/4 inch (19 mm) conduit entrance and incorporate the necessary facilities for attachment to the valves.
 5. The switch housing shall be finished in red baked enamel.
 6. The entire installed assembly shall be tamper proof and arranged to cause a switch operation if the housing cover is removed, or if the unit is removed from its mounting.
 7. Valve supervisory switches shall be provided and connected under this section and installed by mechanical contractor.

- a. This unit shall provide for each zone: alarm indications, using a red alarm a yellow trouble long-life LEDs and control switches for the control of fire alarm control panel functions. The annunciator will also have an ON-LINE LED, local piezo electric signal, local acknowledge/lamp test switch, and custom slide-in zone/function identification labels.
- b. Switches shall be available for remote annunciation and control of output points in the system, system acknowledge, telephone zone select, speaker select, global signal silence, and global system reset within the confines of all applicable standards.

2.3 SYSTEM COMPONENTS – ADDRESSABLE DEVICES

A. Addressable Devices - General

1. Addressable devices shall provide an address-setting means using rotary decimal switches.
2. Addressable devices shall use simple to install and maintain decade (numbered 0 to 9) type address switches. Devices which use a binary address or special tools for setting the device address, such as a dip switch are not an allowable substitute.
3. Detectors shall be Analog and Addressable, and shall connect to the fire alarm control panel's Signaling Line Circuits.
4. Addressable smoke and thermal detectors shall provide dual (2) status LEDs. Both LEDs shall flash under normal conditions, indicating that the detector is operational and in regular communication with the control panel, and both LEDs shall be placed into steady illumination by the control panel, indicating that an alarm condition has been detected. If required, the flashing mode operation of the detector LEDs can be programmed off via the fire control panel program.
5. The fire alarm control panel shall permit detector sensitivity adjustment through field programming of the system. Sensitivity can be automatically adjusted by the panel on a time-of-day basis.
6. Using software in the FACP, detectors shall automatically compensate for dust accumulation and other slow environmental changes that may affect their performance. The detectors shall be listed by UL as meeting the calibrated sensitivity test requirements of NFPA Standard 72, Chapter 7.
7. The detectors shall be ceiling-mount and shall include a separate twist-lock base which includes a tamper proof feature.
8. The following bases and auxiliary functions shall be available:
 - a. Sounder base rated at 85 DBA minimum.
 - b. Form-C Relay base rated 30VDC, 2.0A
 - c. isolator base
9. The detectors shall provide a test means whereby they will simulate an alarm condition and report that condition to the control panel. Such a test may be initiated

ed at the detector itself (by activating a magnetic switch) or initiated remotely on command from the control panel.

10. Detectors shall also store an internal identifying type code that the control panel shall use to identify the type of device (example: ION, PHOTO, THERMAL).

B. Addressable Manual Fire Alarm Box (manual station)

1. Addressable manual fire alarm boxes shall, on command from the control panel, send data to the panel representing the state of the manual switch and the addressable communication module status. They shall use a key operated test-reset lock, and shall be designed so that after actual emergency operation, they cannot be restored to normal use except by the use of a key.
2. All operated stations shall have a positive, visual indication of operation and utilize a key type reset.
3. Manual fire alarm boxes shall be double action type and shall be constructed of Lexan with clearly visible operating instructions provided on the cover. The word FIRE shall appear on the front of the stations in raised letters, 1.75 inches (44 mm) or larger.

C. Intelligent Photoelectric Smoke Detector

1. The detectors shall use the photoelectric (light-scattering) principal to measure smoke density and shall, on command from the control panel, send data to the panel representing the analog level of smoke density.

D. Intelligent Thermal Detectors

1. Thermal detectors shall be intelligent addressable devices rated at 135 degrees Fahrenheit (58 degrees Celsius) and have a rate-of-rise element rated at 15 degrees F (9.4 degrees C) per minute. It shall connect via two wires to the fire alarm control panel signaling line circuit.

E. Intelligent Duct Smoke Detector

1. The smoke detector housing shall accommodate either an intelligent ionization detector or an intelligent photoelectric detector, of that provides continuous analog monitoring and alarm verification from the panel.
2. When sufficient smoke is sensed, an alarm signal is initiated at the FACP, and appropriate action taken to change over air handling systems to help prevent the rapid distribution of toxic smoke and fire gases throughout the areas served by the duct system.

F. Addressable Dry Contact Monitor Module

1. Addressable monitor modules shall be provided to connect one supervised IDC zone of conventional alarm initiating devices (any N.O. dry contact device) to one of the fire alarm control panel SLCs.

2. The IDC zone shall be suitable for Style D or Style B operation. An LED shall be provided that shall flash under normal conditions, indicating that the monitor module is operational and in regular communication with the control panel.
3. For difficult to reach areas, the monitor module shall be available in a miniature package and shall be no larger than 2-3/4 inch (70 mm) x 1-1/4 inch (31.7 mm) x 1/2 inch (12.7 mm). This version need not include Style D or an LED.

G. Addressable Control Module

1. Addressable control modules shall be provided to supervise and control the operation of one conventional NACs of compatible, 24 VDC powered, polarized audio/visual notification appliances.
2. The control module NAC may be wired for Style Z or Style Y (Class A/B) with up to 1 amp of inductive A/V signal, or 2 amps of resistive A/V signal operation.
3. Audio/visual power shall be provided by a separate supervised power circuit from the main fire alarm control panel or from a supervised UL listed remote power supply.
4. The control module shall be suitable for pilot duty applications and rated for a minimum of 0.6 amps at 30 VDC.

H. Addressable Relay Module

1. Addressable Relay Modules shall be available for HVAC control and other building functions. The relay shall be form C and rated for a minimum of 2.0 Amps resistive or 1.0 Amps inductive. The relay coil shall be magnetically latched to reduce wiring connection requirements, and to insure that 100% of all auxiliary relay or NACs may be energized at the same time on the same pair of wires.

I. Isolator Module

1. Isolator modules shall be provided to automatically isolate wire-to-wire short circuits on an SLC Class A or Class B branch. The isolator module shall limit the number of modules or detectors that may be rendered inoperative by a short circuit fault on the SLC loop segment or branch. At least one isolator module shall be provided for each floor or protected zone of the building.
2. If a wire-to-wire short occurs, the isolator module shall automatically open-circuit (disconnect) the SLC. When the short circuit condition is corrected, the isolator module shall automatically reconnect the isolated section.
3. The isolator module shall not require address-setting, and its operations shall be totally automatic. It shall not be necessary to replace or reset an isolator module after its normal operation.
4. The isolator module shall provide a single LED that shall flash to indicate that the isolator is operational and shall illuminate steadily to indicate that a short circuit condition has been detected and isolated.

J. Serially Connected Annunciator Requirements

1. The annunciator shall communicate to the fire alarm control panel via an EIA 485 (multi-drop) two-wire communications loop. The system shall support two 6,000 ft. EIA-485 wire runs. Up to 32 annunciators, each configured up to 96 points, may be connected to the connection, for a system capacity of 3,072 points of annunciation.
2. An EIA-485 repeater shall be available to extend the EIA-485 wire distance in 3,000 ft. increments. An optional version shall allow the EIA-485 circuit to be transmitted over Fiber optics. The repeater shall be UL864 approved.
3. Each annunciator shall provide up to 96 alarm and 97 trouble indications using a long-life programmable color LED's. Up to 96 control switches shall also be available for the control of Fire Alarm Control Panel functions. The annunciator will also have an "ON-LINE" LED, local piezo sounder, local acknowledge and lamp test switch, and custom zone/function identification labels.
4. The annunciator may be field configured to operate as a "Fan Control Annunciator". When configured as "Fan Control," the annunciator may be used to manually control fan or damper operation and can be set to override automatic commands to all fans/dampers programmed to the annunciator.
5. Annunciator switches may be programmed for System control such as, Global Acknowledge, Global Signal Silence, Global System Reset, and on/off control of any control point in the system.
6. An optional module shall be available to utilize annunciator points to drive EIA-485 driven relays. This shall extend the system point capacity by 3,072 remote contacts.
7. The LED annunciator shall offer an interface to a graphic style annunciator and provide each of the features listed above.

2.4 BATTERIES AND EXTERNAL CHARGER

A. Battery:

1. Shall be 12 volt, Gell-Cell type.
2. Battery shall have sufficient capacity to power the fire alarm system for not less than forty-eight hours plus 15 minutes of alarm upon a normal AC power failure. Ensure system meets UFC 3-600-01.
3. The batteries are to be completely maintenance free. No liquids are required. Fluid level checks refilling, spills and leakage shall not be required.

B. External Battery Charger:

1. Shall be completely automatic, with constant potential charger maintaining the battery fully charged under all service conditions. Charger shall operate from a 120/240-volt 50/60 hertz source.
2. Shall be rated for fully charging a completely discharged battery within 48 hours while simultaneously supplying any loads connected to the battery.

3. Shall have protection to prevent discharge through the charger.
4. Shall have protection for overloads and short circuits on both AC and DC sides.

2.5 GUARDS FOR PHYSICAL PROTECTION

- A. Provide welded mesh of size and shape for the manual pull stations, smoke detectors, notification appliances at location noted on the drawings.

2.6 WIRE

- A. Non-Power-Limited Circuits: Solid-copper conductors with 600-V rated, 75 deg C, color-coded insulation.
 1. Low-Voltage Circuits: No. 14 AWG, minimum.
 2. Line-Voltage Circuits: No. 12 AWG, minimum.
- B. Power-Limited Circuits: NFPA 70, Types FPL, FPLR, or FPLP, as recommended by manufacturer.
- C. Wiring shall be in accordance with local, state and national codes (e.g., NEC Article 760) and as recommended by the manufacturer of the fire alarm system. Number and size of conductors shall be as recommended by the fire alarm system manufacturer, but not less than 18 AWG (1.02 mm) for initiating device circuits and signaling line circuits, and 14 AWG (1.63 mm) for notification appliance circuits.
- D. All wire and cable shall be listed and/or approved by a recognized testing agency for use with a protective signaling system.
- E. The system shall permit the use of IDC and NAC wiring in the same conduit with the multiplex communication loop.
- F. All field wiring shall be completely supervised. In the event of a primary power failure, disconnected standby battery, removal of any internal modules, or any open circuits in the field wiring; a trouble signal will be activated until the system and its associated field wiring are restored to normal condition.
- G. All analog voice speaker and analog telephone circuits shall use twisted/shielded pair to eliminate cross talk.
- H. Terminal Boxes, Junction Boxes and Cabinets: All boxes and cabinets shall be UL listed for their intended purpose.
- I. Initiating circuits shall be arranged to serve like categories (manual, smoke, waterflow). Mixed category circuitry shall not be permitted except on signaling line circuits connected to intelligent reporting devices.

- J. The fire alarm control panel shall be connected to a separate dedicated branch circuit, maximum 20 amperes. This circuit shall be labeled at the main power distribution panel as FIRE ALARM. Fire alarm control panel primary power wiring shall be 12 AWG.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION

- A. Connect the FACP with a disconnect switch with lockable handle or cover.
- B. Manual Pull Stations: Mount semiflush in recessed back boxes.
- C. Ceiling-Mounted Smoke Detectors: Not less than 4 inches (100 mm) from a side wall to the near edge. For exposed solid-joist construction, mount detectors on the bottom of joists. On smooth ceilings, install not more than 30 feet (9 m) apart in any direction.
- D. Wall-Mounted Smoke Detectors: At least 4 inches (100 mm), but not more than 12 inches (300 mm), below the ceiling.
- E. Smoke Detectors near Air Registers: Install no closer than 60 inches (1520 mm).
- F. Duct Smoke Detectors: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Verify that each unit is listed for the complete range of air velocity, temperature, and humidity possible when air-handling system is operating.
 - 2. Install sampling tubes so they extend the full width of the duct.
- G. Audible Alarm-Indicating Devices: Install not less than 6 inches (150 mm) below the ceiling. Install bells and horns on flush-mounted back boxes with the device-operating mechanism concealed behind a grille. Combine audible and visible alarms at the same location into a single unit.
- H. Visible Alarm-Indicating Devices: Install adjacent to each alarm bell or alarm horn and at least 6 inches (150 mm) below the ceiling.
- I. Device Location-Indicating Lights: Locate in public space near the device they monitor.
- J. FACP: Surface mount with tops of cabinets not more than 72 inches (1830 mm) above the finished floor.

3.2 WIRING INSTALLATION

- A. Wiring Method: Install wiring in metal raceway according to Division 26 Section "Raceways and Boxes." Conceal raceway except in unfinished spaces and as indicated.

- B. Wiring within Enclosures: Separate power-limited and non-power-limited conductors as recommended by the manufacturer. Install conductors parallel with or at right angles to sides and back of the enclosure. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess. Connect conductors that are terminated, spliced, or interrupted in any enclosure associated with the fire alarm system to terminal blocks. Mark each terminal according to the system's wiring diagrams. Make all connections with approved crimp-on terminal spade lugs, pressure-type terminal blocks, or plug connectors. Use of wire nuts is prohibited.
- C. Cable Taps: Use numbered terminal strips in junction, pull and outlet boxes, cabinets, or equipment enclosures where circuit connections are made.
- D. Color-Coding: Color-code fire alarm conductors differently from the normal building power wiring. Use one color-code for alarm circuit wiring and a different color-code for supervisory circuits. Color-code audible alarm-indicating circuits differently from alarm-initiating circuits. Use different colors for visible alarm-indicating devices. Paint fire alarm system junction boxes and covers red.
- E. Wiring to Remote Alarm Transmitting Device: 1-inch (25-mm) conduit between the FACP and the transmitter. Install number of conductors and electrical supervision for connecting wiring as needed to suit monitoring function.

3.3 TYPICAL OPERATION

- A. Actuation of any manual station, smoke detector heat detector or water flow switch shall cause the following operations to occur unless otherwise specified:
 - 1. Activate all programmed speaker circuits.
 - 2. Actuate all strobe units until the panel is reset.
 - 3. Light the associated indicators corresponding to active speaker circuits.
 - 4. Release all magnetic door holders to doors to adjacent zones on the floor from that the alarm was initiated.
 - 5. Return all elevators to the primary or alternate floor of egress.
 - 6. A smoke detector in any elevator lobby shall, in addition to the above functions, return all elevators to the primary or alternate floor of egress.
 - 7. Smoke detectors in the elevator machine room or top of hoistway shall return all elevators in to the primary or alternate floor. Smoke detectors or heat detectors installed to shut down elevator power shall do so in accordance with ANSI A17.1 requirements and be coordinated with the electrical contractor.
 - 8. Duct type smoke detectors shall, in addition to the above functions shut down the ventilation system or close associated control dampers as appropriate.
 - 9. Activation of any sprinkler system low pressure switch or valve tamper switch shall cause a system supervisory alarm indication.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals according to Division 26 Section "Basic Electrical Materials and Methods."
- B. Install instructions frame in a location visible from the FACP.
- C. Paint power-supply disconnect switch red and label "FIRE ALARM."

3.5 GROUNDING

- A. Signal Ground Terminal: Locate at main equipment rack or cabinet. Isolate from power system and equipment grounding.
- B. Ground equipment and conductor and cable shields. For audio circuits, minimize, to the greatest extent possible, ground loops, common-mode returns, noise pickup, cross talk, and other impairments. Provide 5-ohm ground at main equipment location. Measure, record, and report ground resistance.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect field-assembled components and connections and to supervise pretesting, testing, and adjustment of the system. Report results in writing.
- B. Pretesting: After installation, align, adjust, and balance the system and perform complete pretesting. Determine, through pretesting, the compliance of the system with requirements of Drawings and Specifications. Correct deficiencies observed in pretesting. Replace malfunctioning or damaged items with new ones, and retest until satisfactory performance and conditions are achieved. Prepare forms for systematic recording of acceptance test results.
- C. Report of Pretesting: After pretesting is complete, provide a letter certifying the installation is complete and fully operable, including the names and titles of witnesses to preliminary tests.
- D. Final Test Notice: Provide a minimum of 10 days' notice in writing when the system is ready for final acceptance testing.
- E. Minimum System Tests: Test the system according to procedures outlined in NFPA 72. Minimum required tests are as follows:
 - 1. Verify the absence of unwanted voltages between circuit conductors and ground.
 - 2. Test all conductors for short circuits using an insulation-testing device.
 - 3. With each circuit pair, short circuit at the far end of the circuit and measure the circuit resistance with an ohmmeter. Record the circuit resistance of each circuit on record drawings.
 - 4. Verify that the control unit is in the normal condition as detailed in the manufacturer's operation and maintenance manual.

5. Test initiating and indicating circuits for proper signal transmission under open circuit conditions. One connection each should be opened at not less than 10 percent of initiating and indicating devices. Observe proper signal transmission according to class of wiring used.
 6. Test each initiating and indicating device for alarm operation and proper response at the control unit. Test smoke detectors with actual products of combustion.
 7. Test the system for all specified functions according to the approved operation and maintenance manual. Systematically initiate specified functional performance items at each station, including making all possible alarm and monitoring initiations and using all communications options. For each item, observe related performance at all devices required to be affected by the item under all system sequences. Observe indicating lights, displays, signal tones, and annunciator indications.
 8. Test Both Primary and Secondary Power: Verify by test that the secondary power system is capable of operating the system for the period and in the manner specified.
- F. Retesting: Correct deficiencies indicated by tests and completely retest work affected by such deficiencies. Verify by the system test that the total system meets Specifications and complies with applicable standards.
- G. Report of Tests and Inspections: Provide a written record of inspections, tests, and detailed test results in the form of a test log. Submit log on the satisfactory completion of tests.
- H. Tag all equipment, stations, and other components at which tests have been satisfactorily completed.

3.7 CLEANING AND ADJUSTING

- A. Cleaning: Remove paint splatters and other spots, dirt, and debris. Touch up scratches and marred finish to match original finish. Clean unit internally using methods and materials recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 28 3111

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 310010 - SITE PROTECTION

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. The General Provisions of the Contract including requirements of the Government's Solicitation and Division 01 specifications apply to the work specified in this section.

1.02 DESCRIPTION

- A. The Work of this Section includes the protection and preservation from injury or defacement of all vegetation and objects designated to remain. The contractor shall employ an arborist to instruct contractor on preservation of site trees to remain.
- B. The Contractor is solely responsible for controlling runoff and siltation from the site and onto protected or undisturbed areas of the site or adjacent sites.
- C. The Work of this Section is incidental to the Contract and will not be paid for separately except where unit prices may be in effect.

1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Reference Standards:
 - 1. General:
 - a. Listings: Issues listed by reference, including revisions of issuing authority, form part of this specification section to extent indicated. Issues listed are identified by number, edition, date, title, or other designation established by issuing authority. Issues subsequently referred to are referred to by an issuing authority abbreviation and a basic designation.
 - b. Modification: Modifications (by the Government) to reference standards, if any, are noted with standard.
 - 2. Alabama Department of Transportation (ALDOT), Standard Specifications for Highway Construction, Latest Edition:
 - 3. Alabama handbook for "Erosion Control, Sediment Control, and Stormwater Management on Construction Sites and Urban Areas", published by Alabama Soil and Water Conservation Committee.
 - 4. Local Codes, Ordinances, Regulations.
 - 5. Local Codes, Ordinances, Regulations on tree protection.

- B. Job Meeting: Before proceeding with site clearing operations, review site features to remain and be protected at the site with the Government.
- C. Tree Damages: Extreme care to be taken to save trees that are shown to remain.
 - 1. If any trees to be saved are severely injured so as to cause a loss of natural character to the crown, or so as to impair the life support system or to cause death as a result of construction operation, the Contractor agrees to pay two hundred dollars (\$200) per one inch (1") of caliper, measured four feet (4') above the ground, for trees one inch (1") in caliper and larger, as fixed and liquidated damages, as determined by the Government.
 - 2. Severely damaged trees requiring liquidated damages will be determined by the Government. In lieu of liquidated damages replace trees damaged beyond repair or killed with trees of same specie and size.
 - 3. Damaged trees which are repairable as determined by the Government shall be repaired by a qualified tree surgeon, approved by the Government, and whose services will be at the Contractor's expense.
 - 4. Clean up and repair damages to the Government's satisfaction.
- D. Protect existing sidewalks and curbs to remain to include those in non-work areas.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 PRODUCT/MATERIAL DESCRIPTION

- A. Tree Protection Fencing:
 - 1. Provide and install six-foot (6') high chain link fence, including gates, in accordance with AHD Section 871.
 - 2. Zinc coated steel fabric or wire not less than (9) gauge.
 - 3. Hot-dipped galvanized steel fence supports, framing and fittings of specified sized and weights.
 - 4. Install at limits of tree protection fencing as required to protect tree canopy and roots.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 JOB CONDITIONS

- A. It is intended that the part of the property on which new construction does not occur remain undisturbed and as is, except as noted on Drawings and in Specifications.

- B. Confine storage of materials, temporary facilities, and staging to areas approved by the Government.
- C. Do not carry on construction operations or materials storage within five feet (5') of tree protection fencing.

3.02 TREE PROTECTION

- A. Protect all trees and vegetation to be preserved against damage during construction operations by:
 - 1. Installation of chain link fence as required to protect trees.
 - 2. Installation of hay bales or silt fencing to protect vegetation to remain from siltation, as shown on Drawings or as directed.
- B. Place tree protection before clearing, topsoil stripping, grading, or excavation is begun.
- C. Maintain tree protection in good repair for the duration of the construction operation, or until directed to remove.
- D. Protect Root Systems:
 - 1. Do not permit construction operations, storage material, construction, trailers, etc., within the tree protection fencing.
 - 2. Protect tree roots (area under tree canopy) from damage due to noxious materials in solution caused by run-off or spillage during mixing and placement of construction materials, or drainage from stored materials.
 - 3. Protect from flooding or excessive wetting.
- E. Watering: In case of extreme drought during construction, provide water to specimen trees or groups of trees as determined by the Government.
- F. Earthwork around trees:
 - 1. Maintain existing grade within drip line of trees unless otherwise indicated; where necessary next to new construction, limit earthwork around trees as much as possible.
 - 2. Where trenching or utilities is required within drip line, advise the Government before proceeding. Where roots are pruned, cut sharply and cleanly (do not chop or beak). Hand excavate where directed.
 - 3. Do not allow exposed roots to dry out before permanent fill is placed; provide temporary cover, or pack with peat moss and wrap with burlap; keep moist.

G. Repair of Damaged Trees:

1. Repair tree damaged by construction operations promptly after damage occurs and in a manner acceptable to the Government.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 310200 - TEMPORARY EROSION AND SEDIMENT CONTROL

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Prevention of erosion due to construction activities.
- B. Prevention of sedimentation of waterways, open drainage ways, and storm and sanitary sewers due to construction activities.
- C. Restoration of areas eroded due to insufficient preventive measures.
- D. Compensation of Owner for fines levied by authorities having jurisdiction due to non-compliance by Contractor.

1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM D4355/D4355M - Standard Test Method for Deterioration of Geotextiles by Exposure to Light, Moisture and Heat in a Xenon Arc Type Apparatus; 2014.
- B. ASTM D4491 - Standard Test Methods for Water Permeability of Geotextiles by Permittivity; 1999a (Reapproved 2014).
- C. ASTM D4533 - Standard Test Method for Trapezoid Tearing Strength of Geotextiles; 2011.
- D. ASTM D4632/D4632M - Standard Test Method for Grab Breaking Load and Elongation of Geotextiles; 2015a.
- E. ASTM D4751 - Standard Test Method for Determining Apparent Opening Size of a Geotextile; 2012.
- F. ASTM D4873 - Standard Guide for Identification, Storage, and Handling of Geosynthetic Rolls and Samples; 2002 (Reapproved 2009).
- G. EPA (NPDES) - National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES), Construction General Permit; Current Edition.
- H. Alabama Department of Transportation Standard Specification for Highway Construction, latest edition.
- I. All Soil Erosion and Sediment Control Ordinances in force by Federal, State and Local Governments.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM D4355/D4355M - Standard Test Method for Deterioration of Geotextiles by Exposure to Light, Moisture, and Heat in a Xenon Arc-Type Apparatus 2021.
- B. ASTM D4533/D4533M - Standard Test Method for Trapezoid Tearing Strength of Geotextiles 2015.
- C. ASTM D4632/D4632M - Standard Test Method for Grab Breaking Load and Elongation of Geotextiles 2015a.
- D. ASTM D4751 - Standard Test Methods for Determining Apparent Opening Size of a Geotextile 2021a.
- E. ASTM D4873/D4873M - Standard Guide for Identification, Storage, and Handling of Geosynthetic Rolls and Samples 2017 (Reapproved 2021).
- F. EPA (NPDES) - National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES), Construction General Permit Current Edition.

1.04 PERMITS, RESPONSIBILITY, PERFORMANCE & FINES/PENALTIES REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with requirements of EPA (NPDES) for erosion and sedimentation control, as specified by the NPDES, and in compliance with requirements of Construction General Permit (CGP), whether the project is required by law to comply or not.
- B. Also comply with all more stringent requirements of State of Alabama Erosion and Sedimentation Control Manual.
- C. The contractor will be solely responsible for all erosion and sediment control issues. This includes, but is not limited to: installing, maintaining, repairing and replacing erosion and sedimentation controls as shown on the drawings and any additional as required during construction. Should any of the erosion and sedimentation controls fail to produce results, the contractor shall immediately take whatever steps are necessary to correct the deficiencies. If deficiencies in the erosion and sedimentation controls cause any damage downstream and/or any fines/penalties are imposed, the contractor shall pay all repair costs and fines/penalties.
- D. Contractor shall obtain an ADEM NPDES Stormwater Permit. The contractor shall also have a "Construction Best Management Practices Plan" (CBMPP) prepared by a qualified professional. Contractor shall also acquire services of a qualified professional to perform inspections/reporting per permit.

- E. Do not begin clearing, grading, or other work involving disturbance of ground surface cover until applicable permits have been obtained; furnish all documentation required to obtain applicable permits.
 - 1. Obtain and pay for permits and provide security required by authority having jurisdiction.
 - 2. Owner will withhold payment to Contractor equivalent to all fines resulting from non-compliance with applicable regulations.
- F. Timing: Put preventive measures in place as soon as possible after disturbance of surface cover and before precipitation occurs.
- G. Storm Water Runoff: Control increased storm water runoff due to disturbance of surface cover due to construction activities for this project.
 - 1. Prevent runoff into storm and sanitary sewer systems, including open drainage channels, in excess of actual capacity or amount allowed by authorities having jurisdiction, whichever is less.
 - 2. Anticipate runoff volume due to the most extreme short term and 24-hour rainfall events that might occur in 25 years.
- H. Erosion On Site: Minimize wind, water, and vehicular erosion of soil on project site due to construction activities for this project.
 - 1. Control movement of sediment and soil from temporary stockpiles of soil.
 - 2. Prevent development of ruts due to equipment and vehicular traffic.
 - 3. If erosion occurs due to non-compliance with these requirements, restore eroded areas at no cost to Owner.
- I. Erosion Off Site: Prevent erosion of soil and deposition of sediment on other properties caused by water leaving the project site due to construction activities for this project.
 - 1. Prevent windblown soil from leaving the project site.
 - 2. Prevent tracking of mud onto public roads outside site.
 - 3. Prevent mud and sediment from flowing onto sidewalks and pavements.
 - 4. If erosion occurs due to non-compliance with these requirements, restore eroded areas at no cost to Owner.

- J. Sedimentation of Waterways On Site: Prevent sedimentation of waterways on the project site, including rivers, streams, lakes, ponds, open drainage ways, storm sewers, and sanitary sewers.
 - 1. If sedimentation occurs, install or correct preventive measures immediately at no cost to Owner; remove deposited sediments; comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 2. If sediment basins are used as temporary preventive measures, pump dry and remove deposited sediment after each storm.
- K. Sedimentation of Waterways Off Site: Prevent sedimentation of waterways off the project site, including rivers, streams, lakes, ponds, open drainage ways, storm sewers, and sanitary sewers.
 - 1. If sedimentation occurs, install or correct preventive measures immediately at no cost to Owner; remove deposited sediments; comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- L. Open Water: Prevent standing water that could become stagnant.
- M. Maintenance: Maintain temporary preventive measures until permanent measures have been established.

1.05 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 3001 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Certificate: Mill certificate for silt fence fabric attesting that fabric and factory seams comply with specified requirements, signed by legally authorized official of manufacturer; indicate actual minimum average roll values; identify fabric by roll identification numbers.
- C. Inspection Reports: Submit report of each inspection; identify each preventive measure, indicate condition, and specify maintenance or repair required and accomplished.
- D. Provide written declaration that erosion control measures have been inspected by the contractor at least weekly and following rainfall and repaired by the contractor.
- E. Provide documentation demonstrating that the Erosion and Sedimentation Control (ESC) Plan was carried out appropriately. Provide a summary, sample log, checklist, inspection report, or similar documentation that demonstrates periodic inspection of the implemented measures. This documentation must include:
 - 1. Sample dates.

2. Inspection frequency (at least monthly, year-round).
3. At least 3 inspections equally spaced over the site work period.
4. Description of any corrective action taken.

1.06 SUSTAINABILITY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Contractor shall endeavor to provide materials with a high Biobased content where possible.
 1. See Part 2 of this specification section for specific biobased content thresholds, if applicable.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS

- A. Mulch: Use one of the following:
 1. Straw or hay.
 2. Wood waste, chips, or bark.
 3. Erosion control matting or netting.
 4. Cutback asphalt.
 5. Polyethylene film, where specifically indicated only.
 6. Mulching materials and erosion control fabric shall meet the requirements of the USDA BioPreferred Program
- B. Grass Seed For Temporary Cover: Select a species appropriate to climate, planting season, and intended purpose. If same area will later be planted with permanent vegetation, do not use species known to be excessively competitive or prone to volunteer in subsequent seasons.
- C. Bales: Air dry, rectangular straw bales.
 1. Cross Section: 14 by 18 inches (350 by 450 mm), minimum.
 2. Bindings: Wire or string, around long dimension.
- D. Bale Stakes: One of the following, minimum 3 feet (1 m) long:
 1. Steel U- or T-section, with minimum mass of 1.33 pound per linear foot (1.98 kg per linear m).

2. Wood, 2 by 2 inches (50 by 50 mm) in cross section.
- E. Silt Fence Fabric: Polypropylene geotextile resistant to common soil chemicals, mildew, and insects; non-biodegradable; in longest lengths possible; fabric including seams with the following minimum average roll lengths:
1. Average Opening Size: 30 U.S. Std. Sieve (0.600 mm), maximum, when tested in accordance with ASTM D4751.
 2. Permittivity: 0.05 sec^{-1} , minimum, when tested in accordance with ASTM D4491.
 3. Ultraviolet Resistance: Retaining at least 70 percent of tensile strength, when tested in accordance with ASTM D4355/D4355M after 500 hours exposure.
 4. Tensile Strength: 100 pounds-force (450 N), minimum, in cross-machine direction; 124 pounds-force (550 N), minimum, in machine direction; when tested in accordance with ASTM D4632/D4632M.
 5. Elongation: 15 to 30 percent, when tested in accordance with ASTM D4632/D4632M.
 6. Tear Strength: 55 pounds-force (245 N), minimum, when tested in accordance with ASTM D4533/D4533M.
 7. Color: Manufacturer's standard, with embedment and fastener lines preprinted.
- F. Silt Fence Posts: One of the following, minimum 5 feet (1500 mm) long:
1. Steel U- or T-section, with minimum mass of 1.33 pound per linear foot (1.98 kg per linear m).
 2. Softwood, 4 by 4 inches (100 by 100 mm) in cross section.
 3. Hardwood, 2 by 2 inches (50 by 50 mm) in cross section.
- G. Gravel: See Section 321123 for aggregate.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine site and identify existing features that contribute to erosion resistance; maintain such existing features to greatest extent possible.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Schedule work so that soil surfaces are left exposed for the minimum amount of time.

3.03 SCOPE OF PREVENTIVE MEASURES

- A. In all cases, if permanent erosion resistant measures have been installed temporary preventive measures are not required.
- B. Construction Entrances: Traffic-bearing aggregate surface.
 - 1. Width: As required; 20 feet (7 m), minimum.
 - 2. Length: 50 feet (16 m), minimum.
 - 3. Provide at each construction entrance from public right-of-way.
 - 4. Where necessary to prevent tracking of mud onto right-of-way, provide wheel washing area out of direct traffic lane, with drain into sediment trap or basin.
- C. Linear Sediment Barriers: Made of silt fences.
 - 1. Provide linear sediment barriers:
 - a. Along downhill perimeter edge of disturbed areas, including soil stockpiles.
 - 2. Space sediment barriers with the following maximum slope length upslope from barrier:
 - a. Slope of Less Than 2 Percent: 100 feet (30 m)..
 - b. Slope Between 2 and 5 Percent: 75 feet (23 m).
 - c. Slope Between 5 and 10 Percent: 50 feet (15 m).
 - d. Slope Between 10 and 20 Percent: 25 feet (7.5 m).
 - e. Slope Over 20 Percent: 15 feet (4.5 m).
- D. Storm Drain Curb Inlet Sediment Trap: Protect each curb inlet using one of the following measures:
 - 1. Filter fabric wrapped around hollow concrete blocks blocking entire inlet face area; use one piece of fabric wrapped at least 1-1/2 times around concrete blocks and secured to prevent dislodging; orient cores of blocks so runoff passes into inlet.
 - 2. Straw bale row blocking entire inlet face area; anchor into pavement.

- E. Storm Drain Drop Inlet Sediment Traps: As detailed on drawings.
- F. Temporary Splash Pads: Stone aggregate over filter fabric; size to suit application; provide at downspout outlets and storm water outlets.
- G. Soil Stockpiles: Protect using one of the following measures:
 - 1. Cover with polyethylene film, secured by placing soil on outer edges.
 - 2. Cover with mulch at least 4 inches (100 mm) thickness of pine needles, sawdust, bark, wood chips, or shredded leaves, or 6 inches (150 mm) of straw or hay.
- H. Mulching: Use only for areas that may be subjected to erosion for less than 6 months.
 - 1. Wood Waste: Use only on slopes 3:1 or flatter; no anchoring required.
 - 2. Asphalt: Use only where no traffic, either vehicular or pedestrian, is anticipated.
- I. Temporary Seeding: Use where temporary vegetated cover is required.

3.04 INSTALLATION

- A. Traffic-Bearing Aggregate Surface:
 - 1. Excavate minimum of 6 inches (150 mm).
 - 2. Place geotextile fabric full width and length, with minimum 12 inch (300 mm) overlap at joints.
 - 3. Place and compact at least 6 inches (150 mm) of 1 1/2 to 3 1/2 inch (40 to 90 mm) diameter stone.
- B. Silt Fences:
 - 1. Store and handle fabric in accordance with ASTM D4873/D4873M.
 - 2. Where slope gradient is less than 3:1 or barriers will be in place less than 6 months, use nominal 16 inch (405 mm) high barriers with minimum 36 inch (905 mm) long posts spaced at 6 feet (1830 mm) maximum, with fabric embedded at least 6 inches (150 mm) in ground.
 - 3. Where slope gradient is steeper than 3:1 or barriers will be in place over 6 months, use nominal 28 inch (710 mm) high barriers, minimum 48 inch (1220 mm) long posts spaced at 6 feet (1830 mm) maximum, with fabric embedded at least 6 inches (150 mm) in ground.

4. Where slope gradient is steeper than 3:1 and vertical height of slope between barriers is more than 20 feet (6 m), use nominal 32 inch (810 mm) high barriers with woven wire reinforcement and steel posts spaced at 4 feet (1220 mm) maximum, with fabric embedded at least 6 inches (150 mm) in ground.
5. Install with top of fabric at nominal height and embedment as specified.
6. Do not splice fabric width; minimize splices in fabric length; splice at post only, overlapping at least 18 inches (460 mm), with extra post.
7. Fasten fabric to wood posts using one of the following:
 - a. Four nails per post with 3/4 inch (19 mm) diameter flat or button head, 1 inch (25 mm) long, and 14 gage, 0.083 inch (2.11 mm) shank diameter.
 - b. Five staples per post with at least 17 gage, 0.0453 inch (1.150 mm) wire, 3/4 inch (19 mm) crown width and 1/2 inch (12 mm) long legs.
8. Fasten fabric to steel posts using wire, nylon cord, or integral pockets.
9. Wherever runoff will flow around end of barrier or over the top, provide temporary splash pad or other outlet protection; at such outlets in the run of the barrier, make barrier not more than 12 inches (300 mm) high with post spacing not more than 4 feet (1220 mm).

C. Straw Bale Rows:

1. Install bales in continuous rows with ends butting tightly, with one bale at each end of row turned uphill.
2. Install bales so that bindings are not in contact with the ground.
3. Embed bales at least 4 inches (100 mm) in the ground.
4. Anchor bales with at least two stakes per bale, driven at least 18 inches (450 mm) into the ground; drive first stake in each bale toward the previously placed bale to force bales together.
5. Fill gaps between ends of bales with loose straw wedged tightly.
6. Place soil excavated for trench against bales on the upslope side of the row, compacted.

D. Mulching Over Large Areas:

1. Dry Straw and Hay: Apply 2-1/2 tons per acre (6350 kg per hectare); anchor using dull disc harrow or emulsified asphalt applied using same spraying machine at 100 gallons of water per ton of mulch.
 2. Wood Waste: Apply 6 to 9 tons per acre (15,200 to 20,800 kg per hectare).
 3. Asphalt: Apply at 1200 gallons per acre (11,000 L per hectare).
 4. Erosion Control Matting: Comply with manufacturer's instructions.
- E. Mulching Over Small and Medium Areas:
1. Dry Straw and Hay: Apply 4 to 6 inches (100 to 150 mm) depth.
 2. Wood Waste: Apply 2 to 3 inches (50 to 75 mm) depth.
 3. Asphalt: Apply 1/4 gallon per square yard (1 L per 100 sq m).
 4. Erosion Control Matting: Comply with manufacturer's instructions.
- F. Temporary Seeding:
1. When hydraulic seeder is used, seedbed preparation is not required.
 2. When surface soil has been sealed by rainfall or consists of smooth undisturbed cut slopes, and conventional or manual seeding is to be used, prepare seedbed by scarifying sufficiently to allow seed to lodge and germinate.
 3. If temporary mulching was used on planting area but not removed, apply nitrogen fertilizer at 1 pound per 1000 sq ft (0.5 kg per 100 sq m).
 4. On soils of very low fertility, apply 10-10-10 fertilizer at rate of 12 to 16 pounds per 1000 sq ft (6 to 8 kg per 100 sq m).
 5. Incorporate fertilizer into soil before seeding.
 6. Apply seed uniformly; if using drill or cultipacker seeders place seed 1/2 to 1 inch (12 to 25 mm) deep.
 7. Irrigate as required to thoroughly wet soil to depth that will ensure germination, without causing runoff or erosion.
 8. Repeat irrigation as required until grass is established.

3.05 MAINTENANCE

- A. Inspect preventive measures weekly, within 24 hours after the end of any storm that produces 0.5 inches (13 mm) or more rainfall at the project site, and daily during prolonged rainfall.
- B. Repair deficiencies immediately.
- C. Silt Fences:
 - 1. Promptly replace fabric that deteriorates unless need for fence has passed.
 - 2. Remove silt deposits that exceed one-third of the height of the fence.
 - 3. Repair fences that are undercut by runoff or otherwise damaged, whether by runoff or other causes.
- D. Straw Bale Rows:
 - 1. Promptly replace bales that fall apart or otherwise deteriorate unless need has passed.
 - 2. Remove silt deposits that exceed one-half of the height of the bales.
 - 3. Repair bale rows that are undercut by runoff or otherwise damaged, whether by runoff or other causes.
- E. Clean out temporary sediment control structures weekly and relocate soil on site.
- F. Place sediment in appropriate locations on site; do not remove from site.

3.06 CLEAN UP

- A. Remove temporary measures after permanent measures have been installed, unless permitted to remain by the Government.
- B. Clean out temporary sediment control structures that are to remain as permanent measures.
- C. Where removal of temporary measures would leave exposed soil, shape surface to an acceptable grade and finish to match adjacent ground surfaces.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 311000 - SITE CLEARING

PART 2 PRODUCTS -- NOT USED

PART 3 EXECUTION

2.01 SITE CLEARING

- A. Comply with other requirements specified in Section 017000.
- B. Minimize production of dust due to clearing operations; do not use water if that will result in ice, flooding, sedimentation of public waterways or storm sewers, or other pollution.

2.02 VEGETATION

- A. Do not remove or damage vegetation beyond the limits indicated on drawings.
- B. Install substantial, highly visible fences at least 3 feet high (at least 1 m high) to prevent inadvertent damage to vegetation to remain:
 - 1. At vegetation removal limits.
- C. In areas where vegetation must be removed but no construction will occur other than pervious paving, remove vegetation with minimum disturbance of the subsoil.
- D. Vegetation Removed: Do not burn, bury, landfill, or leave on site, except as indicated.
 - 1. Chip, grind, crush, or shred vegetation for mulching, composting, or other purposes; preference should be given to on-site uses.
 - 2. Trees: Sell if marketable; if not, treat as specified for other vegetation removed; remove stumps and roots to depth of 18 inches (450 mm).
 - 3. Sod: Re-use on site if possible; otherwise sell if marketable, and if not, treat as specified for other vegetation removed.
- E. Restoration: If vegetation outside removal limits or within specified protective fences is damaged or destroyed due to subsequent construction operations, replace at no cost to Owner.

2.03 DEBRIS

- A. Remove debris, junk, and trash from site.
- B. Leave site in clean condition, ready for subsequent work.

- C. Clean up spillage and wind-blown debris from public and private lands.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 311001 - SITE CLEARING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including requirements of the Government's Solicitation and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Protecting existing trees and vegetation to remain to include all site trees unless shown removed.
 - 2. Removing trees and other vegetation.
 - 3. Clearing and grubbing.
 - 4. Topsoil stripping.
 - 5. Removing above-grade site improvements.
 - 6. Disconnecting, capping or sealing, and abandoning site utilities in place.
 - 7. Disconnecting, capping or sealing, and removing site utilities.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. Topsoil: Natural or cultivated surface-soil layer containing organic matter and sand, silt, and clay particles; friable, pervious, and black or a darker shade of brown, gray, or red than underlying subsoil; reasonably free of subsoil, clay lumps, gravel, and other objects more than 2 inches in diameter; and free of weeds, roots, and other deleterious materials.

1.04 MATERIALS OWNERSHIP

- A. Except for materials indicated to be stockpiled or to remain Government property, cleared materials shall become Contractor's property and shall be removed from the site.

1.05 SUBMITTALS

- A. Record drawings according to Division 1 Section "Contract Closeout."
 - 1. Identify and accurately locate capped utilities and other subsurface structural, electrical, and mechanical conditions.

1.06 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Traffic: Minimize interference with adjoining roads, streets, walks, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities during site-clearing operations.
 - 1. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from the Government and authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Notify utility locator service for area where Project is located before site clearing.

PART 2 PRODUCTS (NOT APPLICABLE)

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 PREPARATION

- A. Protect and maintain benchmarks and survey control points from disturbance during construction.
- B. Provide erosion-control measures to prevent soil erosion and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff or airborne dust to adjacent properties and walkways.
- C. Locate and clearly flag trees and vegetation to remain or to be relocated.
- D. Protect existing site improvements to remain.
 - 1. Restore damaged improvements to their original condition, as acceptable to the Government.

3.02 TREE PROTECTION

- A. Erect and maintain a temporary fence around drip line of individual trees or around perimeter drip line of groups of trees to remain. Remove fence when construction is complete.
 - 1. Do not store construction materials, debris, or excavated material within drip line of remaining trees.
 - 2. Do not permit vehicles, equipment, or foot traffic within drip line of remaining trees.
- B. Do not excavate within drip line of trees, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Where excavation for new construction is required within drip line of trees, hand clear and excavate to minimize damage to root systems. Use narrow-tine spading forks, comb soil to expose roots, and cleanly cut roots as close to excavation as possible.

1. Cover exposed roots with burlap and water regularly.
2. Temporarily support and protect roots from damage until they are permanently relocated and covered with soil.
3. Coat cut faces of roots more than 1-1/2 inches in diameter with an emulsified asphalt or other approved coating formulated for use on damaged plant tissues.
4. Cover exposed roots with wet burlap to prevent roots from drying out. Backfill with soil as soon as possible.

3.03 UTILITIES

- A. Locate, identify, disconnect, and seal or cap off utilities indicated to be removed.
 1. Arrange to shut off indicated utilities with utility companies.
- B. Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by the Government or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility services according to requirements indicated:
 1. Notify the Government not less than two days in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
 2. Do not proceed with utility interruptions without the Government's written permission.
- C. Excavate for and remove underground utilities indicated to be removed.

3.04 CLEARING AND GRUBBING

- A. Remove obstructions, trees, shrubs, grass, and other vegetation to permit installation of new construction. Removal includes digging out stumps and obstructions and grubbing roots.
 1. Do not remove trees, shrubs, and other vegetation indicated to remain or to be relocated.
 2. Cut minor roots and branches of trees indicated to remain in a clean and careful manner where such roots and branches obstruct installation of new construction.
 3. Completely remove stumps, roots, obstructions, and debris extending to a depth of 18 inches below exposed subgrade.
 4. Use only hand methods for grubbing within drip line of remaining trees.

- B. Fill depressions caused by clearing and grubbing operations with satisfactory soil material, unless further excavation or earthwork is indicated.
 - 1. Place fill material in horizontal layers not exceeding 8-inch loose depth, and compact each layer to a density equal to adjacent original ground.

3.05 TOPSOIL STRIPPING

- A. Remove sod and grass before stripping topsoil.
- B. Strip topsoil to whatever depths are encountered in a manner to prevent intermingling with underlying subsoil or other waste materials.
 - 1. Strip surface soil of unsuitable topsoil, including trash, debris, weeds, roots, and other waste materials.
- C. Stockpile topsoil materials away from edge of excavations without intermixing with subsoil. Grade and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent windblown dust.
 - 1. Limit height of topsoil stockpiles to 72 inches.
 - 2. Do not stockpile topsoil within drip line of remaining trees.
 - 3. Stockpile surplus topsoil and allow for resspreading deeper topsoil.

3.06 SITE IMPROVEMENTS

- A. Remove existing above- and below-grade improvements as indicated and as necessary to facilitate new construction.
- B. Remove slabs, paving, curbs, gutters, and aggregate base as indicated.
 - 1. Unless existing full-depth joints coincide with line of demolition, neatly saw-cut length of existing pavement to remain before removing existing pavement. Saw-cut faces vertically.

3.07 DISPOSAL

- A. Disposal: Remove surplus soil material, unsuitable topsoil, obstructions, demolished materials, and waste materials, including trash and debris, and legally dispose of them off the Government's property.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 312210 - EARTHWORK

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including requirements of the Government's Solicitation and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
1. Preparing subgrades for slabs-on-grade, walks, pavements, lawns, and plantings.
 2. Excavating and backfilling for buildings and structures.
 3. Drainage course for slabs-on-grade.
 4. Fine grading, topsoiling and preparing lawn areas.
 5. Excavating and backfilling trenches within building lines.
 6. Excavating and backfilling trenches for buried mechanical and electrical utilities and pits for buried utility structures.
 7. Geotechnical Reports applicable to this project.
 8. Preparing crushed aggregate base for asphalt pavement areas.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
1. Division 32 Section "Site Clearing" for site stripping, grubbing, removing topsoil, and protecting trees to remain.
 2. Division 32 Section "Sodding" for placing of sod for lawn areas.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. Backfill: Soil materials used to fill an excavation.
1. Initial Backfill: Backfill placed beside and over pipe in a trench, including haunches to support sides of pipe.
 2. Final Backfill: Backfill placed over initial backfill to fill a trench.
- B. Bedding Course: Layer placed over the excavated subgrade in a trench before laying pipe.

- C. Borrow: Satisfactory soil imported from off-site for use as fill or backfill.
- D. Drainage Course: Layer supporting slab-on-grade used to minimize capillary flow of pore water.
- E. Excavation: Removal of material encountered above subgrade elevations.
 - 1. Additional Excavation: Excavation below subgrade elevations as directed by the Government. Additional excavation and replacement material will be paid for according to Contract provisions for changes in the Work.
 - 2. Bulk Excavation: Excavations more than 10 feet in width and pits more than 30 feet in either length or width.
 - 3. Unauthorized Excavation: Excavation below subgrade elevations or beyond indicated dimensions without direction by the Government. Unauthorized excavation, as well as remedial work directed by the Government, shall be without additional compensation.
- F. Fill: Soil materials used to raise existing grades.
- G. Structures: Buildings, footings, foundations, retaining walls, slabs, curbs, mechanical and electrical appurtenances, or other man-made stationary features constructed above or below the ground surface.
- H. Subgrade: Surface or elevation remaining after completing excavation, or top surface of a fill or backfill immediately below subbase, drainage fill, or topsoil materials.
- I. Utilities include on-site underground pipes, conduits, ducts, and cables, as well as underground services within buildings.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. Material Test Reports: Submit following reports directly to the Government from the testing services, with copy to the Contractor.
 - 1. Classification according to ASTM D 2487 of each on-site or borrow soil material proposed for fill and backfill.
 - 2. Laboratory compaction curve according to ASTM D 698 for each on-site or borrow soil material proposed for fill and backfill.
 - 3. One optimum moisture density curve for each type of soil encountered.
 - 4. Verification of each footing subgrade.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Geotechnical Testing Agency: Soil testing and inspection service for quality control testing during earthwork operations shall be furnished by the Contractor. Retesting of failed test to be provided and paid for by the General Contractor.
- B. Prior to the installation or placement of concrete into insitu soil (load bearing earth), the Contractor shall receive acknowledgement from the Testing Company that the soil where the concrete is to be placed meets all compaction and other testing requirements specified and/or required by the onsite testing agent. This approval with all drawings showing pertinent information indicating that day's work attached shall be signed and dated by the onsite Testing Agent and the Contractor's Superintendent and presented to the Government onsite.
 - 1. The testing agency shall report to the contractor the results of all required tests, which shall be reviewed and acknowledges by the General Contractor and then submitted to the Government. The General Contractor shall not submit any failed soil density concrete or other test result(s) to the Government without including the applicable recheck test result(s) that indicate compliance with the Specifications. The recheck test result(s) shall be identified with the same number as the failed test with the notation "-R".

1.06 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Site Information: The report of subsurface investigation is bound herein. Data on indicated subsurface conditions are not intended as representations or warranties of accuracy or continuity between soil borings. It is expressly understood that the Government will not be responsible for interpretations or conclusions drawn therefrom by Contractor.
 - 1. Additional test borings and other exploratory operations may be made by Contractor at no cost to the Government.
- B. Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by the Government or others unless permitted in writing by the Government and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility services according to requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify the Government not less than two days in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
 - 2. Do not proceed with utility interruptions without the Government's written permission.
 - 3. Contact utility-locator service for area where Project is located before excavating.

- C. Demolish and completely remove from site existing underground utilities indicated to be removed. Coordinate with utility companies to shut off services if lines are active.
- D. Recommendations made in the reports of subsurface investigation bound herewith after this section shall be a requirement of these specifications. Where conflicts occur between the report and this specification, the more stringent requirement shall govern.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 SOIL MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide borrow soil materials when sufficient satisfactory soil materials are not available from excavations.
- B. Satisfactory Soils: ASTM D 2487 soil classification groups GW, GP, GM, SW, SP, and SM, or a combination of these group symbols; free of rock or gravel larger than 3 inches in any dimension, debris, waste, frozen materials, vegetation, and other deleterious matter.
- C. Unsatisfactory Soils: ASTM D 2487 soil classification groups GC, SC, ML, MH, CL, CH, OL, OH, and PT, or a combination of these group symbols.
 - 1. Unsatisfactory soils also include satisfactory soils not maintained within 2 percent of optimum moisture content at time of compaction.
- D. Backfill and Fill: Satisfactory soil materials.
- E. Base: Crushed aggregate base in accordance with requirements of Section 825 of the State of Alabama Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Highway Construction, Latest Edition, unless noted otherwise.
- F. Structural Fill: Refer to Geotechnical Engineering Report prepared by Terracon Consultants, Inc. Dated March 13, 2013 for structural fill material requirements.
- G. Engineered Fill: All fill earth, including structural fill earth, placed in the "Controlled Areas" shall be designated as "Engineered Fill."
- H. Bedding: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 2940; except with 100 percent passing a 1-inch sieve and not more than 8 percent passing a No. 200 sieve.
- I. Drainage Fill: Washed, narrowly graded mixture of crushed stone, or crushed or uncrushed gravel; ALDOT Section 800; coarse-aggregate grading Size 57 or 67.

- J. Topsoil: Topsoil shall be a natural, workable, friable, loamy soil, without admixture of subsoil, refuse, or foreign materials, suitable for growing grasses or other vegetative ground cover. Topsoil shall be furnished by the Contractor from an off-site source approved by the Government if required to supplement previously stockpiled on-site topsoil.

2.02 ACCESSORIES

- A. Detectable Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant polyethylene film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, 6 inches wide and 4 mils thick minimum, continuously inscribed with a description of the utility, with metallic core encased in a protective jacket for corrosion protection, detectable by metal detector when tape is buried up to 2'-6" deep.

1. Tape Colors: Provide tape colors to utilities as follows:

Red: Electric

Yellow: Gas, oil, steam, and dangerous materials.

Orange: Telephone and other communications.

Blue: Water systems.

Green: Sewer systems.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 PREPARATION

- A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities from damage caused by settlement, lateral movement, undermining, washout, and other hazards created by earthwork operations.
- B. Protect subgrades and foundation soils against freezing temperatures or frost. Provide protective insulating materials as necessary.
- C. Provide erosion-control measures to prevent erosion or displacement of soils and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff or airborne dust to adjacent properties and walkways.

3.02 DEWATERING

- A. Prevent surface water and ground water from entering excavations, from ponding on prepared subgrades, and from flooding Project site and surrounding area.

- B. Protect subgrades from softening, undermining, washout, and damage by rain or water accumulation.
 - 1. Reroute surface water runoff away from excavated areas. Do not allow water to accumulate in excavations. Do not use excavated trenches as temporary drainage ditches.
 - 2. Install a dewatering system to keep subgrades dry and convey ground water away from excavations. Maintain until dewatering is no longer required.

3.03 EXPLOSIVES

- A. Explosives: Do not use explosives.

3.04 EXCAVATION, GENERAL

- A. Unclassified Excavation: Excavation to subgrade elevations regardless of the character of surface and subsurface conditions encountered, including rock, soil materials, and obstructions.
 - 1. If excavated materials intended for fill and backfill include unsatisfactory soil materials and rock, replace with satisfactory soil materials.

3.05 EXCAVATION FOR STRUCTURES

- A. The building “control area” shall be undercut as recommended by the Geotechnical Engineering Report, prepared by Terracon Consultants, Inc., for this project.
- B. Excavate to indicated elevations and dimensions within a tolerance of plus or minus 1 inch. Extend excavations a sufficient distance from structures for placing and removing concrete formwork, for installing services and other construction, and for inspections.
 - 1. Excavations for Footings and Foundations: Do not disturb bottom of excavation. Excavate by hand to final grade just before placing concrete reinforcement. Trim bottoms to required lines and grades to leave solid base to receive other work.
 - 2. Excavation for Underground Mechanical or Electrical Utility Structures: Excavate to elevations and dimensions indicated within a tolerance of plus or minus 1 inch. Do not disturb bottom of excavations intended for bearing surface.

3.06 EXCAVATION FOR WALKS AND PAVEMENTS

- A. Excavate surfaces under walks and pavements to indicated cross sections, elevations, and grades.

3.07 EXCAVATION FOR UTILITY TRENCHES

- A. Excavate trenches to indicated gradients, lines, depths, and elevations.
 - 1. Beyond building perimeter, excavate trenches to allow installation of top of pipe below frost line.
- B. Excavate trenches to uniform widths to provide a working clearance on each side of pipe or conduit. Excavate trench walls vertically from trench bottom to 12 inches higher than top of pipe or conduit, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Clearance: 12 inches on each side of pipe or conduit.
- C. Trench Bottoms: Excavate and shape trench bottoms to provide uniform bearing and support of pipes and conduit. Shape subgrade to provide continuous support for bells, joints, and barrels of pipes and for joints, fittings, and bodies of conduits. Remove projecting stones and sharp objects along trench subgrade.
 - 1. For pipes and conduit less than 6 inches in nominal diameter and flat-bottomed, multiple-duct conduit units, hand-excavate trench bottoms and support pipe and conduit on an undisturbed subgrade.
 - 2. For pipes and conduit 6 inches or larger in nominal diameter, shape bottom of trench to support bottom 90 degrees of pipe circumference. Fill depressions with tamped sand backfill.
 - 3. Excavate trenches 6 inches deeper than elevation required in unyielding bearing material to allow for bedding course.

3.08 APPROVAL OF SUBGRADE

- A. Notify the Government when excavations have reached required subgrade.
- B. If the Government determines that unsatisfactory soil is present, continue excavation and replace with compacted backfill or fill material as directed.
 - 1. Additional excavation and replacement material will be paid for according to Contract provisions for changes in the Work.
- C. Proof roll subgrade under building and pavement areas with heavy pneumatic-tired equipment to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding proof rolling shall include a minimum of 2 passes in perpendicular directions over the controlled area. Do not proof roll wet or saturated subgrades.
- D. Reconstruct subgrades damaged by freezing temperatures, frost, rain, accumulated water, or construction activities, as directed by the Government.

3.09 UNAUTHORIZED EXCAVATION

- A. Fill unauthorized excavation under foundations or wall footings by extending bottom elevation of concrete foundation or footing to excavation bottom, without altering top elevation. Lean concrete fill may be used when approved by the Government.
 - 1. Fill unauthorized excavations under other construction or utility pipe as directed by the Government.

3.10 STORAGE OF SOIL MATERIALS

- A. Stockpile borrow materials and satisfactory excavated soil materials. Stockpile soil materials without intermixing. Place, grade, and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent windblown dust.
 - 1. Stockpile soil materials away from edge of excavations. Do not store within drip line of remaining trees.

3.11 BACKFILL

- A. Place and compact backfill in excavations promptly, but not before completing the following:
 - 1. Construction below finish grade including, where applicable, dampproofing, waterproofing, and perimeter insulation.
 - 2. Surveying locations of underground utilities for record documents.
 - 3. Inspecting and testing underground utilities.
 - 4. Removing concrete formwork.
 - 5. Removing trash and debris.
 - 6. Removing temporary shoring and bracing, and sheeting.
 - 7. Installing permanent or temporary horizontal bracing on horizontally supported walls.

3.12 UTILITY TRENCH BACKFILL

- A. Place and compact bedding course on trench bottoms and where indicated. Shape bedding course to provide continuous support for bells, joints, and barrels of pipes and for joints, fittings, and bodies of conduits.
- B. Backfill trenches excavated under footings and within 18 inches of bottom of footings; fill with concrete to elevation of bottom of footings.

- C. Place and compact initial backfill material, free of particles larger than 1 inch to a height of 12 inches over the utility pipe or conduit.
 - 1. Carefully compact material under pipe haunches and bring backfill evenly up on both sides and along the full length of utility piping or conduit to avoid damage or displacement of utility system.
- D. Coordinate backfilling with utilities testing.
- E. Fill voids with approved backfill materials while shoring and bracing, and as sheeting is removed.
- F. Place and compact final backfill of satisfactory soil material to final subgrade.

3.13 FILL

- A. Preparation: Remove vegetation, topsoil, debris, unsatisfactory soil materials, obstructions, and deleterious materials from ground surface before placing fills.
- B. Plow, scarify, bench, or break up sloped surfaces steeper than 1 vertical to 4 horizontal so fill material will bond with existing material.
- C. Place and compact fill material in layers to required elevations as follows:
 - 1. Under grass and planted areas, use satisfactory soil material.
 - 2. Under walks and pavements, use satisfactory soil material.
 - 3. Under steps and ramps, use satisfactory or structural fill.
 - 4. Under building slabs, use satisfactory or structural fill.
 - 5. Under footings and foundations, use satisfactory or structural fill.

3.14 MOISTURE CONTROL

- A. Uniformly moisten or aerate subgrade and each subsequent fill or backfill layer before compaction to within 3 percent of optimum moisture content.
 - 1. Do not place backfill or fill material on surfaces that are muddy, frozen, or contain frost or ice.
 - 2. Remove and replace, or scarify and air-dry, otherwise satisfactory soil material that exceeds optimum moisture content by 2 percent and is too wet to compact to specified dry unit weight.

3.15 COMPACTION OF BACKFILLS AND FILLS

- A. Place backfill and fill materials in layers not more than 8 inches in loose depth for material compacted by heavy compaction equipment, and not more than 4 inches in loose depth for material compacted by hand-operated tampers.
- B. Place backfill and fill materials evenly on all sides of structures to required elevations, and uniformly along the full length of each structure.
- C. Compact soil to not less than the following percentages of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698:
 - 1. Under structures, building slabs and steps, scarify and recompact top 12 inches of existing subgrade and each layer of backfill or fill material at 98 percent.
 - 2. Under walkways, scarify and recompact top 6 inches below subgrade and compact each layer of backfill or fill material at 95 percent.
 - 3. Under lawn or unpaved areas, scarify and recompact top 6 inches below subgrade and compact each layer of backfill or fill material at 90 percent.

3.16 GRADING

- A. General: Uniformly grade areas to a smooth surface, free from irregular surface changes. Comply with compaction requirements and grade to cross sections, lines, and elevations indicated.
 - 1. Provide a smooth transition between adjacent existing grades and new grades.
 - 2. Cut out soft spots, fill low spots, and trim high spots to comply with required surface tolerances.
- B. Site Grading: Slope grades to direct water away from buildings and to prevent ponding. Finish subgrades to required elevations within the following tolerances:
 - 1. Lawn or Unpaved Areas: Plus or minus 1 inch.
 - 2. Walks: Plus or minus 1 inch.
 - 3. Pavements: plus or minus ½ inch.
- C. Grading inside Building Lines: Finish subgrade to a tolerance of 1/2 inch when tested with a 10-foot straightedge.
- D. Topsoil: All areas disturbed by grading or other construction operations or as shown on the Site Plan, not occupied by the building or pavement, shall receive 4 inch minimum thickness topsoil from on-site stockpile or from approved off-site sources.

- E. It shall be the contractor's responsibility to hold finished grade including landscaping to grade shown on civil drawings. Do not cover over masonry weeps. Do cover concrete foundations so that no concrete is exposed.

3.17 BASE COURSES

- A. Under pavements, place base course material on prepared subgrades.
 - 1. Compact base courses at optimum moisture content to required grades, lines, cross sections and thickness to not less than 100 percent of ASTM D698 relative density.
 - 2. Shape base to required crown elevations and cross-slope grades.
 - 3. When thickness of compacted base course is 6 inches or less, place materials in a single layer.
 - 4. When thickness of compacted base course exceeds 6 inches, place materials in equal layers, with no layer more than 6 inches thick or less than 3 inches thick when compacted.

3.18 PLANTING SOIL PREPARATION

- A. Limit subgrade to areas that will be planted in the immediate future.
- B. Loosen subgrade to a minimum depth of 4 inches. Remove stones larger than 1-1/2 inches in any dimension and sticks, roots, rubbish, and other extraneous matter.
- C. Spread topsoil mixture to depth required to meet thickness, grades, and elevations shown, after light rolling and natural settlement. Do not spread if planting soil or subgrade is frozen.
 - 1. Place approximately ½ the thickness of topsoil mixture required. Work into top of loosened subgrade to create a transition layer and then place remainder of planting soil mixture.
 - 2. Allow for sod thickness in areas to be sodded.
- D. Preparation of Unchanged Grades: Where lawns are to be planted in areas unaltered or undisturbed by excavating, grading, or surface soil stripping operations, prepare soil as follows:
 - 1. Remove and dispose of existing grass, vegetation, and turf. Do not turn over into soil being prepared for lawns.

2. Till surface soil to a depth of at least 6 inches. Apply required soil amendments and initial fertilizers and mix thoroughly into top 4 inches of soil. Trim high areas and fill in depressions. Till soil to a homogenous mixture of fine texture.
 3. Clean surface soil of roots, plants, sod, stones, clay lumps, and other extraneous materials harmful to plant growth.
 4. Remove waste material, including grass, vegetation, and turf, and legally dispose of it off the Government's property.
- E. Grade lawn and grass areas to a smooth, even surface with loose, uniformly fine texture. Roll and rake, remove ridges, and fill depressions to meet finish grades. Limit fine grading to areas that can be planted in the immediate future. Remove trash, debris, stones larger than 1-1/2 inches in any dimension, and other objects that may interfere with planting or maintenance operations.
- F. Moisten prepared lawn areas before planting when soil is dry. Water thoroughly and allow surface to dry before planting. Do not create muddy soil.
- G. Restore prepared areas if eroded or otherwise disturbed after fine grading and before planting.

3.19 DRAINAGE COURSE

- A. Under slabs-on-grade, place drainage course on prepared subgrade and as follows:
1. Compact drainage course to required cross sections and thickness to not less than 95 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698.
 2. When compacted thickness of drainage course is 6 inches or less, place materials in a single layer.

3.20 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Contractor will engage a qualified independent geotechnical engineering testing agency to perform field quality-control testing.
- B. Allow testing agency to inspect and test subgrades and each fill or backfill layer. Proceed with subsequent earthwork only after test results for previously completed work comply with requirements.
- C. Footing Subgrade: At footing subgrades, at least one test of each soil stratum will be performed to verify design bearing capacities. Subsequent verification and approval of other footing subgrades may be based on a visual comparison of subgrade with tested subgrade when approved by the Government.

- D. Testing agency will test compaction of soils in place according to ASTM D 1556. Tests will be performed at the following locations and frequencies:
1. Building Slab and Pavement Areas: At subgrade and at each compacted fill and backfill layer, at least one test for every 4,000 sq. ft. of fill area per each foot of vertical thickness placed on the building area and one per 6,000 sq.ft. in the pavement areas, but in no case fewer than three tests.
 2. Trench Backfill: At each compacted initial and final backfill layer, at least one test for each 50 feet or less of trench length, but no fewer than two tests.
- E. When testing agency reports that subgrades, fills, or backfills have not achieved degree of compaction specified, scarify and moisten or aerate, or remove and replace soil to depth required; recompact and retest until specified compaction is obtained.

3.21 PROTECTION

- A. Protecting Graded Areas: Protect newly graded areas from traffic, freezing, and erosion. Keep free of trash and debris.
- B. Repair and reestablish grades to specified tolerances where completed or partially completed surfaces become eroded, rutted, settled, or where they lose compaction due to subsequent construction operations or weather conditions.
1. Scarify or remove and replace soil material to depth as directed by the Government; reshape and recompact.
- C. Where settling occurs before Project correction period elapses, remove finished surfacing, backfill with additional soil material, compact, and reconstruct surfacing.
1. Restore appearance, quality, and condition of finished surfacing to match adjacent work, and eliminate evidence of restoration to the greatest extent possible.

3.22 DISPOSAL OF SURPLUS AND WASTE MATERIALS

- A. Disposal: Remove surplus satisfactory soil and waste material, including unsatisfactory soil, trash, and debris, and legally dispose of it off the Government's property, unless instructed otherwise by the Contracting Officer.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

Geotechnical Engineering Report

Proposed Security and Services Training Facility

Alabama Air National Guard

Birmingham, Alabama

March 13, 2013

Terracon Project No. E1135029

Prepared for:

Seay Seay & Litchfield, P.C.

Montgomery, Alabama

Prepared by:

Terracon Consultants, Inc.

Birmingham, Alabama

Offices Nationwide
Employee-Owned

Established in 1965
terracon.com

Terracon

Geotechnical ■ Environmental ■ Construction Materials ■ Facilities

March 13, 2013



Seay Seay & Litchfield, P.C.
1115 S. Court Street
Montgomery, AL 36104

Attn: Mr. David Donovan, AIA LEED AP
E: DDonovan@sslarch.com

Re: Geotechnical Engineering Report
Proposed Security and Services Training Facility
Alabama Air National Guard
Birmingham, Alabama
Terracon Project No. E1135029

Dear Mr. Donovan:

Terracon has completed the geotechnical engineering services for the above referenced project. This study was performed in general accordance with our proposal PE1130102 dated February 12, 2013. This report presents the findings of the subsurface exploration and provides geotechnical recommendations concerning earthwork and the design and construction of foundations, floor slabs, and pavements for the proposed project.

We appreciate the opportunity to be of service to you on this project. If you have any questions concerning this report, or if we may be of further service, please contact us.

Sincerely,
Terracon Consultants, Inc.

Bryan C. Ritenour, P.E.
Senior Project Engineer
Alabama P. E. No. 17908

David A. Been, P.E.
Senior Consultant
Alabama P. E. No. 17306



Terracon Consultants, Inc. 110 12TH Street North Birmingham, Alabama 35203
P [205] 942-1289 F [205] 443- 5302 terracon.com

Geotechnical



Environmental



Construction Materials



Facilities

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	Page
EXECUTIVE SUMMARY	i
1.0 INTRODUCTION.....	1
2.0 PROJECT INFORMATION.....	1
2.1 Project Description	1
2.2 Site Location and Description	2
3.0 SUBSURFACE CONDITIONS	2
3.1 Geology	2
3.2 Typical Profile.....	3
3.3 Groundwater	4
4.0 RECOMMENDATIONS FOR DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION	4
4.1 Geotechnical Considerations	4
4.2 Earthwork	5
4.2.1 Site Preparation	5
4.2.2 Structural Fill Material Requirements	6
4.2.3 Structural Fill Placement and Compaction Requirements	6
4.2.4 Grading and Drainage.....	7
4.2.5 Earthwork Construction Considerations	7
4.3 Shallow Spread Footing Foundations	8
4.3.1 Foundation Design Recommendations.....	8
4.3.2 Foundation Construction Considerations	9
4.4 Seismic Considerations	9
4.5 Floor Slab.....	10
4.5.1 Floor Slab Design Recommendations	10
4.5.2 Floor Slab Construction Considerations	10
4.6 Lateral Earth Pressures.....	11
4.7 Pavement.....	13
4.7.1 Subgrade Preparation for New Paved Areas.....	13
4.7.2 Existing Asphalt Preparation for Pavement Overlay Areas	13
4.7.3 Design Considerations	14
4.7.4 Pavement Thickness Design	14
4.7.5 Pavement Drainage	15
4.7.6 Pavement Maintenance	16
5.0 GENERAL COMMENTS.....	16

APPENDIX A – FIELD EXPLORATION

Exhibit A-1	Site Location Plan
Exhibit A-2	Boring Location Plan
Exhibit A-3	Field Exploration Description
Exhibits A-4 to A-10	Boring Logs S-1 to S-10

APPENDIX B – LABORATORY TESTING

Exhibit B-1	Laboratory Testing
-------------	--------------------

APPENDIX C – SUPPORTING DOCUMENTS

Exhibit C-1	General Notes
Exhibit C-2	Unified Soil Classification System

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

This geotechnical exploration has been performed for the proposed Security and Services Training Facility to be located at the Alabama Air National Guard base in Birmingham, Alabama. Ten (10) borings were drilled across the site at the approximate locations shown on the attached Boring Location Plan. Logs of the borings are also included in Appendix A. Based on the information obtained from our subsurface exploration, the site can be developed for the proposed project. The following geotechnical considerations were identified:

- The results of our field program indicate that the majority of the proposed building area and the parking areas are immediately underlain by native lean clay. However, near surface fat clays were encountered at borings S-7 and S-8. Also, existing fill was encountered at borings S-1 and S-2.
- Based on the wide range of N-values recorded in the existing fill, it appears that the fill was not placed in a controlled manner (i.e., not placed in thin lifts and evenly compacted). Therefore, the existing fill is not suitable to support the proposed building foundations. Any existing fill exposed at the finished subgrade elevation of the building area should be undercut to the depth of stiff native lean clay and replaced with low volume change engineered fill. The soft native soils encountered in the upper 9 feet at boring S-6 will require undercutting and replacement with engineered fill. Existing fill not passing the proofroll test in the pavement areas should be undercut and replaced with low volume change engineered fill.
- Where the fat clays are exposed at the finished subgrade elevations, the fat clays should be undercut and replaced with low volume change engineered fill so that the upper 12 inches of the subgrade in the floor slab area and proposed new paved areas consist of low volume change soils meeting the Structural Fill Material Requirements in Section 4.2.2. In addition, to reduce the risk of shrink/swell movement due to moisture content fluctuations, we recommend that the exterior footing excavations exposing fat clay at the design bearing elevation be lowered to at least 30 inches below the lowest adjacent outside grades. The over excavation can be backfilled with lean concrete.
- Where the existing asphalt pavement will receive an overlay of new asphalt, measures should be taken to prepare the existing asphalt to reduce the risk of reflective cracking. Such measures are discussed in Section 4.7.2.
- A grading plan was not available at the time of this exploration. Once a grading plan is available, Terracon should be retained to evaluate our recommendations and considerations in light of the final grading plan.
- Close monitoring of the construction operations will be critical in achieving the design subgrade support. Terracon should be retained to monitor this portion of the work.

Geotechnical Engineering Report

Proposed Security and Services Training Facility ■ Birmingham, Alabama
March 13, 2013 ■ Terracon Project No. E1135029



This summary should be used in conjunction with the entire report for design purposes. It should be recognized that details were not included or fully developed in this section, and the report must be read in its entirety for a comprehensive understanding of the items contained herein. The section titled **GENERAL COMMENTS** should be read for an understanding of the report limitations.

**GEOTECHNICAL ENGINEERING REPORT
SECURITY AND SERVICES TRAINING FACILITY
ALABAMA AIR NATIONAL GUARD
BIRMINGHAM, ALABAMA**

Terracon Project No. E1135029

March 13, 2013

1.0 INTRODUCTION

This geotechnical exploration has been performed for the proposed Security and Services Training Facility to be located at the Alabama Air National Guard base in Birmingham, Alabama. Ten (10) borings were drilled across the site. Exhibit A-2 (Boring Location Plan) shows the approximate location of each boring. Logs of the borings are also included in Appendix A. A grading plan was not available at the time of this exploration. Once a grading plan is available, Terracon should be retained to evaluate our recommendations and considerations in light of the final grading plan.

The purpose of these services is to provide information and geotechnical engineering recommendations relative to:

- subsurface soil conditions
- groundwater conditions
- earthwork
- pavements
- floor slab design and construction
- seismic considerations
- foundation design and construction

2.0 PROJECT INFORMATION

2.1 Project Description

ITEM	DESCRIPTION
Structures	One-story, steel framed or masonry, with slab-on-grade construction
Pavements	The new pavements will likely consist of an asphalt overlay in the areas of existing pavement. Where new pavements will extend into existing grassy areas and existing buildings, the new pavement will likely consist of new asphalt and base materials.
Finished grade	Building: Unknown at the time of this report Parking: Unknown at the time of this report
Maximum loads	Assumed: 100 kips columns Assumed: 2 to 3 klf walls

Geotechnical Engineering Report

Proposed Security and Services Training Facility ■ Birmingham, Alabama
March 13, 2013 ■ Terracon Project No. E1135029



ITEM	DESCRIPTION
Grading	Less than 5 feet of cut/fill anticipated in the building area; Greater cuts will likely be required where the proposed building area encroaches on the existing stormwater detention pond. Less than 5 feet of cut/fill anticipated in the new parking areas

Should any of the above information or assumptions be inconsistent with the planned construction, please let us know so that we may make any necessary modifications to this report.

2.2 Site Location and Description

ITEM	DESCRIPTION
Location	Alabama Air National Guard, Birmingham, Alabama
Existing improvements	Buildings and paved parking and drives
Current ground cover	Buildings, grass, concrete and asphalt
Existing topography	Sloping gently downward toward the south

3.0 SUBSURFACE CONDITIONS

3.1 Geology

Published maps from the Geological Survey of Alabama indicate that the site is underlain by the Knox Group rock formation. The Knox Group consists of a medium to thick bedded cherty dolomite interbedded with thin to medium bedded chert. The cherty dolomite of the Knox Group weathers to a cherty clay soil containing isolated chert beds and boulders. The bedrock surface is often highly irregular and often lies in excess of 100 feet below the ground surface. The Knox Group weathers to porous cherty clay soil containing chert beds and scattered lenses of dense clay. Chert boulders are commonly encountered during excavations into the Knox.

The proposed site is underlain by carbonate rocks of the Knox Group. Over long periods of geologic time (i.e., thousands of years) carbonate rocks are susceptible to dissolution as groundwater moves through cracks and fissures in the rock. As dissolution progresses, cavities are formed within the rock mass. Sinkholes are formed as overburden soils filter into the solution cavities.

During our field reconnaissance we looked for visual signs of surface subsidence indicative of sinkhole activity. During the site reconnaissance Terracon representatives did not observe any obvious signs of visible sinkhole activity within the limits of the proposed building and pavement areas.

It should be noted that this study does not preclude the possibility of future sinkhole occurrence within the area. Even an extensive drilling exploration program could not rule out the possibility of future sinkhole formation at the site. The owner must accept that there is some degree of risk in developing over carbonate rock geology.

3.2 Typical Profile

The approximate locations of our borings are indicated on the accompanying Exhibit A-2, Boring Location Plan, in Appendix A. Borings S-1, S-2, S-4, and S-8 were drilled in grassy areas and initially penetrated approximately 3 to 4 inches of topsoil. The other borings were drilled in existing paved areas and initially penetrated approximately 2 to 4 inches of asphalt underlain by 5 to 7 inches of crushed stone base.

Borings S-1 and S-2 found previously placed fill immediately beneath the topsoil. The fill at boring S-1 extended to a depth of about 12 feet. At boring S-2, the fill extended to a depth of about 3 feet. The existing fill consists of brown silty clay with varying amounts of chert gravel. N-values recorded in the existing fill ranged from 5 to 21 blows per foot (bpf).

Beneath the topsoil or existing pavement section at the other borings, native soils were encountered. Native soils were also encountered beneath the existing fill at borings S-1 and S-2. The native soils generally consist of reddish tan, tan, or reddish brown lean clay (CL) or fat clay (CH) with varying amounts of chert. The fat clays were generally encountered at depths below about 6 feet except at boring S-7 and S-8 where the fat clay was encountered immediately beneath the existing pavement section. N-values recorded in the native soil generally ranged from about 8 to 46 blows per foot (bpf). However, the upper about 3 feet of native soils at borings S-8 and S-10 had N-values of 2 and 5 blows per foot, respectively. Also, soft and wet native lean clay soils were encountered in the upper 9 feet at boring S-6.

Two samples of the native soil were tested for Atterberg limits. The following table indicates the results of the Atterberg limits testing.

Sample Location, Depth	Soil Type	Liquid Limit, (%)	Plastic Limit, (%)	Plasticity Index, (%)
Boring S-2, 3.5 – 5.0 ft.	Native	50	23	27
Boring S-5, 1.0 – 3.5 ft.	Native	27	18	9

Certain samples of the native soils were tested to determine their in-place moisture content. The in-place moisture content of the samples tested ranged from about 15 to 36 percent.

Geotechnical Engineering Report

Proposed Security and Services Training Facility ■ Birmingham, Alabama
March 13, 2013 ■ Terracon Project No. E1135029



Auger refusal was encountered at boring S-5 at a depth of 12 feet. Although only one boring encountered auger refusal, large chert boulders are common in the soil overburden of the Knox Group formation and could be encountered during site grading.

Conditions encountered at each boring location are indicated on the individual boring logs. Stratification boundaries on the boring logs represent the approximate location of changes in soil types; in-situ, the transition between materials may be gradual. Details for each of the borings can be found on the boring logs in Appendix A.

3.3 Groundwater

The boreholes were observed during drilling for the presence and level of groundwater. Groundwater was observed in four of the borings at the time of drilling. The following table shows the results of the groundwater measurements.

Boring Number	Depth to Groundwater (ft)
S-2	9 ft during drilling; 9 ft after 2 hours
S-6	4 ft during drilling
S-7	12 ft during drilling; 9 ft after 2 hours
S-10	4 ft during drilling

We note that fluctuations in the level of the groundwater may occur due to variations in rainfall, temperature, and other factors not evident at the time the measurement was made and reported herein. Groundwater levels during construction or at other times in the life of the structure may be higher or lower than the level indicated on the boring logs. The possibility of groundwater level fluctuations should be considered when developing the design and construction plans for the project.

4.0 RECOMMENDATIONS FOR DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION

4.1 Geotechnical Considerations

The results of our field program indicate that the majority of the proposed building area and the parking areas are immediately underlain by native lean clay. However, near surface fat clays were encountered at borings S-7 and S-8. Also, existing fill was encountered at borings S-1 and S-2.

The native lean clays in the building area were found to generally be stiff, or better, in consistency. However, the upper 9 feet of soil at boring S-6 is soft and wet. The soft soil should be undercut and replaced with low volume change engineered fill. Crushed stone and geotextile

stabilization fabric may be required to stabilize the bottom of the undercut excavation due to the wet soil conditions.

Based on the wide range of N-values recorded in the existing fill, it appears that the fill was not placed in a controlled manner (i.e., not placed in thin lifts and evenly compacted). Therefore, the existing fill is not suitable to support the proposed building foundations. Any existing fill exposed at the finished subgrade elevation of the building area should be undercut to the depth of stiff native lean clay and replaced with low volume change engineered fill. Existing fill not passing the proofroll test in the pavement areas should be undercut and replaced with low volume change engineered fill.

The near surface fat clays, such as encountered at boring S-7 and S-8, have the potential to shrink or swell with fluctuations of the moisture content. However, based on our experience with the native fat clays of the Knox Group geologic formation, building distress related to shrinking and swelling is rare. The most significant impact of the fat clay is that they can be difficult to work at slightly elevated moisture contents resulting in unstable subgrades. This report provides recommendations to help mitigate the effects of soil shrinkage and expansion and poor workability.

Where the fat clays are exposed at the finished subgrade elevations, the fat clays should be undercut and replaced with low volume change engineered fill so that the upper 12 inches of the subgrade in the floor slab area and proposed new paved areas consist of low volume change soils meeting the Structural Fill Material Requirements in Section 4.2.2. In addition, to reduce the risk of shrink/swell movement due to moisture content fluctuations, we recommend that the exterior footing excavations exposing fat clay at the design bearing elevation be lowered to at least 30 inches below the lowest adjacent outside grades. The over excavation can be backfilled with lean concrete.

Where the existing asphalt pavement will receive an overlay of new asphalt, measures should be taken to prepare the existing asphalt to reduce the risk of reflective cracking. Such measures are discussed in Section 4.7.2.

A grading plan was not available at the time of this exploration. Once a grading plan is available, Terracon should be retained to evaluate our recommendations and considerations in light of the final grading plan.

4.2 Earthwork

4.2.1 Site Preparation

Prior to placing any fill, all vegetation, topsoil, existing asphalt and any otherwise unsuitable material should be removed from the construction areas. Wet or dry material should either be removed or moisture conditioned and recompacted. After stripping and grubbing, the subgrade

Geotechnical Engineering Report

Proposed Security and Services Training Facility ■ Birmingham, Alabama

March 13, 2013 ■ Terracon Project No. E1135029



should be proof-rolled where possible to aid in locating loose or soft areas. Proof-rolling can be performed with a loaded tandem axle dump truck. Soft, dry and low-density soil should be removed or compacted in place prior to placing fill. Fat clays should be removed as recommended in Section **4.1 Geotechnical Considerations**.

We recommend that the geotechnical engineer be retained to evaluate the bearing material for the foundations and floor slab subgrade soils. Subsurface conditions, as identified by the field and laboratory testing programs, have been reviewed and evaluated with respect to the proposed building plans known to us at this time.

4.2.2 Structural Fill Material Requirements

Structural fill should meet the following material property requirements:

Fill Type ¹	USCS Classification	Acceptable Location for Placement
Lean clay	CL (LL<50 and PI<30)	All locations and elevations
Silt	ML (LL<50 and PI<30)	All locations and elevations
Sand	SW, SC, SM	All locations and elevations
Fat clay	CH (LL>50 or PI>30)	Not acceptable for use as Structural Fill
Elastic Silt	MH (LL>50 or PI>30)	Not acceptable for use as Structural Fill
On-Site Soils	Varies	The on-site fat clay (LL>50 or PI>30) native soils are not suitable for use as engineered fill. The on-site lean clays (LL<50 and PI<30) are suitable for use as engineered fill after proper moisture conditioning.

1. Controlled, compacted fill should consist of approved materials that are free of organic matter and debris. Frozen material should not be used, and fill should not be placed on a frozen subgrade. A sample of each material type should be submitted to the geotechnical engineer for evaluation.

4.2.3 Structural Fill Placement and Compaction Requirements

ITEM	DESCRIPTION
Fill Lift Thickness	8-inches or less in loose thickness when heavy, self-propelled compaction equipment is used 4 to 6 inches in loose thickness when hand-guided equipment (i.e. jumping jack or plate compactor) is used
Minimum Compaction Requirements ¹	At least 98% of the material's maximum standard Proctor dry density (ASTM D 698)

ITEM	DESCRIPTION
Moisture Content for Cohesive Soil	Within 2 percentage points of the optimum moisture content value as determined by the standard Proctor test at the time of placement and compaction
Moisture Content for Granular Material ²	Within 3 percentage points of the optimum moisture content value as determined by the standard Proctor test at the time of placement and compaction

1. We recommend that engineered fill be tested for moisture content and compaction during placement. Should the results of the in-place density tests indicate the specified moisture or compaction limits have not been met, the area represented by the test should be reworked and retested as required until the specified moisture and compaction requirements are achieved.
2. Specifically, moisture levels should be maintained low enough to allow for satisfactory compaction to be achieved without the cohesionless fill material pumping when proofrolled.

4.2.4 Grading and Drainage

Final surrounding grades should be sloped away from the structure on all sides to prevent ponding of water. Gutters and downspouts that drain water a minimum of 10 feet beyond the footprint of the proposed structure are recommended. This can be accomplished through the use of splash-blocks, downspout extensions, and flexible pipes that are designed to attach to the end of the downspout. Flexible pipe should only be used if it is daylighted in such a manner that it gravity-drains collected water. Splash-blocks should also be considered below hose bibs and water spigots.

4.2.5 Earthwork Construction Considerations

Areas of unstable subgrade conditions could develop during general construction operations, particularly if the soils are wetted and/or subjected to repetitive construction traffic. Upon completion of filling and grading, care should be taken to maintain the subgrade moisture content prior to construction of slabs-on-grade. Construction traffic over the completed subgrade should be avoided to the extent practical. The site should also be graded to prevent ponding of surface water on the prepared subgrades or in excavations. If the subgrade should become frozen, desiccated, saturated, or disturbed, the affected material should be removed or these materials should be scarified, moisture conditioned, and recompacted prior to floor slab or pavement construction.

Temporary excavations will probably be required during grading operations. The grading contractor, by his contract, is usually responsible for designing and constructing stable, temporary excavations and should shore, slope or bench the sides of the excavations as required, to maintain stability of both the excavation sides and bottom. All excavations should comply with applicable local, state and federal safety regulations, including the current OSHA Excavation and Trench Safety Standards.

Terracon should be retained during construction to observe earthwork and to perform necessary tests and observations during subgrade preparation; proofrolling; placement and compaction of controlled compacted fills; backfilling of excavations into the completed subgrade, and just prior to construction of building floor slabs.

4.3 Shallow Spread Footing Foundations

The proposed structure can be supported by shallow spread footing foundations bearing on stiff, or better native soils, or new low volume change engineered fill. Design recommendations for shallow foundations are presented in the following paragraphs.

4.3.1 Foundation Design Recommendations

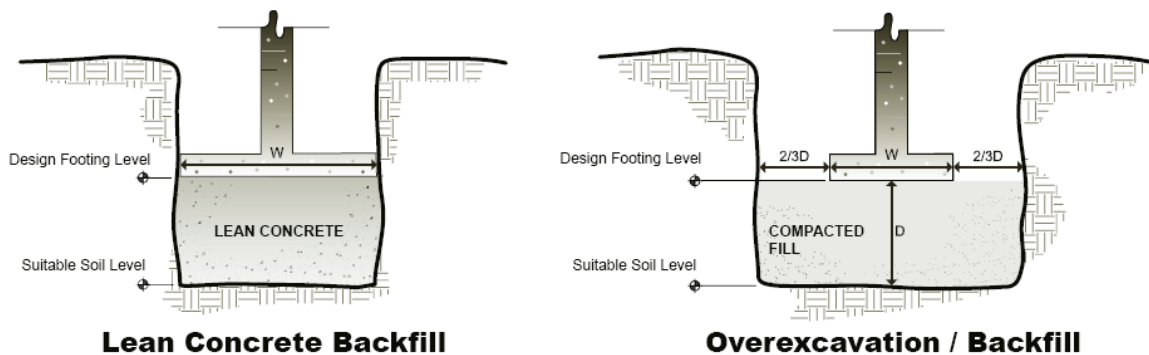
DESCRIPTION	Columns	Walls
Net allowable bearing pressure ¹	2,500 psf	2,500 psf
Minimum dimensions	24 inches	18 inches
Minimum exterior footing embedment below finished grade where lean clays are exposed at the design bearing elevations	18 inches	18 inches
Minimum exterior footing embedment below finished grade where fat clays are exposed at the design bearing elevations ⁴	30 inches	30 inches
Approximate total settlement ²	<1 inch	<1 inch
Estimated differential settlement	<3/4 inch	<3/4 inch over 40 feet
Ultimate passive pressure equivalent fluid pressure ³	330 pcf	
Ultimate coefficient of sliding friction ³	0.30	

1. The recommended net allowable bearing pressure is the pressure in excess of the minimum surrounding overburden pressure at the footing base elevation. Assumes that unsuitable fill or soft soils encountered will be undercut and replaced with engineered fill.
2. The above settlement estimates have assumed that the maximum footing size is 5 feet for column footings and 1.5 feet for continuous footings.
3. The sides of the excavation for the spread footing foundation must be nearly vertical and the concrete should be placed neat against these vertical faces for the passive earth pressure value to be valid. If the loaded side is sloped or benched, and then backfilled, the allowable passive pressure will be significantly reduced.
4. It would be acceptable for the footing excavations to extend to 30 inches. Any over excavation needed to achieve the 30-inch depth could be backfilled with lean concrete. The conventional spread footing could then be constructed on the lean concrete.

4.3.2 Foundation Construction Considerations

The base of all foundation excavations should be free of water and loose soil prior to placing concrete. Concrete should be placed soon after excavating to reduce bearing soil disturbance. Should the soils at bearing level become excessively dry, saturated, disturbed, or frozen, the affected soil should be removed prior to placing concrete. A lean concrete mud-mat should be placed over the bearing soils if rain is expected prior to concrete placement. The geotechnical engineer should be retained to observe and test the soil foundation bearing materials.

If unsuitable bearing soils are encountered, the excavation should be extended deeper to suitable soils and the footing could bear directly on these soils at the lower level or on lean concrete backfill placed in the excavations. As an alternative, the footings could also bear on properly compacted backfill extending down to the suitable soils. Overexcavation for compacted backfill placement below footings should extend laterally beyond all edges of the footings at least 8 inches per foot of overexcavation depth below footing base elevation. The overexcavation should then be backfilled up to the footing base elevation with engineered fill placed in lifts of 8 inches or less in loose thickness and compacted to at least 98 percent of the material's standard Proctor maximum dry density (ASTM D 698). The overexcavation and backfill procedure is illustrated below.



Lean Concrete Backfill

Overexcavation / Backfill

NOTE: Excavations in sketches shown vertical for convenience. Excavations should be sloped as necessary for safety.

4.4 Seismic Considerations

Code Used	Site Classification
2009 International Building Code (IBC) ¹	C ²

1. In general accordance with the *2009 International Building Code*, Table 1613.5.2.
2. The 2009 International Building Code requires a site soil profile determination extending a depth of 100 feet for seismic site classification. The current scope requested does not include the required 100 foot soil profile determination. Borings for the building areas extended to a maximum depth of approximately 15 feet. A geophysical exploration could be utilized in order to attempt to justify a higher seismic site class.

4.5 Floor Slab

4.5.1 Floor Slab Design Recommendations

ITEM	DESCRIPTION
Floor slab support	At least 12 inches of new low volume change engineered fill meeting the criteria presented in Section 4.2 ¹
Modulus of subgrade reaction (K)	125 pci for point loading
Aggregate base course/capillary break ²	4 inches of free draining granular material

1. Floor slabs should be structurally independent of any building footings or walls to reduce the possibility of cracking caused by differential movements between the slab and foundation. If the subgrade should become desiccated prior to construction of floor slabs, the affected material should be removed or the materials scarified, moisture conditioned, and recompacted.
2. Free-draining granular material should have less than 10 percent fines (material passing the #200 sieve), a maximum particle size of 1 ½ inches, a plasticity index (PI) no greater than 6, and a liquid limit (LL) no greater than 25.

Where appropriate, saw-cut control joints should be placed in the slab to help control the location and extent of cracking. For additional recommendations refer to the ACI Design Manual.

The use of a vapor retarder should be considered beneath concrete slabs on grade that will be covered with wood, tile, carpet or other moisture sensitive or impervious coverings, or when the slab will support equipment sensitive to moisture. When conditions warrant the use of a vapor retarder, the slab designer should refer to ACI 302 and/or ACI 360 for procedures and cautions regarding the use and placement of a vapor retarder.

4.5.2 Floor Slab Construction Considerations

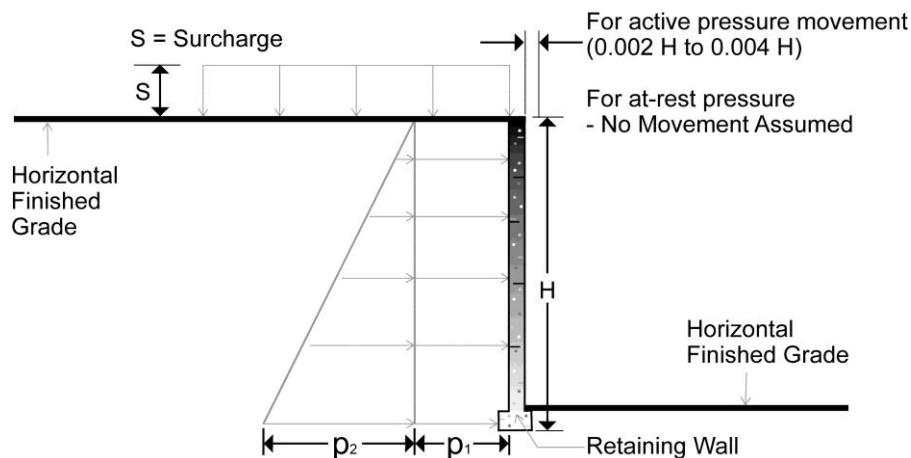
On most project sites, the site grading is generally accomplished early in the construction phase. However as construction proceeds, the subgrade may be disturbed due to utility excavations, construction traffic, desiccation, rainfall, etc. As a result, the floor slab subgrade may not be suitable for placement of sub-base material and concrete and corrective action will be required.

We recommend the area underlying the floor slab be rough graded and then thoroughly proofrolled with a loaded dump truck prior to final grading and placement of the sub-base. Particular attention should be paid to high traffic areas that were rutted and disturbed earlier and to areas where backfilled trenches are located. Areas where unsuitable conditions are located should be repaired by removing and replacing the affected material with properly compacted fill. All floor slab subgrade areas should be moisture conditioned and properly compacted to the recommendations in this report immediately prior to placement of the sub-base and concrete.

4.6 Lateral Earth Pressures

We understand that retaining walls with a maximum height of about 8 feet may be required. A wall design was not available at the time of this report and a global stability analysis is beyond the scope of work. Terracon would be pleased to provide a proposal for additional analysis upon request.

Reinforced concrete walls with unbalanced backfill levels on opposite sides should be designed for earth pressures at least equal to those indicated in the following table. Earth pressures will be influenced by structural design of the walls, conditions of wall restraint, methods of construction and/or compaction and the strength of the materials being restrained. Two wall restraint conditions are shown. Active earth pressure is commonly used for design of free-standing cantilever retaining walls and assumes wall movement. The "at-rest" condition assumes no wall movement. The recommended design lateral earth pressures do not include a factor of safety and do not provide for possible hydrostatic pressure on the walls.



Earth Pressure Coefficients

Earth Pressure Conditions	Coefficient for Backfill Type	Equivalent Fluid Density (pcf)	Surcharge Pressure, p_1 (psf)	Earth Pressure, p_2 (psf)
Active (K_a)	Open graded crushed stone - 0.22	24	$(0.22)S$	$(24)H$
	Onsite lean clay soils as engineered fill - 0.39	48	$(0.39)S$	$(48)H$

Geotechnical Engineering Report

Proposed Security and Services Training Facility ■ Birmingham, Alabama
March 13, 2013 ■ Terracon Project No. E1135029



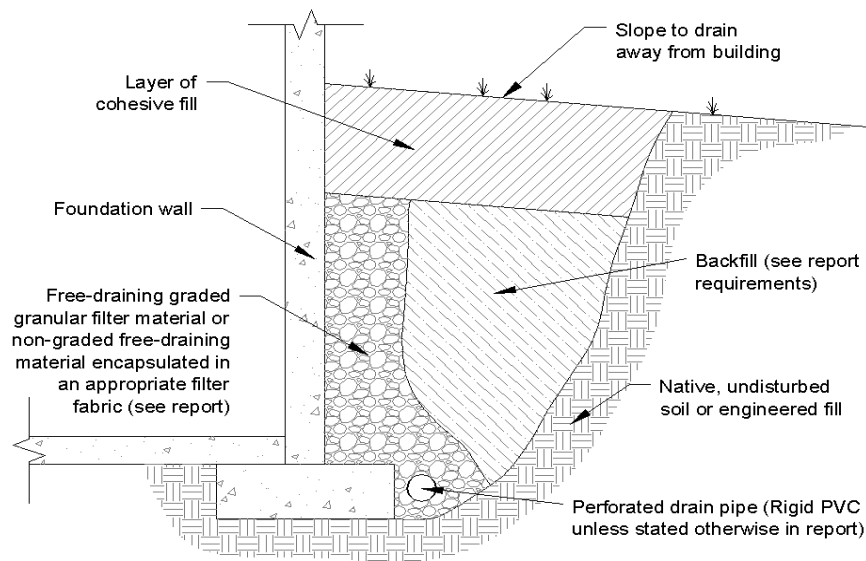
At-Rest (K_o)	Open graded crushed stone - 0.36	40	(0.36)S	(40)H
	Onsite lean clay soils as engineered fill - 0.56	70	(0.56)S	(70)H

Applicable conditions to the above include:

- For active earth pressure, wall must rotate about base, with top lateral movements of about $0.002 H$ to $0.004 H$, where H is wall height
- For passive earth pressure to develop, wall must move horizontally to mobilize resistance
- Uniform surcharge, where S is surcharge pressure
- In-situ soil backfill weight a maximum of 125 pcf
- Horizontal backfill, compacted to 98 percent of standard Proctor maximum dry density
- Loading from heavy compaction equipment not included
- No hydrostatic pressures acting on wall
- No dynamic loading
- No safety factor included in soil parameters
- Ignore passive pressure in frost zone

Backfill placed against structures should consist of granular soils or low plasticity cohesive soils. The onsite fat clays are not suitable for use as backfill behind retaining walls. For the granular values to be valid, the granular backfill must extend out from the base of the wall at an angle of at least 45 and 60 degrees from vertical for the active and passive cases, respectively. To calculate the resistance to sliding, a value of 0.30 should be used as the ultimate coefficient of friction between the footing and the underlying soil.

A perforated rigid plastic or metal drain line installed behind the base of walls that extend below adjacent grade is recommended to prevent hydrostatic loading on the walls. The invert of a drain line around a below-grade building area or exterior retaining wall should be placed near foundation bearing level. The drain line should be sloped to provide positive gravity drainage or to a sump pit and pump. The drain line should be surrounded by clean, free-draining granular material having less than 5 percent passing the No. 200 sieve. The free-draining aggregate should be encapsulated in a filter fabric. The granular fill should extend to within 2 feet of final grade, where it should be capped with compacted cohesive fill to reduce infiltration of surface water into the drain system.



As an alternative to free-draining granular fill, a pre-fabricated drainage structure may be used. A pre-fabricated drainage structure is a plastic drainage core or mesh which is covered with filter fabric to prevent soil intrusion, and is fastened to the wall prior to placing backfill.

4.7 Pavement

4.7.1 Subgrade Preparation for New Paved Areas

On most project sites, the site grading is accomplished relatively early in the construction phase. Fills are placed and compacted in a uniform manner. However, as construction proceeds, excavations are made into these areas, rainfall and surface water saturates some areas, heavy traffic from concrete trucks and other delivery vehicles disturbs the subgrade and many surface irregularities are filled in with loose soils to improve trafficability temporarily. As a result, the pavement subgrades, initially prepared early in the project, should be carefully evaluated as the time for pavement construction approaches.

We recommend the prepared pavement subgrades be proof-rolled with a loaded dump truck within two days prior to commencement of actual paving operations. Particular attention should be paid to high traffic areas that were rutted and disturbed earlier and to areas where backfilled trenches are located. Areas where unsuitable conditions are located should be repaired by removing and replacing the materials with properly compacted fills.

4.7.2 Existing Asphalt Preparation for Pavement Overlay Areas

We recommend that all areas of the existing pavement to be overlaid be proofrolled with a loaded dump truck to search for areas of weak subgrade. Any areas believed insufficient to except the proposed overlay, including all areas having “block” or “alligator” cracking, should be removed and replaced with the NEW pavement sections recommended in Section 4.7.4.

We recommend that all cracks in the existing asphalt to be overlain, including any open joints between old pavement and patches, be treated to reduce the risk of reflective cracking. With regard to crack sealing, we recommend that cracks having a width of $\frac{1}{4}$ " or greater be sealed prior to overlaying. Prior to sealing the cracks should be cleaned, preferably with a hot air lance although an air compressor would be acceptable. Then the crack should be cleaned with a mechanical wire brush. The crack should again be blown out to remove any residual incompressible substances. Any loose asphalt spalling along the edge of the cracks should be removed.

After proper cleaning, the cracks ranging in width from 0.25 inches to 1.0 inches should be filled with rubberized asphalt. The asphalt cement should conform, prior to the addition of rubber or other additives, to the specification for ASTM D 3405. This material shall meet the requirements of the manufacturer's recommendations. The asphalt-rubber should be heated in a double boiler pot in order to keep to a minimum any localized heating. The mixture should be combined, mixed, heated, and placed in accordance with the manufacture's recommendations.

Cracks wider than 1.0 inches should be filled with the overlay material. The overlay material used to fill cracks should be tamped to achieve as much compaction as practical.

All cracks are to be sealed to the full depth that the material can penetrate, but the material should penetrate to a depth of no less than 1.5 times the width of the crack. Prior to overlay, the sealant material should be made flush with the existing pavement.

4.7.3 Design Considerations

Pavement performance is affected by its surroundings. In addition to providing preventive maintenance, the civil engineer should consider the following recommendations in the design and layout of pavements:

- Final grade adjacent to parking lots and drives should slope down from pavement edges at a minimum 2%;
- Install pavement drainage surrounding areas anticipated for frequent wetting;
- Install joint sealant and seal cracks immediately;
- Seal all landscaped areas in, or adjacent to pavements to reduce moisture migration to subgrade soils;
- Place compacted, low permeability backfill against the exterior side of curb and gutter;
- Place curb, gutter and/or sidewalk directly on clay subgrade soils rather than on unbound granular base course materials.

4.7.4 Pavement Thickness Design

The anticipated traffic loading conditions were not available at the time of this report. We have provided pavement thickness design for the car parking areas and truck areas/drive lanes based

Geotechnical Engineering Report

Proposed Security and Services Training Facility ■ Birmingham, Alabama
March 13, 2013 ■ Terracon Project No. E1135029



on a properly prepared subgrade that remains dry during the life of the pavement, and our experience with similar facilities. The subgrade in fill areas should be compacted to at least 98% of the standard Proctor maximum dry density.

Our recommended minimum pavement thicknesses for new paved areas are presented in the following tables.

Recommended Minimum Pavement Section Thickness						
Traffic Area	Alternative	Asphalt Concrete Surface Course ⁴	Asphalt Concrete Binder ⁵	Portland Cement Concrete ¹	Dense Aggregate Base Course ²	Total Thickness
Car Parking	Rigid	--	--	5.0	4.0	9.0
	Flexible	1.0	2.0	--	8.0	11.0
Truck and Drive Areas	Rigid	--	--	6.0	4.0	10.0
	Flexible	1.5	2.5	--	8.0	12
Trash Container Pad ³	Rigid	--	--	6.0	4.0	10.0

1. Parking and loading areas 4,000 psi concrete
2. ALDOT 825B dense graded aggregate base (DGAB) compacted to 100% of the Modified Proctor
3. The trash container pad should be large enough to support the container and the tipping axle of the collection truck.
4. ALDOT 424A Superpave Bituminous Concrete Wearing Surface Layer, ½ inch maximum aggregate size, ESAL Range A/B
5. ALDOT 424B Superpave Bituminous Concrete Binder Layer, ¾ inch maximum aggregate size, ESAL Range A/B

We recommend that the Portland cement concrete have a minimum compressive strength of 4,000 psi, and a minimum flexural strength of 650 psi. The above sections represent minimum thicknesses and, as such, periodic maintenance should be anticipated.

Our recommended minimum pavement thicknesses for overlays of approved and properly prepared existing asphalt areas are presented in the following table.

Traffic Area	Alternative	Asphalt Concrete Surface Course ¹
Car Parking	Flexible	1.5
Truck and Drive Areas	Flexible	2.0

1. ALDOT 424A Superpave Bituminous Concrete Wearing Surface Layer, ½ inch maximum aggregate size, ESAL Range A/B

4.7.5 Pavement Drainage

Pavements should be sloped to provide rapid drainage of surface water. Water allowed to pond on or adjacent to the pavements could saturate the subgrade and contribute to premature pavement

deterioration. In addition, the pavement subgrade should be graded to provide positive drainage within the granular base section. Appropriate sub-drainage or connection to a suitable daylight outlet should be provided to remove water from the granular subbase.

4.7.6 Pavement Maintenance

The pavement sections provided in this report represent minimum recommended thicknesses and, as such, periodic maintenance should be anticipated. Therefore preventive maintenance should be planned and provided for through an on-going pavement management program. Preventive maintenance consists of both localized maintenance (e.g., crack and joint sealing and patching) and global maintenance (e.g., surface sealing). Joints or any cracks that develop should be sealed with a water-proof, non-extruding compressible compound specifically recommended for heavy duty concrete pavement and wet environments. Prior to implementing any maintenance, additional engineering observation is recommended to determine the type and extent of preventive maintenance. Even with periodic maintenance, some movements and related cracking may still occur and repairs may be required.

5.0 GENERAL COMMENTS

Terracon should be retained to review the final design plans and specifications so comments can be made regarding interpretation and implementation of our geotechnical recommendations in the design and specifications. Terracon also should be retained to provide observation and testing services during grading, excavation, foundation construction and other earth-related construction phases of the project.

The analysis and recommendations presented in this report are based upon the data obtained from the borings performed at the indicated locations and from other information discussed in this report. This report does not reflect variations that may occur between borings, across the site, or due to the modifying effects of construction or weather. The nature and extent of such variations may not become evident until during or after construction. If variations appear, we should be immediately notified so that further evaluation and supplemental recommendations can be provided.

The scope of services for this project does not include either specifically or by implication any environmental or biological (e.g., mold, fungi, bacteria) assessment of the site or identification or prevention of pollutants, hazardous materials or conditions. If the owner is concerned about the potential for such contamination or pollution, other studies should be undertaken.

This report has been prepared for the exclusive use of our client for specific application to the project discussed and has been prepared in accordance with generally accepted geotechnical engineering practices. No warranties, either express or implied, are intended or made. Site safety, excavation support, and dewatering requirements are the responsibility of others. In the event that changes in the nature, design, or location of the project as outlined in this report are planned, the

Geotechnical Engineering Report

Proposed Security and Services Training Facility ■ Birmingham, Alabama
March 13, 2013 ■ Terracon Project No. E1135029

conclusions and recommendations contained in this report shall not be considered valid unless Terracon reviews the changes and either verifies or modifies the conclusions of this report in writing.

APPENDIX A

FIELD EXPLORATION

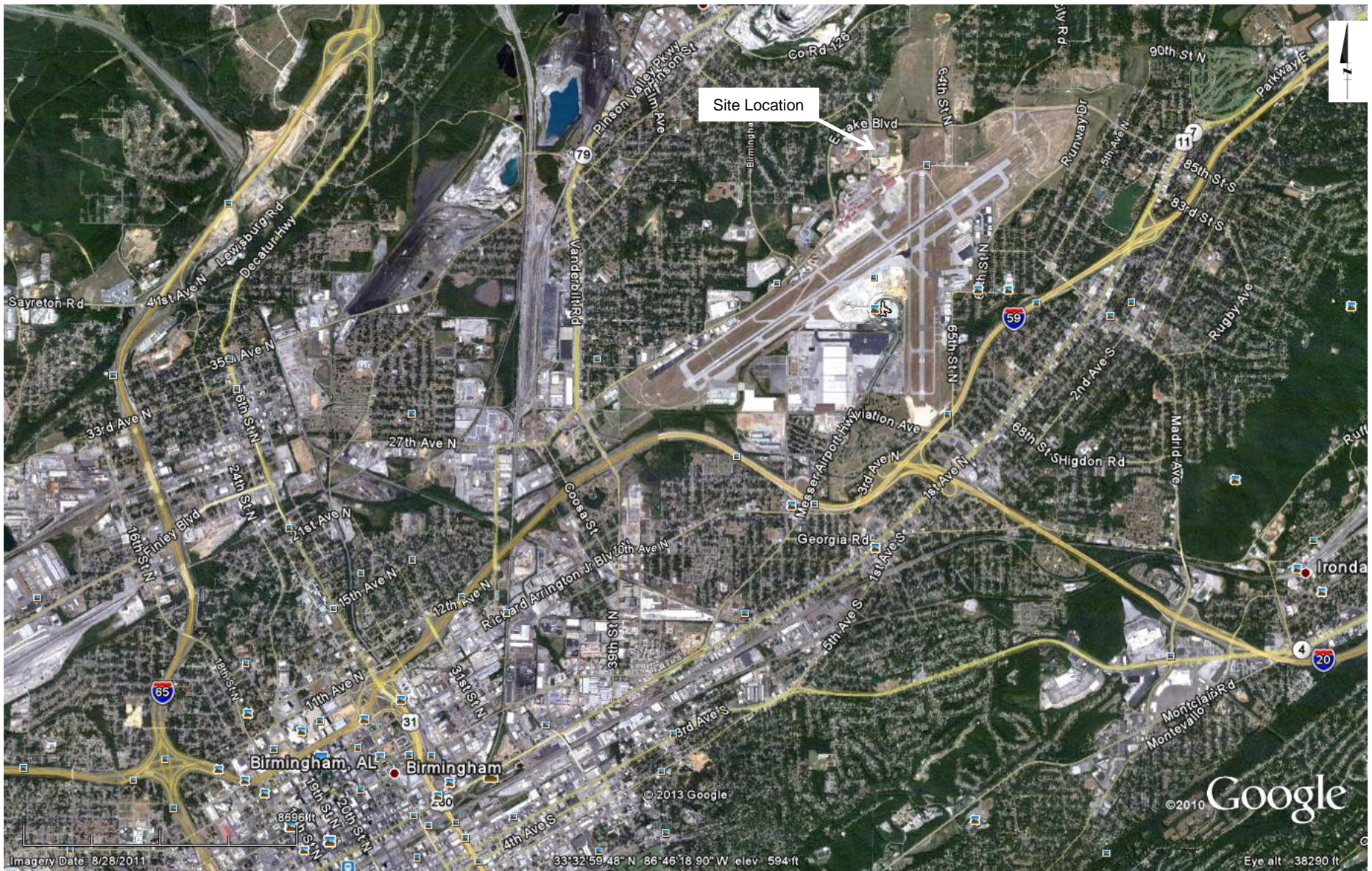


DIAGRAM IS FOR GENERAL LOCATION
ONLY, AND IS NOT INTENDED FOR
CONSTRUCTION PURPOSES

Project Manager:	BCR	Project No.	E1135029
Drawn by:	BCR	Scale:	NTS
Checked by:	DAB	File Name:	
Approved by:	DAB	Date:	02-27-2013

Terracon

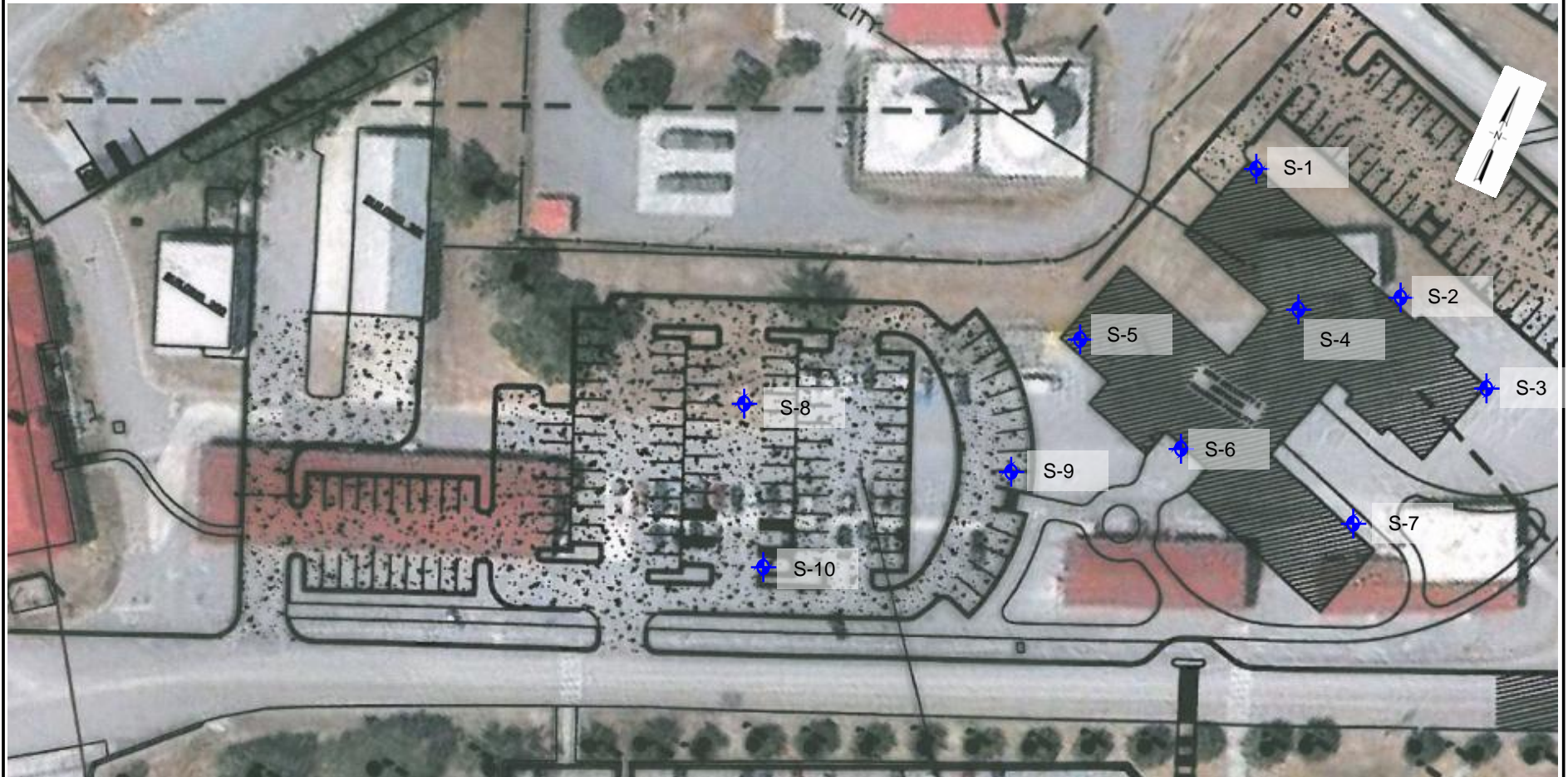
110 12th Street North Birmingham, Alabama 35203
PH. (205) 942-1289 FAX. (205) 443-5302

SITE LOCATION PLAN

Security and Services Training Facility
Alabama Air National Guard
Birmingham, Alabama

Exhibit

A-1





 Approximate Boring Location

DIAGRAM IS FOR GENERAL LOCATION
ONLY, AND IS NOT INTENDED FOR
CONSTRUCTION PURPOSES

Project Manager: BCR	Project No. E1135029	 110 12 th Street North Birmingham, Alabama 35203 PH. (205) 942-1289 FAX. (205) 443-5302	BORING LOCATION PLAN		Exhibit
Drawn by: BCR	Scale: NTS		Security and Services Training Facility Alabama Air National Guard Birmingham, Alabama		A-2
Checked by: DAB	File Name:				
Approved by: DAB	Date: 03-08-2013				

Geotechnical Engineering Report

Proposed Security and Services Training Facility ■ Birmingham, Alabama
March 13, 2013 ■ Terracon Project No. E1135029



Field Exploration Description

Boring locations were located in the field by measuring with a tape and turning approximate right angles from existing features. Therefore, the location of these borings should be considered only as accurate as the means and methods by which they were determined. The approximate location of each boring is shown on the attached Boring Location Plan on Exhibit A-2.

The borings were drilled with a truck-mounted rotary drill rig using continuous flight solid-stem augers to advance the boreholes. Samples of the soil encountered in the borings were obtained using the split-barrel sampling procedure.

In the split barrel sampling procedure, the number of blows required to advance a standard 2 inch O.D. split barrel sampler the last 12 inches of the typical total 18 inch penetration by means of a 140 pound hammer with a free fall of 30 inches using a rope and cathead, is the standard penetration resistance value (SPT-N). This value is used to estimate the in-situ relative density of cohesionless soils and consistency of cohesive soils. The borings were backfilled with the drilled materials prior to leaving the site.

The interpolated subsurface conditions encountered by the soil borings are shown on the Boring Logs included in the Appendix A. The strata changes indicated on the Boring Logs are interpolated boundaries, the actual boundaries may vary.

BORING LOG NO. S-2

Page 1 of 1

PROJECT: ANG Security and Services Training

CLIENT: Seay, Seay & Litchfield, PC

SITE:
Birmingham, Alabama

GRAPHIC LOG	LOCATION See Exhibit A-2		DEPTH (Ft.)	WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS	SAMPLE TYPE	FIELD TEST RESULTS	WATER CONTENT (%)	ATTERBERG LIMITS	PERCENT FINES
	DEPTH	ELEVATION (Ft.)						LL-PL-PI	
	0.2	651							
	TOPSOIL								
	LEAN CLAY, FILL , brown, with some chert								
	3.0	648							
	LEAN CLAY (CL) , brown with gray, very stiff, trace of chert								
	6.0	645							
	FAT CLAY (CH) , brown with gray mottling, very stiff, trace chert								
	becomes stiff								
	15.0	636							
	Boring Terminated at 15 Feet								

Stratification lines are approximate. In-situ, the transition may be gradual.

Advancement Method:
Continuous flight auger

See Exhibit A-3 for description of field procedures.

Notes:

Abandonment Method:
Backfilled with cuttings

See Appendix B for description of laboratory procedures and additional data (if any).

See Appendix C for explanation of symbols and abbreviations.

WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS

water encountered at 9 feet at time of boring
water at 9 feet after 2 hours

Terracon
110 12th Street North
Birmingham, Alabama

Boring Started: 2/28/2013

Boring Completed: 2/28/2013

Drill Rig: CME 45

Driller: JS

Project No.: E1135029

Exhibit: A-5

THIS BORING LOG IS NOT VALID IF SEPARATED FROM ORIGINAL REPORT.

BORING LOG NO. S-3

Page 1 of 1

PROJECT: ANG Security and Services Training

CLIENT: Seay, Seay & Litchfield, PC

SITE:
Birmingham, Alabama

GRAPHIC LOG	LOCATION See Exhibit A-2		DEPTH (Ft.)	WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS	SAMPLE TYPE	FIELD TEST RESULTS	WATER CONTENT (%)	ATTERBERG LIMITS	PERCENT FINES
	DEPTH	ELEVATION (Ft.)						LL-PL-PI	
	0.3	649							
	0.9	648							
	BASE								
	LEAN CLAY (CL) , brown to reddish-brown some gray mottling, very stiff, some chert					7-11-9 N=20	17		
	becomes hard		5			11-17-19 N=36	25		
	6.0	643				10-15-19 N=34	29		
	FAT CLAY (CH) , brown to reddish brown, some gray mottling, hard, some chert					9-15-16 N=31			
	becomes very stiff		10			7-8-11 N=19			
	15.0	634	15						
	Boring Terminated at 15 Feet								

Stratification lines are approximate. In-situ, the transition may be gradual.

Advancement Method:
Continuous flight auger

See Exhibit A-3 for description of field procedures.

Notes:

Abandonment Method:
Backfilled with cuttings

See Appendix B for description of laboratory procedures and additional data (if any).

See Appendix C for explanation of symbols and abbreviations.

WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS

No water encountered

Terracon

110 12th Street North
Birmingham, Alabama

Boring Started: 2/28/2013

Boring Completed: 2/28/2013

Drill Rig: CME 45

Driller: JS

Project No.: E1135029

Exhibit: A-6

THIS BORING LOG IS NOT VALID IF SEPARATED FROM ORIGINAL REPORT.




BORING LOG NO. S-4

Page 1 of 1

PROJECT: ANG Security and Services Training

CLIENT: Seay, Seay & Litchfield, PC

SITE:
Birmingham, Alabama

GRAPHIC LOG	LOCATION See Exhibit A-2		DEPTH (Ft.)	WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS	SAMPLE TYPE	FIELD TEST RESULTS	WATER CONTENT (%)	ATTERBERG LIMITS	PERCENT FINES
	DEPTH	ELEVATION (Ft.)						LL-PL-PI	
	0.3	TOPSOIL	646.5						
	LEAN CLAY (CL) , brown, trace of chert, stiff								
		becomes very stiff				4-5-7 N=12	24		
		becomes hard				12-12-12 N=24	19		
	6.0		641						
	FAT CLAY (CH) , brown, hard, trace chert								
		contains fine to coarse chert gravel				9-18-18 N=36	26		
						10-19-24 N=43			
						7-13-17 N=30			
	15.0	632		15					
	Boring Terminated at 15 Feet								

Stratification lines are approximate. In-situ, the transition may be gradual.

Advancement Method:
Continuous flight auger

See Exhibit A-3 for description of field procedures.

Notes:

Abandonment Method:
Backfilled with cuttings

See Appendix B for description of laboratory procedures and additional data (if any).

See Appendix C for explanation of symbols and abbreviations.

WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS

No water encountered

Terracon

110 12th Street North
Birmingham, Alabama

Boring Started: 2/28/2013

Boring Completed: 2/28/2013

Drill Rig: CME 45

Driller: JS

Project No.: E1135029

Exhibit: A-7

THIS BORING LOG IS NOT VALID IF SEPARATED FROM ORIGINAL REPORT.


BORING LOG NO. S-5

Page 1 of 1

PROJECT: ANG Security and Services
Training

CLIENT: Seay, Seay & Litchfield, PC

SITE:
Birmingham, Alabama

GRAPHIC LOG	LOCATION See Exhibit A-2		DEPTH (Ft.)	WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS	SAMPLE TYPE	FIELD TEST RESULTS	WATER CONTENT (%)	ATTERBERG LIMITS	PERCENT FINES
	DEPTH	ELEVATION (Ft.)						LL-PL-PI	
	0.2	ASPHALT	645						
	0.7	BASE	644.5						
		LEAN CLAY (CL) , reddish-brown, hard, fine to coarse chert gravel							
						14-26-18 N=44	15	27-18-9	
		becomes very stiff							
						6-8-9 N=17	20		
						5-7-10 N=17			
		becomes hard							
						13-23-23 N=46			
	12.0		633						
	Auger Refusal at 12 Feet								

Stratification lines are approximate. In-situ, the transition may be gradual.

Advancement Method:
Continuous flight auger

See Exhibit A-3 for description of field procedures.

Notes:

Abandonment Method:
Backfilled with cuttings

See Appendix B for description of laboratory procedures and additional data (if any).

See Appendix C for explanation of symbols and abbreviations.

WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS

No water encountered

Terracon

110 12th Street North
Birmingham, Alabama

Boring Started: 2/28/2013

Boring Completed: 2/28/2013

Drill Rig: CME 45

Driller: JS

Project No.: E1135029

Exhibit: A-8

THIS BORING LOG IS NOT VALID IF SEPARATED FROM ORIGINAL REPORT.

BORING LOG NO. S-6

Page 1 of 1

PROJECT: ANG Security and Services Training

CLIENT: Seay, Seay & Litchfield, PC

SITE:
Birmingham, Alabama

GRAPHIC LOG	LOCATION See Exhibit A-2		DEPTH (Ft.)	WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS	SAMPLE TYPE	FIELD TEST RESULTS	WATER CONTENT (%)	ATTERBERG LIMITS	PERCENT FINES
	DEPTH	ELEVATION (Ft.)						LL-PL-PI	
	0.3	644.5							
	0.8	644.5							
	LEAN CLAY (CL) , tan and gray, soft, wet								
						2-1-3 N=4			
			5			1-1-1 N=2			
						2-2-3 N=5			
	9.0	636				5-8-9 N=17			
	FAT CLAY (CH) , reddish-brown, stiff to very stiff, fine to coarse chert gravel								
			10						
						12-7-9 N=16			
			15						
	15.0	630							
	Boring Terminated at 15 Feet								

Stratification lines are approximate. In-situ, the transition may be gradual.

Advancement Method:
Continuous flight auger

See Exhibit A-3 for description of field procedures.

Notes:

Abandonment Method:
Backfilled with cuttings

See Appendix B for description of laboratory procedures and additional data (if any).

See Appendix C for explanation of symbols and abbreviations.

WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS

water encountered at 4 feet during drilling

Terracon

110 12th Street North
Birmingham, Alabama

Boring Started: 2/28/2013

Boring Completed: 2/28/2013

Drill Rig: CME 45

Driller: JS

Project No.: E1135029

Exhibit: A-9

THIS BORING LOG IS NOT VALID IF SEPARATED FROM ORIGINAL REPORT.



BORING LOG NO. S-7

Page 1 of 1

PROJECT: ANG Security and Services Training

CLIENT: Seay, Seay & Litchfield, PC

SITE:
Birmingham, Alabama

GRAPHIC LOG	LOCATION See Exhibit A-2		DEPTH (Ft.)	WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS	SAMPLE TYPE	FIELD TEST RESULTS	WATER CONTENT (%)	ATTERBERG LIMITS	PERCENT FINES
								LL-PL-PI	
	DEPTH	ELEVATION (Ft.)							
	0.3	647							
	0.7	646.5							
	ASPHALT								
	BASE								
	FAT CLAY (CH) , reddish-brown, very stiff, some chert gravel, some gray mottling					5-7-10 N=17	36		
	becomes stiff								
						7-12-16 N=28	34		
						6-8-7 N=15			
						4-5-5 N=10			
						</			

Stratification lines are approximate. In-situ, the transition may be gradual.

Advancement Method:
Continuous flight auger

See Exhibit A-3 for description of field procedures.

Notes:

Abandonment Method:
Backfilled with cuttings

See Appendix B for description of laboratory procedures and additional data (if any).

See Appendix C for explanation of symbols and abbreviations.

WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS

water encountered at 12 feet during drilling
water at 9 feet after 2 hours

Terracon
110 12th Street North
Birmingham, Alabama

Boring Started: 2/28/2013

Boring Completed: 2/28/2013

Drill Rig: CME 45

Driller: JS

Project No.: E1135029

Exhibit: A-10

THIS BORING LOG IS NOT VALID IF SEPARATED FROM ORIGINAL REPORT.

Page 1 of 1

CLIENT: Seay, Seay & Litchfield, PC

GRAPHIC LOG	LOCATION See Exhibit A-2		DEPTH 0.1' ^ 5.0'	ELEVATION (Ft.) 642 637	DEPTH (Ft.)	WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS	SAMPLE TYPE	FIELD TEST RESULTS	WATER CONTENT (%)	ATTERBERG LIMITS	PERCENT FINES
										LL-PL-PI	
			TOPSOIL	642							
			FAT CLAY (CH), brown, medium stiff, some fine chert gravel								
			becomes stiff				X	2-2-3 N=5	33		
							X	3-3-6 N=9			
			Boring Terminated at 5 Feet	637	5						

Exhibit: A-11

THIS BORING LOG IS NOT VALID IF SEPARATED FROM ORIGINAL REPORT.

BORING LOG NO. S-9

Page 1 of 1

PROJECT: ANG Security and Services Training

CLIENT: Seay, Seay & Litchfield, PC

SITE:
Birmingham, Alabama

GRAPHIC LOG	LOCATION See Exhibit A-2		DEPTH (Ft.)	WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS	SAMPLE TYPE	FIELD TEST RESULTS	WATER CONTENT (%)	ATTERBERG LIMITS	PERCENT FINES
								LL-PL-PI	
	DEPTH	ELEVATION (Ft.)							
	0.2	643							
	0.6	642.5							
	ASPHALT								
	BASE								
	LEAN CLAY (CL) , reddish-brown, little chert, stiff								
			</						

Stratification lines are approximate. In-situ, the transition may be gradual.

Advancement Method:
Continuous flight auger

See Exhibit A-3 for description of field procedures.

Notes:

Abandonment Method:
Backfilled with cuttings

See Appendix B for description of laboratory procedures and additional data (if any).
See Appendix C for explanation of symbols and abbreviations.

WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS

No water encountered

Terracon
110 12th Street North
Birmingham, Alabama

Boring Started: 2/28/2013

Boring Completed: 2/28/2013

Drill Rig: CME 45

Driller: JS

Project No.: E1135029

Exhibit: A-12

THIS BORING LOG IS NOT VALID IF SEPARATED FROM ORIGINAL REPORT.




BORING LOG NO. S-10

Page 1 of 1



PROJECT: ANG Security and Services Training

CLIENT: Seay, Seay & Litchfield, PC

SITE:
Birmingham, Alabama

GRAPHIC LOG	LOCATION See Exhibit A-2		DEPTH (Ft.)	WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS	SAMPLE TYPE	FIELD TEST RESULTS	WATER CONTENT (%)	ATTERBERG LIMITS	PERCENT FINES
	DEPTH	ELEVATION (Ft.)						LL-PL-PI	
	0.3	ASPHALT	641.5						
	0.9	BASE	641						
		LEAN CLAY (CL) , brown, soft							
						4-1-1 N=2	19		
		becomes medium stiff					2-2-5 N=7		
	5.0		637	5					
	Boring Terminated at 5 Feet								

Stratification lines are approximate. In-situ, the transition may be gradual.

Advancement Method: Continuous flight auger	See Exhibit A-3 for description of field procedures.	Notes:	
Abandonment Method: Backfilled with cuttings	See Appendix B for description of laboratory procedures and additional data (if any). See Appendix C for explanation of symbols and abbreviations.		
WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS	 <p>110 12th Street North Birmingham, Alabama</p>	Boring Started: 2/28/2013	Boring Completed: 2/28/2013
 water encountered at 4 feet at time of boring		Drill Rig: CME 45	Driller: JS
		Project No.: E1135029	Exhibit: A-13

THIS BORING LOG IS NOT VALID IF SEPARATED FROM ORIGINAL REPORT.

APPENDIX B

LABORATORY TESTING

Geotechnical Engineering Report

Proposed Security and Services Training Facility ■ Birmingham, Alabama
March 13, 2013 ■ Terracon Project No. E1135029

Laboratory Testing












Soil samples were tested in the laboratory to measure their natural moisture content and Atterberg limits. The test results are provided on the boring logs included in Appendix A.

Descriptive classifications of the soils indicated on the boring logs are in accordance with the enclosed General Notes and the Unified Soil Classification System. Also shown are estimated Unified Soil Classification Symbols. A brief description of this classification system is attached to this report. All classification was by visual manual procedures.

APPENDIX C
SUPPORTING DOCUMENTS

GENERAL NOTES

DESCRIPTION OF SYMBOLS AND ABBREVIATIONS

SAMPLING			WATER LEVEL		Water Initially Encountered	FIELD TESTS	(HP)	Hand Penetrometer	
	Auger	Split Spoon			Water Level After a Specified Period of Time		(T)	Torvane	
					Water Level After a Specified Period of Time		(b/f)	Standard Penetration Test (blows per foot)	
	Shelby Tube	Macro Core		Water levels indicated on the soil boring logs are the levels measured in the borehole at the times indicated. Groundwater level variations will occur over time. In low permeability soils, accurate determination of groundwater levels is not possible with short term water level observations.			(PID)	Photo-Ionization Detector	
							(OVA)	Organic Vapor Analyzer	
	Ring Sampler	Rock Core							
									
	Grab Sample	No Recovery							

DESCRIPTIVE SOIL CLASSIFICATION

Soil classification is based on the Unified Soil Classification System. Coarse Grained Soils have more than 50% of their dry weight retained on a #200 sieve; their principal descriptors are: boulders, cobbles, gravel or sand. Fine Grained Soils have less than 50% of their dry weight retained on a #200 sieve; they are principally described as clays if they are plastic, and silts if they are slightly plastic or non-plastic. Major constituents may be added as modifiers and minor constituents may be added according to the relative proportions based on grain size. In addition to gradation, coarse-grained soils are defined on the basis of their in-place relative density and fine-grained soils on the basis of their consistency.

LOCATION AND ELEVATION NOTES

Unless otherwise noted, Latitude and Longitude are approximately determined using a hand-held GPS device. The accuracy of such devices is variable. Surface elevation data annotated with +/- indicates that no actual topographical survey was conducted to confirm the surface elevation. Instead, the surface elevation was approximately determined from topographic maps of the area.

STRENGTH TERMS	RELATIVE DENSITY OF COARSE-GRAINED SOILS (More than 50% retained on No. 200 sieve.) Density determined by Standard Penetration Resistance Includes gravels, sands and silts.			CONSISTENCY OF FINE-GRAINED SOILS (50% or more passing the No. 200 sieve.) Consistency determined by laboratory shear strength testing, field visual-manual procedures or standard penetration resistance		
	Descriptive Term (Density)	Standard Penetration or N-Value Blows/Ft.	Ring Sampler Blows/Ft.	Descriptive Term (Consistency)	Unconfined Compressive Strength, Qu, psf	Standard Penetration or N-Value Blows/Ft.
	Very Loose	0 - 3	0 - 6	Very Soft	less than 500	0 - 1
	Loose	4 - 9	7 - 18	Soft	500 to 1,000	2 - 4
	Medium Dense	10 - 29	19 - 58	Medium-Stiff	1,000 to 2,000	4 - 8
	Dense	30 - 50	59 - 98	Stiff	2,000 to 4,000	8 - 15
	Very Dense	> 50	≥ 99	Very Stiff	4,000 to 8,000	15 - 30
				Hard	> 8,000	> 30

RELATIVE PROPORTIONS OF SAND AND GRAVEL

Descriptive Term(s) of other constituents

Trace
With
Modifier

Percent of Dry Weight

< 15
15 - 29
> 30

GRAIN SIZE TERMINOLOGY

Major Component of Sample

Boulders
Cobbles
Gravel
Sand
Silt or Clay

Particle Size

Over 12 in. (300 mm)
12 in. to 3 in. (300mm to 75mm)
3 in. to #4 sieve (75mm to 4.75 mm)
#4 to #200 sieve (4.75mm to 0.075mm)
Passing #200 sieve (0.075mm)

RELATIVE PROPORTIONS OF FINES

Descriptive Term(s) of other constituents

Trace
With
Modifier

Percent of Dry Weight

< 5
5 - 12
> 12

PLASTICITY DESCRIPTION

Term

Non-plastic
Low
Medium
High

Plasticity Index

0
1 - 10
11 - 30
> 30

UNIFIED SOIL CLASSIFICATION SYSTEM

Criteria for Assigning Group Symbols and Group Names Using Laboratory Tests ^A					Soil Classification	
					Group Symbol	Group Name ^B
Coarse Grained Soils: More than 50% retained on No. 200 sieve	Gravels: More than 50% of coarse fraction retained on No. 4 sieve	Clean Gravels: Less than 5% fines ^C	$Cu \geq 4$ and $1 \leq Cc \leq 3$ ^E	GW	Well-graded gravel ^F	
			$Cu < 4$ and/or $1 > Cc > 3$ ^E	GP	Poorly graded gravel ^F	
		Gravels with Fines: More than 12% fines ^C	Fines classify as ML or MH	GM	Silty gravel ^{F,G,H}	
			Fines classify as CL or CH	GC	Clayey gravel ^{F,G,H}	
	Sands: 50% or more of coarse fraction passes No. 4 sieve	Clean Sands: Less than 5% fines ^D	$Cu \geq 6$ and $1 \leq Cc \leq 3$ ^E	SW	Well-graded sand ^I	
			$Cu < 6$ and/or $1 > Cc > 3$ ^E	SP	Poorly graded sand ^I	
		Sands with Fines: More than 12% fines ^D	Fines classify as ML or MH	SM	Silty sand ^{G,H,I}	
			Fines classify as CL or CH	SC	Clayey sand ^{G,H,I}	
Fine-Grained Soils: 50% or more passes the No. 200 sieve	Silts and Clays: Liquid limit less than 50	Inorganic:	$PI > 7$ and plots on or above "A" line ^J	CL	Lean clay ^{K,L,M}	
			$PI < 4$ or plots below "A" line ^J	ML	Silt ^{K,L,M}	
		Organic:	Liquid limit - oven dried	< 0.75	OL	Organic clay ^{K,L,M,N}
			Liquid limit - not dried		Organic silt ^{K,L,M,O}	
	Silts and Clays: Liquid limit 50 or more	Inorganic:	PI plots on or above "A" line	CH	Fat clay ^{K,L,M}	
			PI plots below "A" line	MH	Elastic Silt ^{K,L,M}	
		Organic:	Liquid limit - oven dried	< 0.75	OH	Organic clay ^{K,L,M,P}
			Liquid limit - not dried			Organic silt ^{K,L,M,Q}
Highly organic soils:	Primarily organic matter, dark in color, and organic odor			PT	Peat	

^A Based on the material passing the 3-inch (75-mm) sieve

^B If field sample contained cobbles or boulders, or both, add "with cobbles or boulders, or both" to group name.

^C Gravels with 5 to 12% fines require dual symbols: GW-GM well-graded gravel with silt, GW-GC well-graded gravel with clay, GP-GM poorly graded gravel with silt, GP-GC poorly graded gravel with clay.

^D Sands with 5 to 12% fines require dual symbols: SW-SM well-graded sand with silt, SW-SC well-graded sand with clay, SP-SM poorly graded sand with silt, SP-SC poorly graded sand with clay

$$^E Cu = D_{60}/D_{10} \quad Cc = \frac{(D_{30})^2}{D_{10} \times D_{60}}$$

^F If soil contains $\geq 15\%$ sand, add "with sand" to group name.

^G If fines classify as CL-ML, use dual symbol GC-GM, or SC-SM.

^H If fines are organic, add "with organic fines" to group name.

^I If soil contains $\geq 15\%$ gravel, add "with gravel" to group name.

^J If Atterberg limits plot in shaded area, soil is a CL-ML, silty clay.

^K If soil contains 15 to 29% plus No. 200, add "with sand" or "with gravel," whichever is predominant.

^L If soil contains $\geq 30\%$ plus No. 200 predominantly sand, add "sandy" to group name.

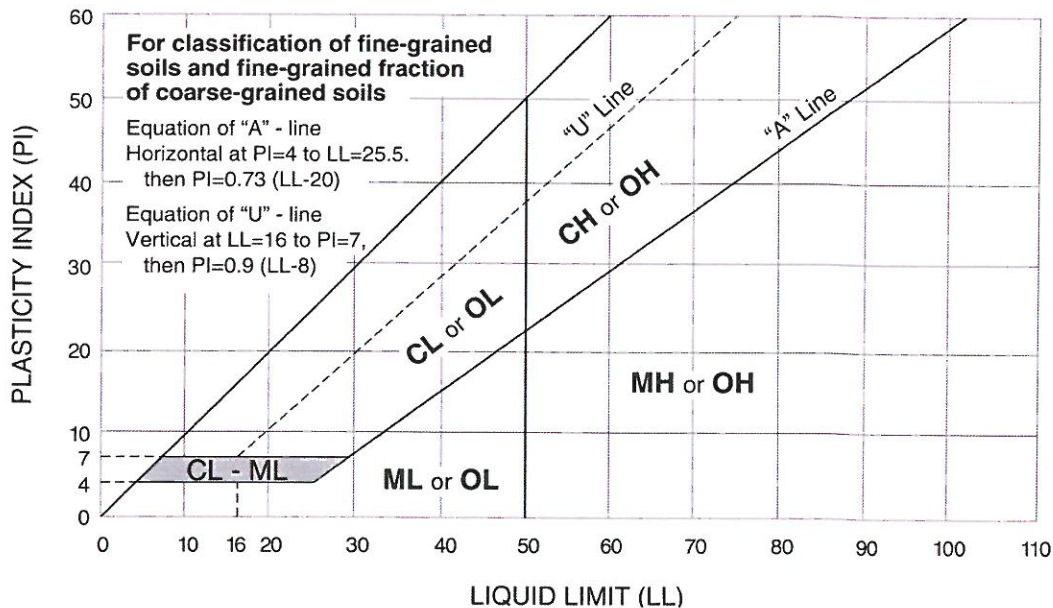
^M If soil contains $\geq 30\%$ plus No. 200, predominantly gravel, add "gravelly" to group name.

^N $PI \geq 4$ and plots on or above "A" line.

^O $PI < 4$ or plots below "A" line.

^P PI plots on or above "A" line.

^Q PI plots below "A" line.



SECTION 313116 - TERMITE CONTROL

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Chemical soil treatment.

1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 3001 - Submittals, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Indicate toxicants to be used, composition by percentage, dilution schedule, intended application rate.
- C. Test Reports: Indicate regulatory agency approval reports when required.
- D. Manufacturer's Application Instructions: Indicate caution requirement.
- E. Record and document moisture content of soil before application.
- F. Maintenance Data: Indicate re-treatment schedule .
- G. Warranty: Submit warranty and ensure that forms have been completed in the Government's name.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing this type of work and:
 - 1. Having minimum of three (3) years documented experience.
 - 2. Approved by manufacturer of treatment materials.
 - 3. Licensed in the State in which the Project is located.

1.05 WARRANTY

- A. See Section 017800 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Provide five year installer's warranty against damage to building caused by termites.
 - 1. Include coverage for repairs to building and to contents damaged due to building damage. Repair damage and, if required, re-treat.
 - 2. Inspect annually and report in writing to the Government. Provide inspection service for 5 years from Date of Beneficial Occupancy.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 CHEMICAL SOIL TREATMENT

- A. Toxicant Chemical: EPA Title 7, United States Code, 136 through 136y approved; synthetically color dyed to permit visual identification of treated soil.
- B. Diluent: Recommended by toxicant manufacturer.

2.02 MIXES

- A. Mix on-site in presence of General Contractor.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that soil surfaces are unfrozen, sufficiently dry to absorb toxicant, and ready to receive treatment.
- B. Verify final grading is complete.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. General: Comply with the most stringent requirements of authorities having jurisdiction and with manufacturer's written instructions for preparing substrate.
Remove all extraneous sources of wood cellulose and other edible materials such as wood debris, tree stumps and roots, stakes, formwork, and construction waste wood from soil and around foundations.
- B. Soil Treatment Preparation: Remove foreign matter and impermeable soil materials that could decrease treatment effectiveness on areas to be treated. Loosen, rake, and level soil to be treated, except previously compacted areas under slabs and footings.
Termiticides may be applied before placing compacted fill under slabs if recommended by termiticide manufacturer.
- C. Fit filling hose connected to water source at the site with a backflow preventer, complying with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Applicator shall mix all treatment from a sealed package on site with the project construction superintendent in his company during the course of the mixing.

3.03 APPLICATION - CHEMICAL TREATMENT

- A. Comply with requirements of U.S. EPA and applicable state and local codes.
- B. Spray apply toxicant in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

- C. Apply toxicant at following locations:
 - 1. Under Slabs-on-Grade.
 - 2. At Both Sides of Foundation Surface.
 - 3. Soil Within 10 feet (3 m) of Building Perimeter.
- D. Under slabs, apply toxicant 12 hours prior to installation of vapor barrier.
- E. At foundation walls, apply toxicant immediately prior to finish grading work outside foundations.
- F. Apply extra treatment to structure penetration surfaces such as pipe or ducts, and soil penetrations such as grounding rods or posts.
- G. Re-treat disturbed treated soil with same toxicant as original treatment.
- H. If inspection or testing identifies the presence of termites, re-treat soil and re-test.

3.04 PROTECTION

- A. Do not permit soil grading over treated work.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

**SECTION 320116 - COLD MILLING (PLANING) OF EXISTING BITUMINOUS
PAVEMENTS**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 DESCRIPTION

- A. This Section shall cover the work of removing, by planing (milling), existing asphalt pavement. The work specified in this Section includes the transporting, stockpiling, or otherwise disposing of the removed pavement material. The removed material shall become the property of the Contractor unless otherwise noted on the plans. Work shall be performed in accordance with requirements of this Section and with Section 408 of the State of Alabama Department of Transportation standard specifications for Highway Construction latest edition.
- B. Maintain in a satisfactory working condition equipment, tools, and machines used in the performance of the work.
- C. Cold-Milling Machine
 - 1. Provide a cold-milling machine which is self-propelled, capable of milling the pavement to a specified depth and smoothness and of establishing grade control; with means of controlling transverse slope and dust produced during the pavement milling operation. The machine shall have the ability to remove the millings or cuttings from the pavement and load them into a truck. The milling machine shall not cause damage to any part of the pavement structure that is not to be removed.
- D. Cleaning Equipment
 - 1. Provide cleaning equipment suitable for removing and cleaning loose material from the pavement surface.
- E. Straightedge
 - 1. Furnish and maintain at the site, in good condition, one 12 foot straightedge or other suitable device for each milling machine, for testing the finished surface. Make straightedge available for Government use. Straightedges shall be constructed of aluminum or other lightweight metal, with blades of box or box-girder cross section with flat bottom reinforced to insure rigidity and accuracy. Straightedges shall have handles to facilitate movement on the pavement.

1.02 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Codes and Standards: Unless otherwise noted, specifications referred to herein shall be the State of Alabama Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Highway Construction, Latest Edition.
- B. Grade
 - 1. Conform the finished milled surfaces to the lines, grades, and cross sections indicated. The finished milled-pavement surfaces shall vary not more than 1/4 inch from the established plan grade line and elevation. Finished surfaces at a juncture with other pavements shall coincide with the finished surfaces of the abutting pavements. The deviations from the plan grade line and elevation will not be permitted in areas of pavements where closer conformance with planned grade and elevation is required for the proper functioning of appurtenant structures involved.
- C. Surface Smoothness
 - 1. Finished surfaces shall not deviate from the testing edge of a straightedge more than 1/4 inch in the transverse or longitudinal direction.
- D. Traffic Control
 - 1. Provide all necessary traffic controls during milling operations.

1.03 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Milling shall not be performed when there is accumulation of snow or ice on the pavement surface.

PART 2 PRODUCTS (NOT APPLICABLE)

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 MILLING OPERATION

- A. A minimum of seven days notice is required, prior to start work, for the Contracting Officer to coordinate the milling operation with other activities at the site. Make sufficient passes so that the designated area is milled to the grades and cross sections indicated. The milling shall proceed with care and in depth increments that will not damage the pavement below the designated finished grade. Repair or replace, as directed, items damaged during milling such as manholes, valve boxes, utility lines, pavement that is torn, cracked, gouged, broken, or undercut. The milled material shall be removed from the pavement and loaded into trucks.

3.02 CONSTRUCTION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Construction Requirements shall conform to ALDOT Specifications Section 408.

3.03 REMOVAL OF MILLED MATERIAL

- A. Material that is removed shall become the property of the Contractor and removed from the site.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 321217 - ASPHALT CONCRETE PAVING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and requirements of the Government's Solicitation and Division 1 Specification sections, apply to work of this section.

1.02 DESCRIPTION OF WORK:

- A. Work described in this section includes construction of new asphalt paving for parking areas at locations shown on the plans. Construction work items include a bituminous concrete binder layer, prime coat, tack coat, and bituminous concrete wearing surface. Pavement marking for parking areas is also included in this section.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. Material Certificates: Provide copies of materials certificates signed by material producer and Contractor, certifying that each material item complies with, or exceeds, specified requirements.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Codes and Standards: Unless otherwise noted, specifications referred to herein shall be the State of Alabama Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Highway Construction, Latest Edition.
- B. Soil Testing: Laboratory and field density tests and other soils tests specified herein shall be performed by an independent soils testing laboratory selected and paid by the Contractor.

1.05 SITE CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Construct asphalt concrete binder and surface courses when atmospheric temperature is above 40 degrees F (4 degrees C) and rising, and when subgrade is dry. Spreading operations shall be stopped when the air temperature is below 45 degrees F (7 degrees C) and falling.
- B. Grade Control: Establish and maintain required lines and elevations.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS

- A. Fine and course aggregates for bituminous concrete binder and wearing surface layer course shall be as specified in Alabama D.O.T. Specifications, Section 424.

- B. Job Mix: Mix shall be as specified in Section 424 for a 424*-B Superpave Bituminous Concrete Binder Layer, $\frac{3}{4}$ " maximum size aggregate ESAL Range A.
- C. Prime Coat: Bituminous material for prime coat shall be as specified in Section 401.
- D. Tack Coat: Bituminous material for tack coat shall be as specified in Section 405.
- E. Job Mix: Mix shall be as specified in Section 424 for a 424-A Superpave Bituminous Concrete Wearing Surface Layer, $\frac{1}{2}$ " maximum size aggregate.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 PRIME COAT

- A. Description: The work covers the furnishing and placing of a bituminous prime coat on a compacted granular soil base course which is to be covered by a bituminous binder layer.
- B. Construction Methods: Requirements are specified in section 401 of the Alabama D.O.T. Standard Specifications for Highway Construction.

3.02 PLANT MIX BITUMINOUS CONCRETE BINDER LAYER

- A. Description: The work consists of constructing a layer, composed of an aggregate and bituminous material hot mixed in a central plant and hot laid on the compacted subgrade in accordance with these specifications and at locations shown on the drawings.
- B. Construction Methods: Details and requirements for construction are specified in Section 424, which refers also to Articles 410.03 through 410.07 of the Alabama D.O.T. Specifications.
- C. Compaction shall be as specified in Subarticle 410.03 (g) of the Alabama D.O.T. Specifications. At least three compaction tests will be required for each day of paving operations to determine that density requirements have been attained.

3.03 TACK COAT

- A. Description: The work covers the furnishing and placing of a bituminous tack coat on a new bituminous concrete binder layer which is to be covered by a bituminous concrete wearing surface or on an existing asphalt surface to receive a new bituminous concrete overlay.
- B. Construction Methods: Requirements are specified in Section 405 of the Alabama D.O.T. Standard Specifications for Highway Construction

3.04 BITUMINOUS CONCRETE WEARING SURFACE

- A. Description: The work consists of constructing a hot bituminous concrete wearing surface on the previously constructed plant mix bituminous concrete binder layer in accordance with these specifications at locations shown on the drawings. See details.
- B. Construction Methods: Requirements shall be the same as specified in Section 424 which also refers to Article 410.03 through 410.07 of the Alabama D.O.T. Specifications.
- C. Compaction shall be as specified in Subarticle 410.03(g) of the Alabama D.O.T. Specifications. At least three compaction tests will be required for each day of paving operations to determine that density requirements have been attained.

3.05 EXISTING PAVEMENTS

- A. Broken Pavement: Repair existing pavement where damaged by construction activity. Carefully note and record condition of pavement prior to beginning work. Remove pavement for patching by cutting pavement in straight lines with power saw.
- B. Restore base course with crushed aggregate base course. Backfill in trenches is specified under other Sections; allow initial backfill to settle under traffic for 2 weeks before cutting out for new base course. Install new wearing surface as hereinbefore specified.
- C. All patches shall be placed in straight lines, level with existing pavement, without bumps or sinks.

3.06 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. General: Test in-place asphalt concrete courses for compliance with requirements for thickness and surface smoothness. Contractor shall engage a testing company and pay for all testing services. Repair or remove and replace unacceptable paving as directed by Government.
- B. Thickness: In-place compacted thickness will not be acceptable if exceeding following allowable variation from required thickness:
 - 1. Binder Course: $\frac{1}{2}$ ", plus or minus.
 - 2. Surface Course: $\frac{1}{4}$ ", plus or minus.
- C. Surface Smoothness: Test finished surface of each asphalt concrete course for smoothness, using 10' straightedge applied parallel with, and at right angles to centerline of paved area. Surfaces will not be acceptable if exceeding the following tolerances for smoothness.

1. Binder Course Surface: $\frac{1}{4}$ "
2. Wearing Course Surface: $\frac{3}{16}$ "
3. Check surface areas at intervals as directed by the Government.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 321314 - CEMENT CONCRETE PAVING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including requirements of the Government's Solicitation and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Materials included in this section shall meet the requirements for LEED for New Construction points for the following Sections:
 - 1. MR Credit 4 - Recycled Content
 - 2. MR Credit 5 - Regional Materials
 - 3. The contractor is expected to understand the LEED requirements for these sections and include all applicable overhead in their base bid for the necessary documentation to achieve the above listed credits.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes exterior cement concrete pavement for the following:
 - 1. Curbs and gutters.
 - 2. Walkways.
 - 3. Equipment Pads.
 - 4. Vehicular pavement.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Section 01 3514.01 - LEED Credit Summary
 - 2. Division 31 Section "Earthwork" for subgrade preparation and grading.
 - 3. Division 32 Section "Pavement Joint Sealants" for joint sealants within concrete pavement and at isolation joints of concrete pavement with adjacent construction.
 - 4. Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for general building applications of concrete.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with one or more of blended hydraulic cement, expansive hydraulic cement, fly ash and other pozzolans, ground granulated blast-furnace slag, and silica fume.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of manufactured material and product indicated.
- B. Design Mixes: For each concrete pavement mix. Include alternate mix designs when characteristics of materials, project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.
- C. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency indicating and interpreting test results for compliance of the following with requirements indicated, based on comprehensive testing of current materials:
- D. Material Certificates: Signed by manufacturers certifying that each of the following materials complies with requirements:
 - 1. Cementitious materials and aggregates.
 - 2. Steel reinforcement and reinforcement accessories.
 - 3. Fiber reinforcement.
 - 4. Admixtures.
 - 5. Curing compounds.
 - 6. Applied finish materials.
 - 7. Bonding agent or adhesive.
 - 8. Joint fillers.
- E. Sustainability Submittals, Product data for LEED Compliance:
 - 1. For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and pre-consumer recycled content.
 - a. Include statement indicating costs (sell price for each product having recycled content)
 - b. Include total weight of products provided

2. If any fly ash, ground granulated blast furnace slag, silica fume, rice hull ash, or other waste material is used in mix designs to replace Portland cement, submit the total volume of concrete cast in place, mix design(s) used showing the quantity of portland cement replaced, reports showing successful cylinder testing, and temperature on day of pour if cold weather mix is used.
3. Submit documentation for harvesting and manufacturing locations of all concrete and reinforcing steel intended for use on the project as may be required for proper documentation of MR Credit 5.
4. Provide documentation for pre and post-consumer recycled content for all concrete and reinforcing steel intended for use as may be required for proper documentation of MR Credit 4.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who has completed work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Manufacturer of ready-mixed concrete products complying with ASTM C 94 requirements for production facilities and equipment.
 1. Manufacturer must be certified according to the National Ready Mix Concrete Association's Plant Certification Program.
- C. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, qualified according to ASTM C 1077 and ASTM E 329 to conduct the testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548.
- D. Source Limitations: Obtain each type or class of cementitious material of the same brand from the same manufacturer's plant and each aggregate from one source.
- E. ACI Publications: Comply with ACI 301, "Specification for Structural Concrete," unless modified by the requirements of the Contract Documents.
- F. Concrete Testing Service: Engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform material evaluation tests and to design concrete mixes.

1.06 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Traffic Control: Maintain access for vehicular and pedestrian traffic as required for other construction activities.

1.07 SUSTAINABILITY REQUIREMENTS

A. Steel Reinforcing:

1. All reinforcing steel shall be from manufacturer(s) who fabricate and manufacturer products within 500 miles of the project site. Provide documentation as outline in Part I of this specification.
2. Contract shall endeavor to provide reinforcing steel with the highest percentages of pre and post-consumer recycled content readily available from manufacturer(s) who comply with requirements for regional materials listed above.
 - a. Minimum post-consumer recycled content = 85%
 - b. Minimum pre-consumer recycled content = 13%

B. Concrete Materials:

1. All concrete materials shall be from manufacturer(s) who fabricate and manufacturer products within 500 miles of the project site. Provide documentation as outline in Part I of this specification.
2. Contract shall endeavor to provide concrete materials with the highest percentages of pre and post-consumer recycled content readily available from manufacturer(s) who comply with requirements for regional materials listed above.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 FORMS

- A. Form Materials: Plywood, metal, metal-framed plywood, or other approved panel-type materials to provide full-depth, continuous, straight, smooth exposed surfaces.
1. Use flexible or curved forms for curves of a radius 100 feet or less.
- B. Form-Release Agent: Commercially formulated form-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and will not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.

2.02 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. Plain-Steel Welded Wire Fabric: ASTM A 185, fabricated from as-drawn steel wire into flat sheets.
- B. Reinforcement Bars: ASTM A615, Grade 60.

2.03 CONCRETE MATERIALS

- A. General: Use the same brand and type of cementitious material from the same manufacturer throughout the Project.
- B. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or II.
 - 1. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class F or C.
 - 2. Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: ASTM C 989, Grade 100 or 120.
- C. Aggregate: ASTM C 33, uniformly graded, from a single source, with coarse aggregate as follows:
 - 1. Maximum Aggregate Size: $\frac{3}{4}$ inch nominal.
 - 2. Do not use fine or coarse aggregates containing substances that cause spalling.
 - 3. Match existing aggregate to the extent possible.
- D. Water: ASTM C 94.
- E. All products (cement and aggregate combined), required a Solar Reflectance Index (SRI) of at least 29 calculated using ASTM E1980, "Standard Practice for Calculating Solar Reflectance Index of Horizontal and Low-Sloped Opaque Surfaces."

2.04 ADMIXTURES

- A. General: Admixtures certified by manufacturer to contain not more than 0.1 percent water-soluble chloride ions by mass of cement and to be compatible with other admixtures.
- B. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260.

2.05 FIBER REINFORCEMENT

- A. Synthetic Fiber: Fibrillated polypropylene fibers engineered and designed for use in concrete pavement, complying with ASTM C 1116, Type III, $\frac{1}{2}$ to 1-1/2 inches long.

2.06 CURING MATERIALS

- A. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 2, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately 9 oz./sq.yd. dry.
- B. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.
- C. Water: Potable.

- D. Clear Solvent-Borne Liquid-Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B.

2.07 RELATED MATERIALS

- A. Expansion- and Isolation-Joint-Filler Strips: ASTM D 1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber, or ASTM D 1752, cork or self-expanding cork.
- B. Bonding Agent: ASTM C 1059, Type II, non-redispersible, acrylic emulsion or styrene butadiene.
- C. Epoxy Bonding Adhesive: ASTM C 881, two-component epoxy resin, capable of humid curing and bonding to damp surfaces, of class and grade to suit requirements, and as follows:
1. Types I and II, non-load bearing, for bonding hardened or freshly mixed concrete to hardened concrete.

2.08 CONCRETE MIXES

- A. Prepare design mixes, proportioned according to ACI 211.1 and ACI 301, for each type and strength of normal-weight concrete determined by either laboratory trial mixes or field experience.
- B. Use a qualified independent testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed mix designs for the trial batch method.
- C. Proportion mixes to provide concrete with the following properties:
1. Compressive Strength (28 Days): 4000 psi for vehicular pavement, 3000 psi for all others.
 2. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio: 0.45.
 3. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio: 0.50.
 4. Slump Limit: 4 inches.
- D. Cementitious Materials: Limit percentage, by weight, of cementitious materials other than portland cement in concrete as follows:
1. Fly Ash: 25 percent.
 2. Combined Fly Ash and Pozzolan: 25 percent.
 3. Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: 50 percent.

4. Combined Fly Ash or Pozzolan, and Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slage: 50 percent portland cement minimum, with fly ash or pozzolan not exceeding 25 percent.
- E. Add air-entraining admixture at manufacturer's prescribed rate to result in concrete at point of placement having an air content of 2.5 to 4.5 percent.
 1. Air Content: 6.0 percent for $\frac{3}{4}$ inch maximum aggregate.
- F. Synthetic Fiber: Uniformly disperse in concrete mix at manufacturer's recommended rate, but not less than 1.0 lb/cu. yd.

2.09 CONCRETE MIXING

- A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Comply with requirements and with ASTM C 94 and ASTM C 1116.
 1. When air temperature is between 85 deg F and 90 deg F reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes; when air temperature is above 90 deg F reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 PREPARATION

- A. Proof-roll prepared subgrade surface to check for unstable areas and verify need for additional compaction. Proceed with pavement only after nonconforming conditions have been corrected and subgrade is ready to receive pavement.
- B. Remove loose material from compacted subgrade surface immediately before placing concrete.

3.02 EDGE FORMS AND SCREED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Set, brace, and secure edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed guides for pavement to required lines, grades, and elevations. Install forms to allow continuous progress of work and so forms can remain in place at least 24 hours after concrete placement.
- B. Clean forms after each use and coat with form release agent to ensure separation from concrete without damage.

3.03 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. General: Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for fabricating reinforcement and with recommendations in CRSI's "Placing Reinforcing Bars" for placing and supporting reinforcement.
 - 1. Apply epoxy repair coating to uncoated or damaged surfaces of epoxy-coated reinforcement.
- B. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, or other bond-reducing materials.
- C. Arrange, space, and securely tie bars and bar supports to hold reinforcement in position during concrete placement. Maintain minimum cover to reinforcement.
- D. Install welded wire fabric in lengths as long as practicable. Lap adjoining pieces at least one full mesh, and lace splices with wire. Offset laps of adjoining widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction.

3.04 JOINTS

- A. General: Construct construction, isolation, and contraction joints and tool edgings true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete. Construct transverse joints at right angles to centerline, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. When joining existing pavement, place transverse joints to align with previously placed joints, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Construction Joints: Set construction joints at side and end terminations of pavement and at locations where pavement operations are stopped for more than one-half hour, unless pavement terminates at isolation joints.
 - 1. Provide preformed galvanized steel or plastic keyway-section forms or bulkhead forms with keys, unless otherwise indicated. Embed keys at least 1-1/2 inches into concrete.
 - 2. Continue reinforcement across construction joints, unless otherwise indicated. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of pavement strips, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Use epoxy bonding adhesive at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
- C. Isolation Joints: Form isolation joints of preformed joint-filler strips abutting building, concrete curbs, catch basins, manholes, inlets, structures, walks, other fixed objects, and where indicated.

1. Locate expansion joints at intervals of 50 feet, unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Extend joint fillers full width and depth of joint.
 3. Terminate joint filler less than ½ inch or more than 1 inch below finished surface if joint sealant is indicated.
 4. Place top of joint filler flush with finished concrete surface if joint sealant is not indicated.
 5. Furnish joint fillers in one-piece lengths. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip joint-filler sections together.
 6. Protect top edge of joint filler during concrete placement with metal, plastic, or other temporary preformed cap. Remove protective cap after concrete has been placed on both sides of joint.
- D. Contraction Joints: Form weakened-plane contraction joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct contraction joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of the concrete thickness, as follows:
1. Grooved Joints: Form contraction joints after initial floating by grooving and finishing each edge of joint with groover tool to the following radius. Repeat grooving of contraction joints after applying surface finishes. Eliminate groover marks on concrete surfaces.
 - a. Radius: ¼ inch.
 2. Sawed Joints: Form contraction joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut 1/8-inch wide joints into concrete when cutting action will not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before developing random contraction cracks.
- E. Edging: Tool edges of pavement, gutters, curbs, and joints in concrete after initial floating with an edging tool to the following radius. Repeat tooling of edges after applying surface finishes. Eliminate tool marks on concrete surfaces.
1. Radius: ¼ inch.

3.05 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Inspection: Before placing concrete, inspect and complete formwork installation, reinforcement steel, and items to be embedded or cast in. Notify other trades to permit installation of their work.

- B. Remove snow, ice, or frost from subgrade surface and reinforcement before placing concrete. Do not place concrete on frozen surfaces.
- C. Moisten subgrade to provide a uniform dampened condition at the time concrete is placed. Do not place concrete around manholes or other structures until they are at the required finish elevation and alignment.
- D. Comply with requirements and with recommendations in ACI 304R for measuring, mixing, transporting, and placing concrete.
- E. Do not add water to concrete during delivery, at Project site, or during placement.
- F. Deposit and spread concrete in a continuous operation between transverse joints. Do not push or drag concrete into place or use vibrators to move concrete into place.
- G. Consolidate concrete by mechanical vibrating equipment supplemented by hand-spading, rodding, or tamping. Use equipment and procedures to consolidate concrete according to recommendations in ACI 309R.
 - 1. Consolidate concrete along face of forms and adjacent to transverse joints with an internal vibrator. Keep vibrator away from joint assemblies, reinforcement, or side forms. Use only square-faced shovels for hand-spreading and consolidation. Consolidate with care to prevent dislocating reinforcement, dowels, and joint devices.
- H. Place concrete in two operations; strike off initial pour for entire width of placement and to the required depth below finish surface. Lay welded wire fabric or fabricated bar mats immediately in final position. Place top layer of concrete, strike off, and screed.
 - 1. Remove and replace portions of bottom layer of concrete that have been placed more than 15 minutes without being covered by top layer, or use bonding agent if approved by the Government.
- I. Screed pavement surfaces with a straightedge and strike off. Commence initial floating using bull floats or darbies to form an open textured and uniform surface plane before excess moisture or bleed water appears on the surface. Do not further disturb concrete surfaces before beginning finishing operations.
- J. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 306.1 and as follows. Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing actions, or low temperatures.

1. When air temperature has fallen to or is expected to fall below 40 deg F, uniformly heat water and aggregates before mixing to obtain a concrete mixture temperature of not less than 50 deg F and not more than 80 deg F point of placement.
 2. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow.
 3. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators, unless otherwise specified and approved in mix designs.
- K. Hot-Weather Placement: Place concrete according to recommendations in ACI 305R and as follows when hot-weather conditions exist:
1. Cool ingredients before mixing to maintain concrete temperature at time of placement below 90 deg F. Chilled mixing water or chopped ice may be used to control temperature, provided water equivalent of ice is calculated to total amount of mixing water. Using liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.
 2. Fog-spray forms, reinforcement steel, and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade moisture uniform without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.

3.06 CONCRETE FINISHING

- A. General: Wetting of concrete surfaces during screeding, initial floating, or finishing operations is prohibited.
- B. Float Finish: Begin the second floating operation when bleed-water sheen has disappeared and the concrete surface has stiffened sufficiently to permit operations. Float surface with power-driven floats, or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power units. Finish surfaces to true planes. Cut down high spots, and fill low spots. Refloat surface immediately to uniform granular texture.
1. Medium-to-Fine- Textured Broom Finish: Draw a soft bristle broom across float-finished concrete surface perpendicular to line of traffic to provide a uniform, fine-line texture.

3.07 CONCRETE PROTECTION AND CURING

- A. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection and follow recommendations in ACI 305R for hot-weather protection during curing.
- B. Begin curing after finishing concrete, but not before free water has disappeared from concrete surface.
- C. Curing Methods: Cure concrete by moisture curing, moisture-retaining-cover curing, curing compound, or a combination of these as follows:

1. Moisture Curing: Keep surfaces continuously moist for not less than seven days with the following materials:
 - a. Water.
 - b. Continuous water-fog spray.
 - c. Absorptive cover, water saturated, and kept continuously wet. Cover concrete surfaces and edges with 12-inch lap over adjacent absorptive covers.
2. Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period using cover material and waterproof tape.
3. Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.

3.08 PAVEMENT TOLERANCES

- A. Comply with tolerances of ACI 117 and as follows:
 1. Elevation: $\frac{1}{4}$ inch.
 2. Thickness: Plus $\frac{3}{8}$ inch, minus $\frac{1}{4}$ inch.
 3. Surface: Gap below 10-foot- long, unleveled straightedge not to exceed $\frac{1}{4}$ inch.
 4. Joint Spacing: 3 inches.
 5. Contraction Joint Depth: Plus $\frac{1}{4}$ inch, no minus.
 6. Joint Width: Plus $\frac{1}{8}$ inch, no minus.

3.09 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: The Contractor will engage a qualified testing and inspection agency to sample materials, perform tests, and submit test reports during concrete placement. Sampling and testing for quality control may include those specified in this Article.
- B. Testing Services: Testing shall be performed according to the following requirements:

1. Sampling Fresh Concrete: Representative samples of fresh concrete shall be obtained according to ASTM C 172, except modified for slump to comply with ASTM C 94.
2. Slump: ASTM C 143; one test at point of placement for each compressive-strength test, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each type of concrete. Additional tests will be required when concrete consistency changes.
3. Air Content: ASTM C 231, pressure method; one test for each compressive-strength test, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each type of air-entrained concrete.
4. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C 1064; one test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F and below and when 80 deg F and above, and one test for each set of compressive-strength specimens.
5. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C 31/C 31M; one set of four standard cylinders for each compressive-strength test, unless otherwise indicated. Cylinders shall be molded and stored for laboratory-cured test specimens unless field-cured test specimens are required.
6. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C 39; one set for each day's pour of each concrete class exceeding 5 cu. yd., but not less than 25 cu. yd., plus one set for each additional 50 cu. yd. One specimen shall be tested at 7 days and two specimens at 28 days; one specimen shall be retained in reserve for later testing if required.
7. When frequency of testing will provide fewer than five compressive-strength tests for a given class of concrete, testing shall be conducted from at least five randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five are used.
8. When total quantity of a given class of concrete is less than 50 cu. yd., the Government may waive compressive-strength testing if adequate evidence of satisfactory strength is provided.
9. When strength of field-cured cylinders is less than 85 percent of companion laboratory-cured cylinders, current operations shall be evaluated and corrective procedures shall be provided for protecting and curing in-place concrete.
10. Strength level of concrete will be considered satisfactory if averages of sets of three consecutive compressive-strength test results equal or exceed specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi.

- C. Test results shall be reported in writing to the Government, concrete manufacturer, and Contractor within 24 hours of testing. Reports of compressive-strength tests shall contain Project identification name and number, date of concrete placement, name of concrete testing agency, concrete type and class, location of concrete batch in pavement, design compressive strength at 28 days, concrete mix proportions and materials, compressive breaking strength, and type of break for both 7- and 28-day tests.
- D. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may be permitted by the Government but will not be used as the sole basis for approval or rejection.
- E. Additional Tests: Testing agency shall make additional tests of the concrete when test results indicated slump, air entrainment, concrete strengths, or other requirements have not been met, as directed by the Government. Testing agency may conduct tests to determine adequacy of concrete by cored cylinders complying with ASTM C 42, or by other methods as directed.

3.10 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove and replace concrete pavement that is broken, damaged, or defective, or does not meet requirements in this Section.
- B. Drill test cores where directed by the Government when necessary to determine magnitude of cracks or defective areas. Fill drilled core holes in satisfactory pavement areas with portland cement concrete bonded to pavement with epoxy adhesive.
- C. Protect concrete from damage. Exclude traffic from pavement for at least 14 days after placement. When construction traffic is permitted, maintain pavement as clean as possible by removing surface stains and spillage of materials as they occur.
- D. Maintain concrete pavement free of stains, discoloration, dirt, and other foreign material. Sweep concrete pavement not more than two days before date scheduled for Beneficial Occupancy inspections.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 321720 - PAVEMENT JOINT SEALANTS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including requirements of the Government's Solicitation and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Expansion and contraction joints within portland cement concrete pavement.
 - 2. Joints between portland cement concrete and asphalt pavement.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 32 Section "Cement Concrete Pavement" for constructing joints in concrete paving.
 - 2. Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants" for sealing nontraffic and traffic joints in locations not specified in this Section.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of joint sealants certifying that products furnished comply with requirements and are suitable for the use indicated.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who has specialized in installing joint sealants similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project and whose work has resulted in joint-sealant installations with a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of joint sealant through one source from a single manufacturer.

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials to Project site in original unopened containers or bundles with labels indicating manufacturer, product name and designation, color, expiration date, pot life, curing time, and mixing instructions for multi-component materials.

- B. Store and handle materials to comply with manufacturer's written instructions to prevent their deterioration or damage due to moisture, high or low temperatures, contaminants, or other causes.

1.06 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under the following conditions:
 - 1. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint sealant manufacturer.
 - 2. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F (4.4 deg C).
 - 3. When joint substrates are wet.
- B. Joint-Width Conditions: Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants where joint widths are less than that allowed by joint sealant manufacturer for application indicated.
- C. Joint-Substrate Conditions: Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants until contaminants capable of interfering with their adhesion are removed from joint substrates.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS, GENERAL

- A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backing materials, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by joint sealant manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
- B. Colors of Exposed Joint Sealants: As selected by the Government from manufacturer's full range for this characteristic.

2.02 JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Single-Component, self leveling, silicone material that cures to an ultra-low modulus silicone rubber upon exposure to atmospheric moisture:
- B. Approvals:
 - 1. ASTM D5893 Type SL
 - 2. FAA P-605

3. SS-S-200E Flame Test Requirements
4. EN 14187-5 Hydrolysis Test
5. EN 14188-2 Class B, C, & D

C. Product Technical Data:

1. Passes ASTM C 639, Flow
2. Extrusion Rate, Minimum: 231 mL/min per ASTM C 1183
3. Passes ASTM C679, Tack Free Time
4. 0.97% loss per ASTM C 792, Heat Aging
5. ASTM C 661, Durometer Shore 00: 41
6. Passes ASTM D 1475
7. 1400% Elongation per ASTM D412
8. 9 psi Tensile Stress @150% per ASTM D 412
9. Passes ASTM C 793, Effects of Accelerate Weathering
10. 77% Resilience per ASTM C 793
11. No Failure, ASTM C 719, Joint Movement Capability, +100/-50 percent ,10 cycles.

2.03 JOINT-SEALANT BACKER MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide joint-sealant backer materials that are nonstaining; are compatible with joint substrates, sealants, primers, and other joint fillers; and are approved for applications indicated by joint sealant manufacturer based on field experience and laboratory testing.
- B. Round Backer Rod for Cold- and Hot-Applied Sealants: ASTM D 5249, Type 1, of diameter and density required to control sealant depths and prevent bottom-side adhesion of sealant.

2.04 PRIMERS

- A. Primers: Product recommended by joint sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates indicated, as determined from preconstruction joint- sealant-substrate tests and field tests.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine joints indicated to receive joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting joint-sealant performance.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing joint sealants to comply with joint sealant manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where indicated or where recommended in writing by joint sealant manufacturer, based on preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests or prior experience. Apply primer to comply with joint sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.

3.03 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS

- A. General: Comply with joint sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions applicable to products and applications indicated, unless more stringent requirements apply.
- B. Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations of ASTM C 1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.
- C. Install backer materials of type indicated to support sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
 - 1. Do not leave gaps between ends of backer materials.
 - 2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear backer materials.
 - 3. Remove absorbent backer materials that have become wet before sealant application and replace them with dry materials.
- D. Install sealants by proven techniques to comply with the following and at the same time backings are installed:
 - 1. Place sealants so they directly contact and fully wet joint substrates.
 - 2. Completely fill recesses provided for each joint configuration.

3. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
- E. Provide joint configuration to comply with joint sealant manufacturer's written instructions, unless otherwise indicated.

3.04 CLEANING

- A. Clean off excess sealants or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved by manufacturers of joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.

3.05 PROTECTION

- A. Protect joint sealants during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Beneficial Occupancy. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately so installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from the original work.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 321900 - SIDEWALKS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including requirements of the Government's solicitation and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section. Complete compliance with all provisions contained therein which affect work or requirements of this Section is mandatory.

1.02 SCOPE

- A. This division includes all concrete sidewalks and related items required to complete the work shown on the drawings and as specified.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS

- A. Materials shall conform to 32 1314 - Cement Concrete Paving

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 STORAGE OF MATERIALS

- A. Cement and aggregate shall be sorted in such a manner as to prevent deterioration or intrusion of foreign matter. Any material which has deteriorated or has been damaged shall not be used for concrete.

3.02 SUBGRADE

- A. The subgrade shall be constructed or excavated to the required depth below the finished surface as shown on the drawings.
- B. Soft or other unsuitable material, shall be removed and replaced with suitable material, and the subgrade shall be compacted to a density of 95% for the top six (6) inches of subgrade.
- C. Fills in subgrade shall be made in layers not to exceed four (4) inches in thickness and finished to a firm, smooth surface.

3.03 FORMS

- A. Forms shall be of wood or metal, straight and free from warp and of sufficient strength, when staked, to hold the concrete true to line and grade without springing or distorting. Wood forms shall be of at least 2 inches in thickness for straight sections, 1 inch radii of curves, and shall be selected plank surfaced on all sides. Metal forms shall be of approved section and shall have a flat surface on top.
- B. The depth of forms shall be 4 inches unless shown otherwise on the drawings. Forms shall be securely fastened and shall be staked, braced and held together to exact line and grade established. Forms shall be sufficiently tight to prevent the leakage of mortar. Forms shall be cleaned and oiled immediately before concrete is placed.

3.04 JOINTS

- A. Sidewalks shall be cut into separate square or rectangular slabs not to exceed 36 square feet in area, by grooves or division plates. Grooves shall be cut with an approved grooving tool and shall be not less than 1-1/2 inches in depth. Division plates shall be 1/8 inch in thickness and shall extend the full depth of the sidewalk slab. Grooves or division plates shall be perpendicular to the edges of the sidewalk.
- B. Expansion shall be joints filled with pre-moulded expansion joint filler not more than 35 feet apart, at junctions with other sidewalks, and at points where sidewalks intersect curb lines. Pre-moulded expansion joint filler shall be 3/8 inch in thickness. Pre-moulded expansion joint filler shall extend entirely through the expansion joint and shall conform to the cross section of the sidewalk.

3.05 PLACING CONCRETE

- A. Subgrade and forms shall be checked and approved just prior to the placing of concrete. All debris or other foreign material shall be removed from the space to be occupied by the concrete. The subgrade shall be moist but not wet or muddy.
- B. Concrete shall be placed in the forms and shall be tamped, spaded or vibrated sufficiently to produce a dense homogeneous mass and to bring the mortar to the surface. Particular attention shall be given to spading concrete along and against the surface of the forms to prevent honeycombing and to secure a smooth and uniform surface.

3.06 FINISHING

- A. After pouring, the concrete shall be struck off with an approved straight edge resting on the side forms and drawn forward with a sawing motion.

- B. Concrete shall then be floated with a wooden or metal float until the surface is true.
The surface of the sidewalk shall be checked with a 10 foot straight edge and irregularities more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet shall be corrected. Plastering with mortar to build up or finish will not be permitted.
- C. Edges at joints and sides shall be rounded with 1/4 inch radius edger.
- D. Final finish shall be a wood or carpet float finish.

3.07 CURING AND PROTECTION

- A. After the finishing operation is completed the concrete shall be covered with burlap or straw and kept continuously moist for a period of not less than 5 days.
- B. Sidewalks shall be protected from the elements and damage from other causes until the acceptance of the work.

3.08 BACKFILLING

- A. After the removal of the forms and sufficient setting of the concrete spaces along edges of sidewalk shall be backfilled to the required elevation with suitable material. Backfill shall be placed in layers of not more than 4 inches and shall be tamped until firm and solid.

3.09 CLEANING UP

- A. Upon completion of the work remove all forms, unused materials, excess backfill and put the premises in a neat and clean condition.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 323136 - SECURITY BOLLARDS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Security barriers.
- B. Materials included in this
 - 1. 2-6.1.1 - Recycled Content
 - 2. The contractor is expected to understand the LEED requirements for these sections and include all applicable overhead in their base bid for the necessary documentation to achieve the above listed credits.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 01 3514.01 - LEED-NC Credit Summary
- B. Section 321313 - Concrete Paving: Installation of adjacent paved surfaces.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM F2656/F2656M - Standard Test Method for Crash Testing of Vehicle Security Barriers 2020.

1.04 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination: Coordinate installation of units with size, location and installation of service utilities.
- B. Preinstallation Meeting: Conduct a preinstallation meeting one week prior to the start of work of this section; require attendance by affected installers.

1.05 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 3001 - Submittals, for submittal procedures.
- B. Shop Drawings: Provide detailed drawings showing:
 - 1. Barrier height, embedment, anchorage, and manufacturer's standard installation details.
- C. Sustainability Submittals, Product data for LEED Compliance:
 - 1. For products having recycled content, provide documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and pre-consumer recycled content.

- a. Include statement indicating costs (sell price for each product having recycled content)
- b. Include the total weight of products provided

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials in a manner to ensure proper ventilation and drainage. Protect against damage, weather, vandalism and theft.

1.07 SUSTAINABILITY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Contractor shall endeavor to provide steel materials with the highest percentages of pre and post-consumer recycled content readily available from manufacturer(s) who comply with this specification.
 1. Minimum recycled Content = 30%
- B. Compliance with LEED MR Credit 5 is now required for products specified in this section. However, the Contractor shall give preference to manufacturer's who fabricate and manufacturer products within 500 miles of the project site, if available.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 NON-AUTOMATED BARRIERS

- A. Horizontal Swing Gates: Manually operated, structural steel crash barrier swing gate; gate arm rotating in direction of travel; supported by high impact end posts; closed position secured by hydraulic pin.
 1. Crash Test Rating: M30, based on ASTM F2656/F2656M.
 2. Height: 30 inches (0.76 m).
 3. Width: As required for openings indicated on the drawings. Gate to be continuous across roadways and terminate on the back side of concrete curb and gutter, typical.
 4. Finish: Standard black powder coat finish.
- B. Recycled Content: For Steel Products: Minimum Total Recovered Materials Content - 30%

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Verification of Conditions:

1. Verify location of existing utilities, grades and conditions of substrate.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Protect existing work from damage due to installation of this work.**

3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and as required to achieve specified rated.**

3.04 CLEANING

- A. Touch up scratched surfaces using materials recommended by manufacturer. Match touchup paint color with barrier finish.**

3.05 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed units from subsequent construction operations.**

3.06 CLEANING

- A. Touch up scratched surfaces using materials recommended by manufacturer. Match touchup paint color with barrier finish.**

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 329219 - SEEDING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Preparation of subsoil.
- B. Placing topsoil.
- C. Seeding, mulching and fertilizer.
- D. Maintenance.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 31 2210 - Earthwork

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. Weeds: Include Dandelion, Jimsonweed, Quackgrass, Horsetail, Morning Glory, Rush Grass, Mustard, Lambsquarter, Chickweed, Cress, Crabgrass, Canadian Thistle, Nutgrass, Poison Oak, Blackberry, Tansy Ragwort, Bermuda Grass, Johnson Grass, Poison Ivy, Nut Sedge, Nimble Will, Bindweed, Bent Grass, Wild Garlic, Perennial Sorrel, and Brome Grass.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 3001 - Submittals, for submittal procedures.
- B. Maintenance Data: Include maintenance instructions, cutting method and maximum grass height; types, application frequency, and recommended coverage of fertilizer
- C. Maintenance Contract.

1.05 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with regulatory agencies for fertilizer and herbicide composition.
- B. Provide certificate of compliance from authority having jurisdiction indicating approval of seed mixture.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver grass seed mixture in sealed containers. Seed in damaged packaging is not acceptable. Deliver seed mixture in containers showing percentage of seed mix, year of production, net weight, date of packaging, and location of packaging.

- B. Deliver fertilizer in waterproof bags showing weight, chemical analysis, and name of manufacturer.

1.07 SUSTAINABILITY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Contractor shall endeavor to provide materials with a high Biobased content where possible.
 - 1. See Part 2 of this specification section for specific biobased content thresholds, if applicable.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 SEED MIXTURE

- A. Seed Mixture:
 - 1. Emerald Zoysia
 - a. 0% noxious weeds
 - b. 0.5% weed maximum
 - c. Less than 2% filler, dirt, or chaff

2.02 SOIL MATERIALS

- A. Topsoil: In accordance with applicable retirements of Division 31 specifications.

2.03 ACCESSORIES

- A. Mulching Material: Oat or wheat straw, free from weeds, foreign matter detrimental to plant life, and dry. Hay or chopped cornstalks are not acceptable.
 - 1. Mulching materials shall meet the requirements of the USDA BioPreferred Program
- B. Fertilizer: recommended for grass, with fifty percent of the elements derived from organic sources; of proportion necessary to eliminate any deficiencies of topsoil, as indicated by analysis.
- C. Water: Clean, fresh and free of substances or matter that could inhibit vigorous growth of grass.
- D. Erosion Fabric: Jute matting, open weave.
- E. Edging: Galvanized steel.

- F. Mulching materials and erosion control fabric shall meet the requirements of the USDA BioPreferred Program

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that prepared soil base is ready to receive the work of this Section.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare subgrade in accordance with Section 312200.
- B. Place topsoil in accordance with Section 312200.
- C. Install edging at periphery of seeded areas in straight lines to consistent depth.

3.03 FERTILIZING

- A. Apply fertilizer in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Apply after smooth raking of topsoil and prior to roller compaction.
- C. Do not apply fertilizer at same time or with same machine as will be used to apply seed.
- D. Mix thoroughly into upper 2 inches (50 mm) of topsoil.
- E. Lightly water to aid the dissipation of fertilizer.

3.04 SEEDING

- A. Apply seed at a rate of 3 lbs per 1000 sq ft evenly in two intersecting directions. Rake in lightly.
- B. Do not seed areas in excess of that which can be mulched on same day.
- C. Do not sow immediately following rain, when ground is too dry, or during windy periods.
- D. Roll seeded area with roller not exceeding 112 lbs (50 Kg).
- E. Immediately following seeding and compacting, apply mulch to a thickness of 1/8 inches (3 mm). Maintain clear of shrubs and trees.
- F. Apply water with a fine spray immediately after each area has been mulched. Saturate to 4 inches (100 mm) of soil.

- G. Following germination, immediately re-seed areas without germinated seeds that are larger than 4 by 4 inches (100 by 100 mm).

3.05 PROTECTION

- A. Identify seeded areas with stakes and string around area periphery.
- B. Cover seeded slopes where grade is 4 inches per foot (102 mm per m) or greater with erosion fabric. Roll fabric onto slopes without stretching or pulling.
- C. Lay fabric smoothly on surface, bury top end of each section in 6 inch (150 mm) deep excavated topsoil trench. Provide 12 inch (300 mm) overlap of adjacent rolls. Backfill trench and rake smooth, level with adjacent soil.
- D. Secure outside edges and overlaps at 36 inch (900 mm) intervals with stakes.
- E. Lightly dress slopes with topsoil to ensure close contact between fabric and soil.
- F. At sides of ditches, lay fabric laps in direction of water flow. Lap ends and edges minimum 6 inches (150 mm).

3.06 MAINTENANCE

- A. Provide maintenance at no extra cost to the Government; the Government will pay for water.
- B. Maintain seeded areas immediately after placement until grass is well established and exhibits a vigorous growing condition.
- C. Mow grass at regular intervals to maintain at a maximum height of 2-1/2 inches (65 mm). Do not cut more than 1/3 of grass blade at any one mowing.
- D. Immediately remove clippings after mowing and trimming.
- E. Water to prevent grass and soil from drying out.
- F. Roll surface to remove minor depressions or irregularities.
- G. Control growth of weeds. Apply herbicides in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Remedy damage resulting from improper use of herbicides.
- H. Immediately reseed areas that show bare spots.
- I. Protect seeded areas with warning signs during maintenance period.
- J. See Section 01 7000 - Execution Requirements, for additional requirements relating to maintenance service.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 331117 - OUTSIDE WATER SYSTEM

GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS:

- A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including requirements of the Government's Solicitation and Division 01 Specification sections, apply to work of this section.

1.02 DESCRIPTION OF WORK:

- A. Extent of water systems work is indicated on drawings and schedules, and by requirements of this section.
- B. Refer to Division-31 section "Earthwork" for excavation and backfill required for water systems; not work of this section.
- C. Refer to Division-22 section "Plumbing" for interior building systems including interior piping, fixtures, and equipment; not work of this section.

1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE:

- A. Manufacturer's Qualifications: Firms regularly engaged in manufacturing of water systems materials and products, of types and sizes required, whose products have been in satisfactory use in similar service for not less than 5 years.
- B. Installer's Qualifications: Firm with at least 3 years of successful installation experience on projects with water piping work similar to that required for project.

1.04 CODES AND STANDARDS:

- A. Plumbing Code Compliance: Comply with applicable portions of National Standard Plumbing Code pertaining to selection and installation of water system materials and products.
- B. Water Purveyor Compliance: Comply with requirements of the Montgomery Water Works and Sanitary Sewer Board. Obtain required permits and inspections.

1.05 SUBMITTALS:

- A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's technical product data and installation instructions for water system materials and products.
- B. Record Drawings: At project closeout, submit record drawings of installed water system piping and products, in accordance with requirements of Division 1.

1.06 PROJECT CONDITIONS:

- A. Site Information: Perform site survey, research public utility records, and verify existing utility locations.
- B. Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by the Government or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility services according to requirements indicated.
- C. Notify the Government not less than two days in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
- D. Do not proceed with utility interruptions without the Government's written permission.

1.07 SUSTAINABILITY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Contractor shall endeavor to provide materials with a high recycled content:

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PIPES AND PIPE FITTINGS:

- A. General: Provide piping materials and factory-fabricated piping products of sizes, types, pressure ratings, temperature ratings, and capacities as indicated. Where not indicated, provide proper selection as determined by Installer to comply with installation requirements. Provide sizes and types matching piping and equipment connections
- B. Piping: Provide pipe of the following material, of weight/class indicated. Provide pipe fittings and accessories of same material and weight/class as pipes, with joining method as indicated.
- C. Pipe and Fittings:
 - 1. Ductile-Iron, Mechanical-Joint Pipe: AWWA C151, with cement-mortar lining and seal coat according to AWWA C104. Include gland, rubber gasket, and bolts and nuts and according to AWWA C1111. Fittings shall be in accordance with AWWA C110 or AWWA C153.
 - 2. Ductile-Iron, Push-on-Joint Pipe: AWWA C151, with cement-mortar lining and seal coat according to AWWA C104. Include rubber compression gasket according to AWWA C1111.
 - 3. AWWA C900: Standard for Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Pressure Pipe and Fabricated Fittings, 4 inch through 12 inch (100 mm - 300 mm) for water distribution.

- a. Joints: Pipes shall incorporate a formed bell complete with a single rubber gasket conforming to ASTM F 477. Joints shall be designed to meet the zero leakage test requirements of ASTM D 3139
4. Copper Tubing: ASTM B88, seamless water tube, Annealed temper, Type K with soldered joints.
5. PVC Plastic Pipe: ASTM D1785, with marking "NSF-PW" according to NSF 14.

2.02 FIRE HYDRANTS:

- A. Comply with AWWA Specification C-502 and shall meet local Fire Department standards and requirements. Hydrants shall have one pumper and two hose nozzles, a valve opening not less than 5 inches, and a 6-inch inlet connection. All fire hydrants shall be valved. All piping and fittings in fire hydrant installation shall be ductile iron. Paint fire hydrant in accordance with local Fire Department requirements.

2.03 GATE VALVES:

- A. Iron body bronze mounted double-disc non-rising stem type meeting AWWA Specification C500, with water working pressure of 150 pounds. Furnish with hand-wheels and flanged joints for use in pits and cast iron valve boxes and covers where valves occur underground.

2.04 VALVE AND METER PITS:

- A. Construct as detailed, with 3000 psi concrete meeting requirements of Division 3, and masonry meeting requirements of Division 4. Cover shall be as specified on the drawings.

2.05 VALVE BOXES:

- A. Cast-iron box with top section and cover with lettering "WATER," bottom section with base of size to fit over valve and barrel approximately 5 inches in diameter, and adjustable cast-iron extension of length required for depth of bury of valve.

2.06 TAPPING SLEEVE AND TAPPING VALVE:

- A. Complete assembly, including tapping sleeve, tapping valve, and bolts and nuts. Use sleeve and valve compatible with tapping machine.
 1. Tapping Sleeve: Cast- or ductile-iron, 2-piece bolted sleeve flanged outlet for new branch connection. Sleeve may have mechanical-joint ends with rubber gaskets or sealing rings in sleeve body. Include sleeve matching size and type of pipe material being tapped and of outlet flange required for branch connection.

2.07 CHECK VALVES:

- A. AWWA C508, with 175-psig working-pressure rating. Include interior coating according to AWWA C550.

2.08 CONCRETE:

- A. All concrete including but not limited to thrust blocking, dead men, etc. shall have a 28 day compression strength of not less than 3000 pounds per square inch.

2.09 GRAVEL:

- A. Gravel for drainage shall be washed 3/4 inch crushed rock or graded river gravel and shall be free of organic matter, sand, loam, clay and other particles that will tend to restrict water flow through the gravel.

2.10 PIPE SLEEVES:

- A. Provide cast-iron or zinc coated sleeves built in place where water lines pass through walls. Properly secure in place, with approximately 1/4-inch space between pipe and enclosing sleeve, before concrete is poured. Caulk annular opening between pipe and sleeves, and seal with asphaltic compound consisting of bituminous materials mixed with mineral matter. Install piping so that no joint occurs within a sleeve.
- B. Exterior Protection of Ductile Iron Pipe: Complete encase buried ductile iron pipelines with polyethylene tube or sheet, using polyethylene film as recommended by the pipe manufacturer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION:

3.01 INSTALLATION OF PIPE AND PIPE FITTINGS:

- A. During installation of water lines the Contractor will be required to conduct his operations in a safety conscious manner. The Contractor shall comply with all applicable safety requirements in the location of the construction area. The Contractor alone shall be responsible for the safety, efficiency, and adequacy of his plant, appliances, and methods, and for any damage which may result from their failure or their improper construction, maintenance, or operation.

3.02 SUPERVISION OF WORK:

- A. All work in progress shall receive the personal attention either of the Contractor or of a competent and reliable superintendent who shall have a full or final authority to act for him.

3.03 AUTHORITY AND DUTIES OF INSPECTOR:

- A. The Governing Authority Inspector shall be authorized to inspect all work done and all material furnished, including preparation, fabrication and manufacture of the materials to be used. The Inspector shall not be authorized to alter or waive any requirements of the specifications without consent of the Government. He shall call the attention of the Contractor to any failure of the work or materials to conform to the specifications. He may reject material or suspend the work until any questions at issue can be referred to and decided by the proper authority. The presence of the Inspector shall in no wise lessen the responsibility of the Contractor.

3.04 TRENCHES:

- A. Water mains shall have at least 30 inches and not more than 48 inches of cover over the top of the pipe. Trenches shall be widened and deepened at all points where joints occur to such extent as to facilitate the proper making, tightening, and inspection of joints. The bottom of the trench shall be so shaped that except at "bell holes" the pipe, where laid, shall have a substantially uniform bearing throughout its length.

- B. The maximum width of trench ditches shall be as follows:

<u>Main Size</u>	<u>Width</u>
Laterals	As small width as possible
4"	18"
6"	24"
8"	30"

- C. If an unstable trench bottom is encountered, the trench shall be undercut 4 to 6 inches and a suitable select granular material used to stabilize the trench bottom.
- D. The trenching and pipe laying shall be done in an orderly fashion and in a workman like manner. Excessive water shall be pumped from the trench before the pipe is laid. Back of curb, intersections, and locations where the gate valves will be set, shall be staked before the main is laid.
- E. Pipe shall be handled in such a manner as to protect the lining and the pipe from being damaged. It should NOT be dropped while unloading or while being installed in the trench. The Inspector has the right to reject any damaged material.
- F. The pipe shall be kept clean of dirt, clods, and debris, etc., while being installed. It shall be properly plugged off at the end of the working day or when work is suspended to prevent the entrances of foreign materials (i.e., storm water, dirt, animal, etc.).

- G. Pipe shall be laid true to line and grade except that it may be deflected within the limits of the manufacturer's recommendations for making necessary changes in direction.
- H. Water mains when laid shall have a minimum vertical clearance of 12 inches from other mains, laterals, pipes or other obstructions.

3.05 VALVES:

- A. Valves shall be set level on compacted earth and mechanical joints made according to the manufacturer's recommendations.
- B. Valve boxes shall be set to be flush with the finish grade of a street or road.

3.06 CONCRETE THRUST BLOCK (DEAD MAN):

- A. A dead man shall be used for rodding on valves and fittings, etc., when other regular means of retention will not work or will be impractical.

3.07 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL:

- A. Before being pressure tested, all lines shall be thoroughly flushed to remove all debris, etc., that may be in the new main.
- B. Lines shall be flushed to achieve a velocity of 2 feet per second.
- C. All valves not required to be closed for isolation of the new line to be tested shall be open during the testing.
- D. After backfilling, all pipes shall be subjected to a hydrostatic test pressure of not less than 150 pounds per square inch by a pressure gauge.
- E. All visible leaks, when pressure is applied, shall be repaired and any pipe valve or fittings which when under the pressure test are found defective shall be replaced.
- F. The section of pipe tested shall be held at 150 psi for a minimum of 2 hours.
- G. Leakage of water shall not be greater than 25 gallons per 24 hours per inch of diameter per mile of pipe.
- H. The contractor shall provide all water, labor and material necessary for conducting the pressure test.
- I. Upon successful passing of the pressure test, the lines shall be chlorinated as directed by the Montgomery Water Works and Sanitary Sewer Board requirements. In the absence of prevailing code follow AWWA C651. The contractor will be responsible for the cost of chlorination and water used during construction and testing.

**A New Security & Services Training Facility
117th Air Refueling Wing, Birmingham, AL**

BRKR009063/12072

**100% Submittal
March 2022**

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 333112 - SANITARY SEWERAGE

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including requirements of the Government's Solicitation and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Materials included in this section shall meet the requirements for LEED for New Construction points for the following Sections:
 - 1. MR Credit 4 - Recycled Content
 - 2. MR Credit 5 - Regional Materials
 - 3. The contractor is expected to understand the LEED requirements for these sections and include all applicable overhead in their base bid for the necessary documentation to achieve the above listed credits.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes sanitary sewerage outside the building.

1.03 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Gravity-Flow, Non-pressure-Piping Pressure Ratings: At least equal to system test pressure.

1.04 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect pipe, pipe fittings, and seals from dirt and damage.

1.05 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Site Information: Verify existing utility locations.
- B. Locate existing structures and piping to be closed and abandoned.
- C. Comply with requirements of the Montgomery Water Works and Sanitary Sewer Board; obtain required permits and inspections. Pipe materials specified shall comply with the above agency. Should there be no material requirements from that agency, the general contractor may use any of the materials specified herein.

1.06 SUBMITTALS:

- A. Project Data: Submit manufacturer's technical product data and installation instructions for proposed materials and products.

- B. Record Drawings: At project closeout, submit record drawings of installed systems piping and products, in accordance with requirements of Division 01.
- C. Sustainability Submittals, Product data for LEED Compliance:
 - 1. For products having recycled content, provide documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and pre-consumer recycled content.
 - a. Include statement indicating costs (sell price for each product having recycled content)
 - b. Include the total weight of products provided
 - 2. If fly ash, ground granulated blast furnace slag, silica fume, rice hull ash, or other waste materials is used in mix designs to replace Portland cement, submit the total volume of concrete cast in place, mix design(s) used showing the quantity of portland cement replaced, reports showing successful cylinder testing, and temperature on day of pour if cold weather mix is used.
 - 3. Submit documentation for harvesting and manufacturing locations of all concrete and reinforcing steel intended for use on the project as may be required for proper documentation of MR Credit 5.

1.07 SUSTAINABILITY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Concrete Materials:
 - 1. All concrete materials shall be from manufacturer(s) who fabricate and manufacturer products within 500 miles of the project site. Provide documentation as outline in Part I of this specification.
 - 2. Contract shall endeavor to provide concrete materials with the highest percentages of pre and post-consumer recycled content readily available from manufacturer(s) who comply with requirements for regional materials listed above.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 PIPES AND FITTINGS

- A. Ductile-Iron Sewer Pipe: ASTM A 746, for push-on joints.
 - 1. Standard-Pattern, Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile or gray iron, for push-on joints.
 - 2. Gaskets: AWWA C111, rubber.

3. ABS Sewer Pipe and Fittings: ASTM D 2751, for solvent-cemented or gasketed joints.
 - a. Wall Thickness for NPS 8 to NPS 12 (DN200 to DN300): SDR 42.
 - b. Gaskets: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals
4. PVC Sewer Pipe and Fittings: According to the following:
 - a. PVC Sewer Pipe and Fittings, NPS 15 and Smaller: ASTM D 3034, SDR 35. for solvent-cemented or gasketed joints.
 - 1) Gaskets: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals.

2.02 CONCRETE

- A. General: Cast-in-place concrete according to ACI 318, ACI 350R, and the following:
 1. Cement: ASTM C 150, type II.
 2. Fine Aggregate: ASTM C 33, sand.
 3. Coarse Aggregate: ASTM C 33, crushed gravel.
 4. Water: Potable.
- B. Portland Cement Design Mix: 3000-psi minimum, with 0.45 maximum water-cementitious materials ratio.

2.03 MANHOLES

- A. Heavy-Traffic Precast Concrete Manholes: ASTM C 913; designed according to ASTM C 890 for A-16, heavy-traffic, structural loading; of depth, shape, and dimensions indicated, with provision for rubber gasketed joints.
 1. Gaskets: Rubber.
 2. Grade Rings: Include two or three reinforced-concrete rings, of 6- to 9-inch total thickness, that match 24-inch- diameter frame and cover.
 3. Pipe Connectors: ASTM C 923 (ASTM C 923M), resilient, of size required, for each pipe connecting to base section.
- B. Manhole Frames and Covers: ASTM A 536, Grade 60-40-18, ductile-iron castings designed for heavy-duty service. Include 24-inch ID by 7- to 9-inch riser with 4-inch minimum width flange, and 26-inch- diameter cover. Include indented top design with lettering "SANITARY" cast into cover.

2.04 CLEANOUTS

- A. Gray-Iron Cleanouts: ASME A112.36.2M, round, gray-iron housing with clamping device and round, secured, scoriated, gray-iron cover. Include gray-iron ferrule with inside calk or spigot connection and countersunk, tapered-thread, brass closure plug. Use units with top-loading classifications according to the following applications:
 - 1. Light Duty: In earth or grass foot-traffic areas.
 - 2. Medium Duty: In paved foot-traffic areas.
 - 3. Sewer Pipe Fitting and Riser to Cleanout: ASTM A 74, Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EARTHWORK

- A. Excavating, trenching, and backfilling are specified in Division 2 Section “Earthwork”.

3.02 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Materials and their installation are specified in Division 32 Section “Earthwork.” Arrange for installing green warning tapes directly over piping.
 - 1. Use warning tape or detectable warning tape over ferrous piping.
 - 2. Use detectable warning tape over nonferrous piping.

3.03 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. General: Include watertight joints.

3.04 INSTALLTION, GENERAL

- A. General Locations and Arrangements: Drawings plans and details indicate general location and arrangement of underground sanitary sewerage piping. Location and arrangement of piping layout take design considerations into account. Install piping as indicated, to extent practical.
- B. Install piping beginning at low point, true to grades and alignment indicated with unbroken continuity of invert. Place bell ends of piping facing upstream. Install gaskets, seals, sleeves, and couplings according to manufacturer’s written instructions for using lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements. Maintain swab or drag in line, and pull past each joint as it is completed.
- C. Use manholes for changes in direction, unless fittings are indicated.

- D. Extend sanitary sewerage piping and connect to building's sanitary drains, of sizes and in locations indicated. Terminate piping as indicated.

3.05 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION AND INSTALLATION

- A. General: Join and install pipe fittings according to installations indicated.
- B. Ductile-Iron Sewer Pipe with Ductile-Iron Fittings: According to AWWA C600.
- C. ABS Pipe and Fittings: As follows:
 - 1. Join pipe and gasketed fittings with gaskets according to ASTM D 2321.
 - 2. Install according to ASTM D 2321.
- D. PVC Sewer Pipe and Fittings: As follows:
 - 1. Join pipe and gasketed fittings with gaskets according to ASTM D 2321.
 - 2. Install according to ASTM D 2321.
- E. System Piping Joints: Make joints using system manufacturer's couplings, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Join piping made of different materials or dimensions with couplings made for this application. Use couplings that are compatible with and that fit both systems' materials and dimensions.
- G. Install with top surfaces of components, except piping, flush with finished surface.

3.06 MANHOLE INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install manholes, complete with appurtenances and accessories indicated.
- B. Form continuous concrete channels and benches between inlets & outlet.
- C. Set tops of frames and covers flush with finished surface of manholes that occur in pavements. Set tops 3 inches above finished surfaces elsewhere, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Install precast concrete manhole sections with gaskets according to ASTM C 891.

3.07 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Place cast-in-place concrete according to ACI 318 and ACI 350R.

3.08 CLEANOUT INSTALLATION

- A. Set cleanout frames and covers in earth in cast-in-place concrete block, 18 by 18 by 12 inches deep. Set with tops 1 inch above surrounding grade.

3.09 CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections to existing pipe stub-outs provided under separate project so finished Work complies as nearly as practical with requirements specified for new Work.
- B. Protect existing piping and structures to prevent concrete or debris from entering while making connections. Remove debris or other extraneous material that may accumulate.

3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Clear interior of piping and structures of dirt and superfluous material as work progresses. Maintain swab or drag in piping, and pull past each joint as it is completed.
 - 1. Place plug in end of incomplete piping at end of day when work stops.
 - 2. Flush piping between manholes and other structures to remove collected debris, if required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Test new piping systems, and parts of existing systems that have been altered, extended, or repaired, for leaks and defects.
 - 1. Do not enclose, cover, or put into service before inspection and approval.
 - 2. Test completed piping systems according to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 3. Schedule tests and inspections by authorities having jurisdiction with at least 24 hours' advance notice.
 - 4. Submit separate reports for each test.
 - 5. If authorities having jurisdiction do not have published procedures, perform tests as follows:
 - a. Sanitary Sewerage: Perform hydrostatic test.
 - 1) Allowable leakage is maximum of 50 gal. Per inch of nominal pipe size per mile (4.6 L per millimeter of nominal pipe size per kilometer) of pipe, during 24-hour period.
 - 2) Close openings in system and fill with water.
 - 3) Purge air and refill with water.

- 4) Disconnect water supply.
- 5) Test and inspect joints for leaks.
- 6) Option: Test ductile-iron piping according to AWWA C600, Section “Hydrostatic Testing.” Use test pressure of at least 10 psig (69 kPa).
 - (a) Sanitary Sewerage: Perform air test according to UNI-B-6.
- 7) Manholes: Perform hydraulic test according to ASTM C 969 (ASTM C 969M).
- 8) Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
- 9) Replace leaking piping using new materials, and repeat testing until leakage is within allowances specified.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 334112 - STORM DRAINAGE

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including requirements of the Government's Solicitation and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Materials included in this section shall meet the requirements for LEED for New Construction points for the following Sections:
 - 1. MR Credit 4 - Recycled Content
 - 2. MR Credit 5 - Regional Materials
 - 3. The contractor is expected to understand the LEED requirements for these sections and include all applicable overhead in their base bid for the necessary documentation to achieve the above listed credits.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes storm drainage outside the building.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for concrete structures.

1.03 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Gravity-Flow, Nonpressure-Piping Pressure Ratings: At least equal to system test pressure.

1.04 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not store plastic structures, pipe, and fittings in direct sunlight.
- B. Protect pipe, pipe fittings, and seals from dirt and damage.
- C. Handle precast concrete manholes and other structures according to manufacturer's written rigging instructions.

1.05 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Site Information: Verify existing utility locations.

- B. Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by the Government or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility services according to requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify the Government not less than two days in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
 - 2. Do not proceed with utility interruptions without the Government's written permission.

1.06 SUBMITTALS:

- A. Project Data: Submit manufacturer's technical product data and installation instructions for proposed materials and products.
- B. Record Drawings: At project closeout, submit record drawings of installed systems piping and products, in accordance with requirements of Division 01.
- C. Sustainability Submittals, Product data for LEED Compliance:
 - 1. For products having recycled content, provide documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and pre-consumer recycled content.
 - a. Include statement indicating costs (sell price for each product having recycled content)
 - b. Include the total weight of products provided
 - c. If fly ash, ground granulated blast furnace slag, silica fume, rice hull ash, or other waste materials is used in mix designs to replace Portland cement, submit the total volume of concrete cast in place, mix design(s) used showing the quantity of portland cement replaced, reports showing successful cylinder testing, and temperature on day of pour if cold weather mix is used.

1.07 SUSTAINABILITY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Contractor shall endeavor to provide materials with a high recycled content:
 - 1. Recycled Content: For Steel Products: A minimum post-consumer recycled content of 30% is required.
- B. Concrete Materials:

1. All concrete materials shall be from manufacturer(s) who fabricate and manufacturer products within 500 miles of the project site. Provide documentation as outline in Part I of this specification.
2. Contract shall endeavor to provide concrete materials with the highest percentages of pre and post-consumer recycled content readily available from manufacturer(s) who comply with requirements for regional materials listed above.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 PIPES AND FITTINGS

- A. General: All pipe shall have class designation cast or imprinted on side.
- B. Reinforced-Concrete Sewer Pipe and Fittings: ASTM C 76 Class III, Wall B, for gasketed joints.
 1. Gaskets: ASTM C 443 rubber.
- C. PVC Sewer Pipe and Fittings: ASTM F949 or F794 (Contech A-2000) with an integral bell gasketed joint per manufacturers recommendation.
- D. Additional approved pipe materials:
 1. Polypropylene Pipe meeting the requirements of ASTM F2736 for piping 12"-60" in diameter
 2. HDPE (ABS N-12) pipe meeting ASTM 2648 for piping 4" through 60" in diameter.

2.02 MANHOLES

- A. Heavy-Traffic Precast Concrete Manholes: ASTM C 913; designed according to ASTM C 890 for A-16, heavy-traffic, structural loading; of depth, shape, and dimensions indicated, with provision for rubber gasketed joints.
 1. Gaskets: Rubber.
 2. Grade Rings: Include two or three reinforced-concrete rings, of 6- to 9-inch total thickness, that match 24-inch- diameter frame and cover.
 3. Pipe Connectors: ASTM C 923 (ASTM C 923M), resilient, of size required, for each pipe connecting to base section.

- B. Manhole Frames and Covers: ASTM A 536, Grade 60-40-18, ductile-iron castings designed for heavy-duty service. Include 24-inch ID by 7- to 9-inch riser with 4-inch minimum width flange, and 26-inch- diameter cover. Include indented top design with lettering "STORM SEWER" cast into cover.

2.03 CATCH BASINS

- A. Cast-in-Place Concrete, Catch Basins: Construct of reinforced concrete; designed according to ASTM C 890 for structural loading; of depth, shape, dimensions, and appurtenances indicated.
 - 1. Bottom, Walls, and Top: Reinforced concrete.
 - 2. Channels and Benches: Concrete.
- B. Frames and Grates: ASTM A 536, Grade 60-40-18, ductile iron designed for heavy-duty service. Include flat grate with small square or short-slotted drainage openings.
 - 1. Size: 24 by 24 inches minimum, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Grate Free Area: Approximately 50 percent, unless otherwise indicated.

2.04 CURB INLETS

- A. Curb Inlets: Made with vertical curb opening, of materials and dimensions according to details on drawings.

2.05 CONCRETE

- A. General: Cast-in-place concrete according to ACI 318, ACI 350R, and the following:
 - 1. Cement: ASTM C 150, Type II.
 - 2. Fine Aggregate: ASTM C 33, sand.
 - 3. Coarse Aggregate: ASTM C 33, crushed gravel.
 - 4. Water: Potable.
- B. Portland Cement Design Mix: 4000 psi minimum, with 0.45 maximum water-cementitious ratio.
 - 1. Reinforcement Fabric: ASTM A 185, steel, welded wire fabric, plain.
 - 2. Reinforcement Bars: ASTM A 615, Grade 60, deformed steel.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EARTHWORK

- A. Excavating, trenching, and backfilling are specified in Division 32 Section "Earthwork."

3.02 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. General Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans and details indicate general location and arrangement of underground storm drainage piping. Location and arrangement of piping layout take design considerations into account. Install piping as indicated, to extent practical.
- B. Install piping beginning at low point, true to grades and alignment indicated with unbroken continuity of invert. Place bell ends of piping facing upstream. Install gaskets, seals, sleeves, and couplings according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements. Maintain swab or drag in line, and pull past each joint as it is completed.
- C. Use manholes for changes in direction, unless fittings are indicated. Use fittings for branch connections, unless direct tap into existing sewer is indicated.
- D. Use proper size increasers, reducers, and couplings where different sizes or materials of pipes and fittings are connected. Reducing size of piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- E. Install gravity-flow piping and connect to building's storm drains, of sizes and in locations indicated. Terminate piping as indicated.

3.03 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION AND INSTALLATION

- A. General: Join and install pipe and fittings according to installations indicated.
- B. Hub-and-Spigot, Cast-Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings: With rubber gaskets according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook." Use gaskets that match class of pipe and fittings.
- C. Install with top surfaces of components, except piping, flush with finished surface.
- D. Concrete Pipe and Fittings: Install according to ACPA's "Concrete Pipe Installation Manual." Use the following seals:
 - 1. Round Pipe and Fittings: ASTM C 443 (ASTM C 443M), rubber gaskets.

- E. System Piping Joints: Make joints using system manufacturer's couplings, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Join piping made of different materials or dimensions with couplings made for this application. Use couplings that are compatible with and that fit both systems' materials and dimensions.

3.04 MANHOLE INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install manholes, complete with appurtenances and accessories indicated.
- B. Form continuous concrete channels and benches between inlets and outlet.
- C. Set tops of frames and covers flush with finished surface of manholes that occur in pavements. Set tops 3 inches above finished surface elsewhere, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Install precast concrete manhole sections with gaskets according to ASTM C 891.

3.05 CATCH-BASIN INSTALLATION

- A. Construct catch basins to sizes and shapes indicated.
- B. Set frames and grates to elevations indicated.

3.06 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Place cast-in-place concrete according to ACI 318 and ACI 350R.

3.07 TAP CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections to existing underground structures so finished Work complies as nearly as practical with requirements specified for new Work.
- B. Protect existing piping and structures to prevent concrete or debris from entering while making tap connections. Remove debris or other extraneous material that may accumulate.

3.08 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Clear interior of piping and structures of dirt and superfluous material as work progresses. Maintain swab or drag in piping, and pull past each joint as it is completed.
 - 1. Place plug in end of incomplete piping at end of day and when work stops.
 - 2. Flush piping between manholes and other structures to remove collected debris.

- B. Inspect interior of piping to determine whether line displacement or other damage has occurred. Inspect after approximately 24 inches of backfill is in place, and again at completion of Project.
1. Defects requiring correction include the following:
 - a. Alignment: Less than full diameter of inside of pipe is visible between structures.
 - b. Deflection: Flexible piping with deflection that prevents passage of ball or cylinder of size not less than 92.5 percent of piping diameter.
 - c. Crushed, broken, cracked, or otherwise damaged piping.
 - d. Infiltration: Water leakage into piping.
 - e. Exfiltration: Water leakage from or around piping.
 2. Replace defective piping using new materials, and repeat inspections until defects are within allowances specified.
 3. Reinspect and repeat procedure until results are satisfactory.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 337350 - SITE NATURAL-GAS DISTRIBUTION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Pipe and fittings for natural gas distribution on site outside buildings.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 31 2210 - Earthwork.
- B. Applicable section of Division 22 - Plumbing.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASME B31.2 - Fuel Gas Piping; The American Society of Mechanical Engineers; 1968.
- B. ASME B31.8 - Gas Transmission and Distribution Piping Systems; The American Society of Mechanical Engineers; 2007.
- C. NFPA 54 - National Fuel Gas Code; National Fire Protection Association; 2009.
- D. ASTM D2513 - Standard Specifications for Polyethylene (PE) Gas Pressure Pipe, Tubing, and Fittings; 2012.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 3001 - Submittals, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide data on pipe materials, pipe fittings, valves and accessories.
- C. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certify that products meet or exceed specified requirements.
- D. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations of pipe mains, valves, connections, and invert elevations. Identify and describe unexpected variations to subsoil conditions or discovery of uncharted utilities.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Perform Work in accordance with utility company requirements.
- B. Conform to NFPA 54.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver and store valves in shipping containers with labeling in place.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 PIPE

- A. Polyethylene Pipe Below Ground: PE 2406/2708
 - 1. Fittings: ASTM D2513
 - 2. Joints: Fusion Weld
- B. Trace Wire: Magnetic detectable conductor, clear plastic covering, imprinted with "Natural Gas Service " in large letters.

2.02 VALVES

- A. Manufacturer's name and pressure rating marked on valve body.
- B. Valves shall be polyethylene lubricated plug type.

2.03 BEDDING AND COVER MATERIALS

- A. Refer to specification Section 31 2210 – Earthwork.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that building service connection and utility gas main size, location and invert are as indicated.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Cut pipe ends square, ream pipe and tube ends to full pipe diameter, remove burrs. Bevel plain end ferrous pipe over 2 inches (50 mm) diameter.

3.03 TRENCHING

- A. See Section 31 2210 for additional requirements.
- B. Hand trim excavation for accurate placement of pipe to elevations indicated.
- C. Backfill around sides and to top of pipe with cover fill, tamp in place and compact, then complete backfilling.

3.04 INSTALLATION - PIPING

- A. Group piping with other site piping work whenever practical.
- B. Route piping in straight line.
- C. Install piping to conserve space and not interfere with use of site space.
- D. Install piping to allow for expansion and contraction without stressing pipe or joints.
- E. Establish elevations of buried piping to ensure not less than 24 inches of cover in non-travelled areas and 48 inches of cover in driveways and parking areas.
- F. Install trace wire 6 inches above top of pipe; coordinate with Section 31 2316.13.

3.05 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Use materials suitable for natural gas service.

3.06 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspect, test, and purge natural gas systems according to NFPA 54, Part 4 “Gas Piping Inspection, Testing, and Purging” and local gas utility company requirements.
- B. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest system until satisfactory results are obtained.
- C. Report test results promptly in writing to the the Government and the authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. If tests indicate Work does not meet specified requirements, remove Work, replace and retest at no cost to Owner.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank